DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 089 552 FL 004 884

AUTHOR	Sebeok, Thomas A.
TITLE	Spoken Finnish: Book One [and] Book Two.
INSTITUTION	American Council of Learned Societies, New York, N.Y.; Linguistic Society of America, Washington, D.C.; Spoken Language Services, Inc., Ithaca, N.Y.
PUB DATE	47
NOTE	504p.
AVAILABLE FROM	Spoken Language Services Inc., P. O. Box 783, Ithaca, N. Y. 14850 ($12.00; records, $27.00)
EDRS PRICE	MF-$0.90 HC Not Available from EDRS. PLUS POSTAGE
DESCRIPTORS	*Conversational Language Courses; Cultural Education; *Finnish; *Independent Study; *Language Instruction; Language Skills; Modern Languages; *Textbooks; Uncommonly Taught Languages

ABSTRACT

This course in spoken Finnish is intended for use in introductory conversational classes. Book I and Book II, combined in this text, are divided into five major parts, each containing five learning units and one unit devoted to review. Each unit contains sections including (1) basic sentences, (2) word study and review of basic sentences, (3) listening comprehension, and (4) conversation exercises. The lessons, based on cultural experiences commonly shared by Finns, are structured for independent study. Finnish-English and English-Finnish vocabulary lists are provided. (RL)

ED 089552
FL 004 884

Spoken Finnish

BOOK ONE

by THOMAS A. SEBEOK
INDIANA UNIVERSITY

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH.
EDUCATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF
EDUCATION
THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

Spoken Language Services, Inc.

The Armed Forces edition of this book was published by the Linguistic Society of America and the Intensive Language Program of the American Council of Learned Societies.

Copyright, 1947,

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL BY MICROFICHE ONLY HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
Spoken Language
Services, Inc.
TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION FURTHER REPRODUCTION OUTSIDE THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PERMISSION OF THE COPYRIGHT OWNER"

No part of the material covered by this copyright may be reproduced in any form without written permission of the publisher.

Printed in the United States of America

GENERAL FOREWORD

This is one of a series of self-teaching textbooks in more than thirty languages initially prepared and published for the Armed Forces and now offered to the general public. Like every other book in the series, it is the product of team-work between numerous collaborators. The authors of the various books have conformed throughout to the patterns developed by the experience of the group.

A brief review of the origin and growth of the program to produce these texts will not only be of general interest in itself but will also provide some indications of the manner in which they may be most efficiently used as well as some of the limitations of their employment.

Early in 1942, within a month of Pearl Harbor, the Joint Army and Navy Committee on Welfare and Recreation began consideration of the means whereby large numbers of troops might be instructed in the colloquial forms of the numerous languages spoken in the areas in which they were likely to be employed[illegible] survey of materials already available for such ins[illegible]tion confirmed their suspected inadequacy. Many of the pertinent languages had never been taught in the United States; few of them had ever been studied or described by competent linguists. Only the unusual textbook was designed to teach the spoken forms to linguistically untrained students, and even when a book was available, it was, as often as not, written in French, German, or Dutch, or for some other reason, not susceptible of general use. Consequently, the first necessity was a program of basic implementation which would provide materials, as nearly uniform throughout the various idioms as practicable, for elementary teaching of spoken language to Americans without special linguistic training or, indeed, aptitude. The form of the materials had to be such that they could be used for self-instruction in situations where no competent teachers were available.

There had been little study of most of these languages in America. But the Army and Navy fortunately did not have to start completely from scratch, for several months previously the American Council of Learned Societies had organized its Intensive Language Program for the purpose of developing teachers, teaching materials, and instruction in all languages not normally taught in the United States, yet likely to be necessary in the war effort. Most of the competent technical linguists in the country were gradually being absorbed into this Intensive Language Program through their membership in the Linguistic Society of America, that constituent of the Council most concerned with this subject-matter. The Joint Army-Navy Committee drew the Intensive Language Program into its deliberations and planned a development of language instruction for the Armed Forces. Responsibility for the prosecution of this development was entrusted to the Army Education Branch of what is now the Information and Education Division, A.S.F., functioning through its subsidiaries, the Language Section and the Editorial Staff of the United States Armed Forces Institute. These in turn called upon the Intensive Language Program of the Council for coöperation in the production of materials, a coöperation which has since been so intimate that it is impossible to tell what proportion of any single operation is the responsibility of each.

The series of more than thirty language textbooks is one result of this coöperative effort. Each textbook is designed to provide materials for approximately the first two hundred hours of language study. It is divided into thirty learning units, the first twelve of which are accompanied by twenty-four double faced recordings of the foreign language material contained in them. Mastery of the thirty units will give the student not only a sufficient general vocabulary to perform all the language operations necessary for everyday life but enough skill in the manipulation of this vocabulary to provide adequate control of it. It is with respect to this latter—manipulation of the elements known—that most language instruction is weak. While the primary emphasis is upon the spoken tongue, the student should have begun reading well before the conclusion of the thirtieth unit, normally probably at about the twelfth, excepting in those cases where the spoken and the written forms are widely divergent.

The group responsible for the creation of this series believes that ideally one learns a foreign language most efficiently when taught intensively by a bi-lingual trained technical linguist while resident in the country to which the language is native. Since this happy state of affairs hardly ever exists, in practice recourse must be had to various successive approximations to it approximations in which one or more of the desirable elements is attenuated or entirely wanting. This present series—text and records—is designed to be useful at the very lowest level of language learning, that is to say to the single student working by himself. In this case, the text takes the place of the trained linguist, and the records double for the native-speaker. Naturally, better results are obtained when, either in individual or classroom work, a native-speaker is available and utilized as the texts direct. Here the text takes the place of the trained linguist; the records are still very valuable but not absolutely essential. These latter are the conditions under which the series has most commonly been successfully used. So on for successive approximations to the ideal, and even when this is reached, the selected materials and the pedagogic devices provided by these texts will be useful.

Prosecution of the war created the need for these materials to teach *spoken* language. Perhaps it is not to be assumed that under peacetime conditions the demand for speaking, as against reading or writing, competence will be of the same order. Fortunately the several competences are not incompatible; indeed, a very substantial body of proof exists that the acquisition of spoken competence in a foreign language is the most efficient first step towards the others. In addition there seems reason to believe that the second-half of the twentieth century will see much increased concern for instruction in *speaking* foreign languages, not only as the road to *reading* them but because the acquisition and the possession of colloquial control of a language not one's own is a humanistic educational experience in its own right not requiring justification by other criteria, because properly taught it is the most easily acquired of the several competences, because the multitude of foreign language broadcasts will dispose of the alleged uselessness of teaching spoken language to students who will never visit the countries in question, and because many more Americans than ever before will exercise their trades and professions abroad.

The coöperative nature of this enterprise can hardly be over-emphasized; not only has practically every listed author coöperated in the production of elements of the series other than his own, but also many of the most valued collaborators do not appear as authors at all. Linguistic scientists provided the descriptive analyses of the several languages; professional language teachers furnished pedagogical devices; specialists in education assisted in ordering the materials in accordance with the best principles of learning; printers, editors, and textbook designers contributed their specialized competences; technicians in the recording of sound made possible success in the exceedingly exacting operation of keying the records to the printed texts. Under such conditions it would seem almost invidious to cite the names of those collaborators, in addition to authors, whose contributions are more readily identifiable than those of others. Yet for the sake of the record, perhaps this should be done. The Intensive Language Program of the American Council of Learned Societies, without which this series would not have been possible or would have been of completely different character, owes its existence to Mortimer Graves, Administrative Secretary of the Council. Colonel Francis T. Spaulding, Chief of the Army Education Branch above referred to, saw the implications of teaching language to American troops and assumed the responsibility for developing a program to this end. The detailed planning and construction of the series now presented owes more to Major (then Lieutenant) Henry Lee Smith, Jr., Officer in Charge of the Language Section in the Army Education Branch than to anyone else. Constant liaison with the Intensive Language Program was maintained through J Milton Cowan, its director during the preparation of the series. William E. Spaulding directed the Editorial Staff of the United States Armed Forces Institute. The dean of American linguistic scientists, Leonard Bloomfield of Yale University, gave unstintingly in many ways—ways as difficult to appreciate too highly as they are to describe succinctly. Almost the same may be said of Lt. Morris Swadesh, Lt. Charles Hockett, Robert A. Hall Jr., Norman A. McQuown, Doris Goss: José Padín, and others who served from time to time on a special advisory and editorial board.

The series is offered in the hope that it may modestly conduce to the improvement of teaching the speaking of foreign languages to Americans. The authors make no claim to perfection, indeed they are rather appalled at the task which they set themselves, and their pride in completing it under the existent conditions is tinctured with humility at the thought of the imperfections which must sooner or later come to light. But through the discovery of these imperfections will come progress, and nobody will be more greatly pleased than the collaborators on this enterprise if, a decade from now, the teaching of spoken foreign languages in America shall have reached such a developed stage that their first efforts will seem obsolete.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE

Among my Finnish friends who contributed to this book I should like to thank especially Kerttu Cassen, Margit Gardberg, and Kyllikki Järvi, assistants at Indiana University during the 1943-44 Army Specialized Training Program. They generously worked overtime, night after night, in order to help prepare the text for next day's classes. They tested each unit in contact with the students; their advice was often incorporated in later revisions.

I owe my orientation in the Finnish area to Professor Kosti Arho of Suomi College and to Professor Sven Liljeblad of Harvard University. The changes brought about by the war since the completion of the work may affect a few of the illustrations, especially in the later units, but they do not affect the principles underlying them.

We are greatly indebted to the Honorable K. T. Jutila, Finnish Minister to the United States, for assistance in making the phonograph recordings to accompany the text. He devoted a week of his valuable time to this exacting task. His understanding of the conditions under which this book was written is illustrated by the remark he made in response to the author's apology for peopling Finland, in one of the units, with American military forces. "They are, of course," he said, "on a good will mission."

Thomas A. Sebeok

Indiana University

23 May 1947

INTRODUCTION

1. What We Are Trying to Do. This course in spoken Finnish is designed as an introduction to the Finnish language. It contains all the essential grammatical materials for learning to speak everyday Finnish, and its vocabulary, though small, is built around a number of the most useful common situations and current topics. It is based on the principle that you must *hear* a language if you are to understand it when spoken, and that you must practice speaking it in order to master its sounds and forms.

A teacher of Finnish will not always be available for those whom this book is written for. So the course has been made as nearly self-training as possible. This manual covers the course completely and requires no other reference material. It explains in detail what the group is to do, and provides the material to work with.

2. The Finnish Language is spoken by about four million people in Finland and in the adjoining regions of the Soviet Union and Scandinavia.

Take advantage of every opportunity to talk Finnish with native speakers. Listen for differences of expressions and pronunciation, and try to imitate them just as you try to imitate the Finnish speaker in your group.

3. How to Use This Manual. To help you in learning to speak Finnish, you need only a native speaker of the language and this book. The two must be used together, and neither one is of any use without the other.

This manual is organized so that it can be used for study by yourself or in a group. The group may or may not have a regular teacher; if you have none, choose one of your own number (called the *Group Leader*) to lead the others and to direct the work.

4. A Native Speaker is the only good source of first-hand knowledge of the pronunciation and usage of any language. The method used in this manual requires a native speaker of Finnish, preferably one who can be on hand throughout the course, or next best, the voice of a native speaker recorded on phonograph records which are supplied with this manual. But even when a native speaker is present during the course, the records can always be used for additional practice between the regular meetings of the group.

The native speaker of Finnish is referred to as the Guide. He will give you the Finnish to imitate, and will check your work; but he is *not* the teacher and should not be asked to explain the material. The manual will furnish the explanations, as far as explanations can be given. For the most part, one has to accept languages as they are—what is said is correct, but why it isn't said another way, no one can answer. The Guide should be neither overeducated, nor too uneducated. He should speak naturally and without affectation.

5. **The Book** is divided into parts consisting of five *learning units* and one review unit[1] each. Each unit contains several sections. It is expected that the group will spend about fifty minutes on each section. Some of this time will be spent working individually on the materials, but for the most part the group will meet as a whole with the Leader and the Guide. The time schedule gives only a general idea, since the ability and previous preparation of the group members, the time they have to work by themselves, and other differences of rate of work will largely determine how much time is needed on any part. Here are the main divisions:

A. Basic Sentences (with Hints on Pronunciation)
B. Word Study and Review of Basic Sentences
C. Further Review of Basic Sentences
D. Listening In
E. Conversation
F. Further Conversation

These six sections are followed in each learning unit by a Finder List containing all the new words in the particular unit. Two complete vocabularies, Finnish-English and English-Finnish, are included at the end of this manual.

6. **The Basic Sentences** in each unit are arranged so as to give you a number of new words and a number of new ways of saying things; first broken up into words or short phrases, and then combined in complete sentences. On the printed page, they are presented in parallel columns, with the English equivalents on the left, and the ordinary Finnish spelling on the right.

Always work through the Basic Sentences with the Guide or the phonograph records in the manner described in Unit 1. Never try to read them by yourselves until you have been through it several times with the Guide or records to imitate. You are to learn these expressions by heart, so the more you concentrate on them in the group, the less work will be left for you to do on your own.

---

[1] The key to the review units, as well as to the *What Would You Say?* exercises in the learning units themselves is published separately for students studying without the benefit of a native speaker.

7. **The Hints on Pronunciation** are to help you to speak as nearly as possible like a native Finn. No language has sounds exactly like any other; and in Finnish you will find some sounds that are unlike any in English. The Hints on Pronunciation will point out some of the differences between English and Finnish pronunciation of similar sounds and will tell you something about how to make the unfamiliar sounds. You can then imitate the Guide in special practices on the sounds discussed. These practices will follow the first reading of the Basic Sentences. On the next repetition of the Basic Sentences you can watch for other examples of the sounds practiced.

8. **Pronouncing to be Understood.** Of course the better you can pronounce Finnish, the more easily Finns can understand you. You must get away from your English speech habits as much as possible. The Hints on Pronunciation should help you with the more difficult points, but for the most part you must rely on imitating the speech of the Guide as completely as possible. Some of you will be better mimics than others, but you must all imitate tones of voice, gestures and all other peculiarities of pronunciation that you can detect. A thorough-going imitation of your Guide will please him with its accuracy rather than offend him. Remember that when you are talking to foreigners, it is the differences between your speech and theirs that seems funny to you; if they imitated your speech more closely, you'd forget that they were foreigners. Put your whole effort into a complete imitation of your Guide, and take advantage of every opportunity to mimic him, either working with the group, or reciting alone.

9. **The Native Speaker is Always Right.** If the manual or the records indicate a pronunciation different from that of your Guide, follow the Guide. No two speakers of any language say exactly the same things in exactly the same way. Your Guide is a native speaker, understood by other speakers of Finnish, and from him you can learn much more about the pronunciation than you can from reading the Hints on Pronunciation or listening to the records. You can watch his lips and facial expressions and gestures as he talks. Use him always as the model for your Finnish.

10. **The Word Study** gives you new uses and new combinations of materials studied up to that point. You are taught how words are built up, so that you can make other forms on the same pattern, and can express more than the set phrases you have memorized.

The phrases you learn are the models used for the Word Study, so that much of the discussion is merely pointing out ways of expression with which you are very likely already familiar.

11. **The Listening In** gives you a number of conversations, anecdotes, or stories, which use the vocabulary and constructions you have learned. No new vocabulary is introduced, but you meet new combinations and can test your understanding of the language by trying to interpret it as the Guide speaks and you repeat after him. The conversations in this section will give you further models for practicing your own conversations.

12. **Conversation** represents the principal aim of the course. You should know by heart all the material of the Basic Sentences, and all the work covered in previous units. Then, when you take part in the conversation, try to talk as easily and naturally as you can, and see how much you can say, how many different things you can talk about, using only the material given so far. It is important especially at the beginning of the course, that you should keep close to the models that you have learned, but change the subject of discussion as much as you can. Do not ask the Guide for new materials besides those given here. You have enough to learn thoroughly without adding to it.

13. **In Speaking Finnish** do *not* think out what you want to say in English and try to translate it into Finnish. Instead, think in terms of the expressions you have memorized that apply to the situation. Keep the conversation going by asking questions in turn as well as answering them. Avoid long and complicated sentences, or you will find yourself lapsing into English word-order and English habits of speech. Use instead patterns that you are sure of, and try always to think of how the Guide would say them.

When you are talking to a Finn who uses words and expressions that you do not know, try to ask him in Finnish to explain what he means. You will learn more this way. Take advantage of every opportunity during the course and after you have completed it, to talk with speakers of Finnish in their language. Carry along a notebook and jot down new phrases that you want to remember. During spare time waiting for someone, you can review the material. Always listen closely to the pronunciation of native speakers, and imitate them. As soon as you relax and forget to try to talk like them, you will lapse back into the English habits that you have been practicing all your life.

CONTENTS

PART ONE

Unit	Basic Sentences	Page	Pronunciation	Page	Word Study	Page
1.	**Greetings and Simple Phrases.** Directions. Designation. Foods. Price. Time. Numbers.	1	Pronunciation of the eight vowels. Short and long vowels. The sounds *ä*, *ää*, *y*, *ö*.	12		
2.	**Meeting People**.........	25	Double vowels. The sounds *ö*, *y*, *u*. Vowel groups.	32	Vowel harmony. Question suffix.	34
3.	**What's Your Trade?**....	46	Double consonants. Aspiration. The sounds *p*, *t*, *k*.	52	The suffixes *-mpi; -in; -ssa*	54
4.	**Where Are You From?**..	65	The sounds *h*, *m* and *n*, and the combinations *nk*, *ng*.	70	Numbers from 11 up. The possessive suffixes. The suffixes *-lle; -sta*.	72
5.	**Let's Talk About the Weather.**	83	The sounds *d*, *v*, *l*, *r*.	90	Noun stems. The suffixes *-t; -n* (object relation); *-lta*. Summary of comments, units 1-5.	92
6.	**Review**................	102				

PART TWO

Unit	Basic Sentences	Page	Pronunciation	Page	Word Study	Page
7.	A Place to Live........	110	How to pronounce *tervetuloa* and *kolmekymmentä*. The sounds *s*, *j*. Foreign consonants: *b*, *f*, etc. Consonant groups: Table One.	117	Noun stem type II. Numeral stems. Personal verb suffixes.	120
8.	Sprucing Up...........	131	Double consonants: *tt*, *kk*, *mm*, *nn*, *rr*, *ll*, *ss*. The letter '. Pronunciation of the catch. Substitutions for the catch.	137	Consonant stems. Verb stems (type I).	140
9.	Let's Eat..............	151	Consonant groups with *h*. Vowel groups: Table Two. Double vowels: *ii*, *ee*, *ää*, *yy*, *uu*, *oo*, *aa*. Rise in pitch.	158	The -(*t*)*a* suffix and when to use it. Verb stems (type II).	161
10.	Seeing the Sights......	171	Combinations of three consonants: *ntt*, *nkk*, *rkk*. Vowel groups: vowel plus *i*; vowel plus *u*; vowel combinations.	177	The plural marker -*i*-. The verb suffix -(*s*)*i*. Automatic changes with -*i*-. The suffix -*ksi*. Stem of *puhelin*.	179

PART TWO—*Continued*

Unit	Basic Sentences	Page	Pronunciation	Page	Word Study	Page
11.	**Shopping.** Names of the Months. Days of the Week. Numbers. Dates.	189			More about numbers: abbreviated forms; ordinal numbers; multiplication; fractions. Time and dates. The suffix *-lla*. Some automatic consonant changes. Verb stems (type II, cont.). Summary of comments, units 1-11.	199
12.	**Review**	211				

PART ONE

UNIT 1

GREETINGS AND SIMPLE PHRASES

To the Group Leader: Each *Unit* of this course is divided into six *Sections*. It is suggested that the group spend not less than fifty minutes on each Section.

Before you get the group together to work on this first unit, read carefully the following material up to the heading *Useful Words and Phrases*, on page 2. When the group meets, read the material aloud to them or have some other member of the group do the reading. The students will follow the reading with their books open. Be sure that your Guide, or the phonograph and records, are ready before the Group meets for work on Section A. See that the Guide is supplied with a copy of the manual, *Ohjeita Kielenopastajalle*, which tells him just what he is to do and gives him the Finnish he is to speak to the group.

You should look through all of the sections of the unit, reading the directions carefully, so that you will have in mind the general plan of the work. Always get clearly in mind the directions for a section before you take that section up in group meeting.

This unit gives you the most immediate and necessary expressions that you will need in meeting people, asking your way, buying things, and counting. You will find that it is no easy matter to master all these words and phrases, but you will succeed if you really concentrate and follow instructions carefully. The amount of learning and memorizing required for this first unit is considerably greater than that of any later unit. The reason you are given such a large dose at the start is that this unit is a kind of "language first aid" which gives you enough useful expressions to enable you to make your ordinary wants known and to carry on a simple conversation in Finnish from the very start.

SECTION A—USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

In the list of *Useful Words and Phrases* which follows, the English equivalent of these words and phrases is given at the left of the page. Opposite is the Finnish. The Leader of the group will first read the English equivalent and pause for the Guide to speak the Finnish. Every member of the group then repeats after the Guide, imitating his pronunciation as closely as possible. The Guide will then say the Finnish a second time and everybody will repeat after him as before. The Leader will then read the next English equivalent and the Guide and group will follow the procedure indicated.

If no Guide is available, the phonograpn records provided for the course should be used. When the group is ready, the Leader will begin playing the appropriate record and the group will repeat right after the Finnish speaker during the silences in the record. The phonograph records can be used with profit even in cases in which a Guide is available. They can be heard between meetings of the group, whenever it is convenient; they furnish additional practice in hearing Finnish; you may listen only to those portions which you have found difficult; and the records may be played as often as you wish. If the speaker on the records had a Finnish pronunciation different from that of your Guide, use the records only for listening and understanding, and not for imitating.

Whether you are working with a Guide or only with the phonograph records, you must repeat each Finnish word and phrase in a loud, clear voice, trying at all times to imitate the pronunciation as closely as you can. Keep constantly in mind the meaning of the Finnish you are about to hear. When you are hearing the Finnish, keep your eyes on the Finnish spelling. This will help you catch on to the pronunciation. *But whenever the written form seems to you to differ from the spoken sound, follow the spoken sound always.*

Learning to understand and pronounce a language is not really hard. Every one of us learned to do this as a child, and all over the world children learn to speak all kinds of languages without any trouble. The difficulty an adult faces in learning a foreign language, as you are now learning Finnish, is that the adult already has a set of habits for pronouncing his own language, and this makes it harder for him to learn new ones than for a child who is starting from scratch. That is why it is so important that you should not be afraid of mimicking, even when what you hear may sound strange to you. Don't be afraid to let yourself go. You will never learn to speak a language if you don't plunge right in as soon as you can. Never mind if you do make mistakes at first. You will in any case. But the important thing is for you to try to say the words and phrases. Imitate your Guide with the same spirit and enthusiasm you use in mimicking a person whose speech sounds peculiar to you. You will find that if you do this your Guide will not think you are making fun of him; instead, he will probably smile because what you have said sounds to him like Finnish.

In the first five units do not attempt under any circumstances to pronounce the Finnish before you have heard it. You will only make trouble for yourself if you try to guess the pronunciation by "reading" the spelling of the Finnish. Always wait until the Guide or phonograph record is ready before you begin your first work with the words and phrases.

If you are working with a Guide who does not understand English, ask the Leader of your group to tell you what hand signals to use to let the Guide know when you want him to read more slowly or to repeat.

The procedure to be followed is to listen to and then repeat the words and phrases with your book open. Listen and imitate carefully, and always try to keep in mind the meaning of the Finnish you are hearing and pronouncing. You will learn fastest if, when your book is open, you follow these steps:

1. Keep your eyes on the spelling as you listen carefully to the Finnish being spoken.
2. Repeat immediately what you have heard, imitating as closely as you can and saying it loud and clear.
3. Keep in mind the meaning of what you are saying. Remember, it is not just a noise, but something that can be understood by some three and a half million people.

Begin the words and phrases as soon as your Guide is ready or when the Leader of your groups is ready to play the first phonograph record.

To the Group Leader: Give the members of the group a chance to ask questions about the instructions. Make sure that everyone understands just what he is to do. Then have the students go through the list of *Useful Words and Phrases* once with books open, repeating in unison after the Guide.

Now go through the list a second time, just as you did before. And, finally, go through it a third time, but let the students take turns repeating individually after the Guide—a sentence to each student. Indicate the order in which the repetitions are to go, who is first, who next, and so on. Continue this individual repetition for the whole 50-minute period. Then, just before dismissing the group, read with them the paragraph headed *Check Yourself* on page 6.

Here are some hints that will help make the work of the group more effective:

1. Insist that everyone speak up. Don't allow any mumbling! Each member of the group must be able to hear what is being said at all times.
2. Indicate to the Guide that he is to repeat whenever the pronunciation is bad and to keep on repeating until he gets a pronunciation that sounds like Finnish.

3. Urge everyone to mimic to the limit every sound, every inflection, even the mannerisms of the Guide.
4. Keep the work moving. Don't let it drag at any time. See that everyone is listening, not only to the Guide, but to himself and to the others as they repeat after the Guide.
5. Go through all the work yourself. Repeat with the others and take your turn at the individual repetitions. Remember that you are a student, too. Speak right up with the rest of them.

Note on the Records: The speaker on the records is Dr. K. T. Jutila, who is at present (1946) the Finnish Minister to the United States.

1. Useful Words and Phrases.

Here is a list of useful words and phrases you will need in Finnish. *You should learn these by heart.* Pay special attention to the difference between single and double vowel sounds, and between single and double consonant sounds.

Greetings and General Phrases

Record 2B, after space

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
Good morning!	*Hyvää huomenta.*
Good day!	*Hyvää päivää.*
Good-bye!	*Hyvästi.*
how	*kuinka*
you	*te*
How are you?	*Kuinka te voitte?*
thank you	*kiitos*
I	*minä*
I'm well	*minä voin hyvin*
Thank you, I'm well.	*Kiitos, minä voin hyvin.*

Please *or* you're welcome.	*Olkaa hyvä.*
Excuse me!	*Anteeksi.*
It doesn't matter!	*Ei ansaitse!*
Yes.	*Kyllä.*
No.	*Ei.*
O.K. *or* fine.	*Hyvä on.*
I understand.	*Minä ymmärrän.*
Yes, I understand.	*Kyllä, minä ymmärrän.*
I don't understand.	*En ymmärrä.*
what	*mitä*
say	*sanotte*
What did you say?	*Mitä te sanotte?* or *Mitä sanotte?*
speak	*puhukaa*
more slowly	*hitaammin*
Please speak more slowly.	*Olkaa hyvä, puhukaa hitaammin.*
do you speak?	*puhutteko*
English	*englantia*
Do you speak English?	*Puhutteko (te)*[1] *englantia?*
gentleman *or* Mister	*herra*
Mr. Toivonen.	*Herra Toivonen.*

---

[1] Finnish sounds or words in parentheses in this unit may be omitted in colloquial speech.

Mrs.	*rouva*
Mrs. Toivonen.	*Rouva Toivonen.*
Miss	*neiti*
Miss Toivonen.	*Neiti Toivonen.*
where	*missä*
is	*on*
the restaurant	*ravintola*
Where's the restaurant?	*Missä on ravintola?* or *Miss on ravintola?*

After you have gone through the *Useful Words and Phrases*, go through them again with your book open, following the same procedure as before. Repeat each word and phrase in a loud voice, immediately after hearing it. Let yourself go and say the phrases right out.

Go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* once more with your book open, but this time take turns letting each member of your group repeat individually until everybody has taken part. Remember that this is your first solo performance, so keep on the alert. If the Guide asks you to repeat, do so with enthusiasm and try to mimic him as best you can until he is satisfied with your pronunciation. When you have satisfied him, you can be sure that you are speaking understandable Finnish. Continue this individual repetition as long as time permits. If you are using only the phonograph records, your Leader will see to it that you repeat and that everyone gets the most out of this individual preformance.

2. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* at least twice in unison and at least once more individually?

Did you repeat each word and phrase in a loud, clear voice immediately after hearing it?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Finnish?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Useful Words and Phrases* once again as soon as you can, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

Here are other useful words and phrases which you will want to use immediately if you are in a country where Finnish is spoken. These are being given to you as a "language first aid." *Learn them by heart.*

In working with this material, follow the same procedure you used with the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Section A. After you have gone through the list once, repeating in unison, read the *Hints on Pronunciation* which follow. Then go through the list a second and a third time, as in Section A.

1. Useful Words and Phrases (*Cont.*)

Record 3A, beginning

hotel	*hotelli*
Where's the hotel?	*Miss(ä) on hotelli?*
I'm looking for	*etsin*
some hotel	*hotellia*
I'm looking for the hotel.	*Minä etsin hotellia.*
the station	*asema*
Where's the station?	*Miss(ä) on asema?*
the toilet	*käymälä*
Where's the toilet?	*Miss(ä) on käymälä?*

Directions

To the right.	*Oikealle.*
it	*se*
It's to the right.	*Se on oikealle.*

To the left.	*Vasemmalle.*
It's to the left.	*Se on vasemmalle.*
straight	*suoraan*
ahead	*eteenpäin*
Straight ahead.	*Suoraan eteenpäin.*
Here.	*Täällä.*
There.	*Tuolla.*

Designation

this	*tämä*
What's this?	*Mitä tämä on?*
Where's that?	*Missä se on?*[a]
this	*tämän*
in Finnish	*suomeksi*
How do you say this in Finnish?	*Kuinka (te) sanotte tämän suomeksi?*
you want	*haluatte*
What do you want?	*Mitä te haluatte?*
I want	*haluan*
some cigarettes	*savukkeita*
I want some cigarettes.	*Minä haluan savukkeita.*
some matches	*tulitikkuja*
I want some matches.	*Minä haluan tulitikkuja.*

---

[a] The record says *mitä* for *missä* here. This is an error.

word	*sana*
is pronounced	*äännetään*
How do you pronounce this word?	*Kuinka tämä sana äännetään?*
I should like	*haluaisin*
to buy	*ostaa*
I'd like to buy.	*Minä haluaisin ostaa.*
to eat	*syödä*
I'd like to eat.	*Minä haluaisin syödä.*

Foods

I want	*Minä haluan*
some bread	*leipää*
some meat	*lihaa*
some potatoes	*perunoita*
some milk	*maitoa*
some beer	*olutta*
Do you want some coffee?	*Haluatteko te kahvia?*
I want some milk.	*Minä haluan maitoa.*
right here	*tässä*
Here it is.	*Tässä se on.*
give	*antakaa*
to me	*minulle*
some water	*vettä*
Please give me some water.	*Olkaa hyvä, antakaa minulle vettä.*

Price

how much	*paljonko*
costs	*maksaa*
How much is this?	*Paljonko tämä maksaa?*
much	*paljon*
you want	*tahdotte*
How much do you want?	*Kuinka paljon (te) tahdotte?*
many	*monta*
How many do you want?	*Kuinka monta te tahdotte?*
Record 3B, beginning	
too	*liian*
expensive	*kallis*
It's too expensive.	*Se on liian kallis.*
cheap	*halpa*
This is cheap.	*Tämä on halpa.*
some marks	*markkaa*
six	*kuusi*
It's six marks.	*Se on kuusi markkaa.*
cheaper	*halvempi*
Give me the cheaper one.	*Antakaa minulle halvempi.*
very	*hyvin*
Very expensive.	*Hyvin kallis.*

it *or* its	*sen*
price	*hinta*
ten	*kymmenen*
some pennies	*penniä*
It's (price is) ten pennies.	*Sen hinta on kymmenen penniä.*

Time

time *or* watch	*kello*
What time is it?	*Mitä kello on?*
three	*kolme*
It's three o'clock.	*Kello on kolme.*
At what time?	*Mihin aikaan?*
two	*kaksi* or *kaks*
At two.	*Kahdelta.*
when	*koska*
train	*juna*
arrives	*saapuu*
When does the train arrive?	*Koska juna saapuu?*
four	*neljä*
At four.	*Neljältä.*
leaves	*lähtee*
When does the train leave?	*Koska juna lähtee?*
five	*viisi* or *viis*
At five.	*Viideltä.*

movies	*elokuvat*
they begin	*alkavat*
When does the movie begin?	*Koska elokuvat alkavat?*

Additional Numbers

One	*Yksi* or *yks*
Seven	*Seitsemän*
Eight	*Kahdeksan*
Nine	*Yhdeksän*
Hundred	*Sata*
Thousand	*Tuhat*
and	*ja*
Two and two are four.	*Kaksi ja kaksi on neljä.*
Three and five are eight.	*Kolme ja viisi on kahdeksan.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

To the Group Leader: Read over with the group the following *Hints on Pronunciation.* Let different members of the group illustrate the proper sounds by reading the Finnish examples of sounds and groups of sounds. Take time to discuss these hints and make sure that everyone understands them. You will find each example on the phonograph records. Between each set of examples ("Practices") there is a clear space of record or *spiral,* so that you can play each set as often as necessary.

The pronunciation of Finnish does not involve any great difficulties. This, of course, does not mean that you can use English sounds in Finnish words and expect to be understood. But you will find that many of the sounds are sufficiently similar to your own so that you will have practically no difficulty with them. However, there are some Finnish sounds that are different from anything in English. For that reason you must listen carefully and try hard to imitate your Guide. If you do this and follow the *Hints on Pronunciation* which will be given to you from time to time, you will be able to pronounce Finnish so that you can be readily understood.

In Finnish writing one letter stands generally for one and only one sound. There are eight vowel letters, each of which has approximately the same value. Five of them are quite easy:

Record 1A, beginning

Letter	*Stands for*
a	a sound like *a* in *father*, but very short
e	a sound like *e* in *let*
i	a sound like *i* in *pink*
o	a sound like *o* in *note*, but very short
u	a sound like *oo* in *cool*, but very short

PRACTICE 1

asema	(station)
te	(you)
minä	(I)
on	(is)
tuhat	(thousand)

The important thing to remember about these five vowels is this: be sure at all times to pronounce them quite short; if you fail to do this, you may be misunderstood. The reason for this is that in Finnish each of these vowels may occur long (written by repeating the letter—*aa*, *ee*, *ii*, *oo*, *uu*), and when this happens, the word means something totally different. (Thus, while *te* means 'you,' *tee* means 'tea'; *maksa* means 'liver,' *maksaa* means 'costs'; *tuli* means 'fire,' *tuuli* means 'wind.')

PRACTICE 2

Record 1A, after first spiral

ostaa	to buy
anteeksi	I beg your pardon
kiitos	thanks
kuusi	six
saapuu	arrives

The letter *ä* may look somewhat unusual to you. It actually stands for a sound you have in English *hat;*

only, in pronouncing it, you should open your mouth somewhat wider and lower the flat of your tongue slightly.

PRACTICE 3

Record 1A, after second spiral

minä	I
missä	where
tämä	this

Now try *ää:*

PRACTICE 4

Record 1A, after third spiral

äännetään	is pronounced
täällä	here

In a number of expressions you have heard and imitated, you have doubtless noticed that there are some vowel sounds which are like nothing we have in English. Be careful not to substitute ordinary English sounds for these foreign sounds; in order to make the necessary distinctions between words, you must master the foreign sounds.

In Finnish there is a sound which is indicated in spelling by the letter *y*. To the English-speaking person, this sound seems to be somewhere between the sound of *ou* (as in *group*) and of *ee* (as in *beet*); and, in fact, this new sound is like both. Pronounce *ee* as in *beet;* now, without moving your tongue from the position which it is in while you say *ee,* round your lips and push them out far—and pronounce the Finnish *y* sound. Practice this in the following words:

PRACTICE 5

Record 1A, after fourth spiral

kymmenen	ten
yksi	one

There is another sound in Finnish, represented by *ö*, which is pronounced somewhat in the same way as *y;* but your jaw should be more relaxed, your mouth more open, and the tip of your tongue farther down, away from the roof of your mouth and behind the bottom teeth. Put your tongue in position to make a sound like *e* of *let;* now, without moving your tongue from the position which it is in while you say *e*, round your lips. With your tongue and lips in this position, you can make the Finnish *ö*-sound.

PRACTICE 6

Record 1A, after fifth spiral

svödä, syödä	to eat

In saying the last word, be sure to pronounce every one of the vowels: *sy-ö-dä.*

In Finnish, every word uttered in isolation is accented on the first syllable. In a phrase or sentence some words have no accent at all, but the ones which do are always stressed on their first syllable.

Before you leave this section, be sure you know how to pronounce the vowels here listed and explained. Of course, you will have plenty of opportunity to practice them as the course progresses, but if you are in doubt about any of them, *ask for aid right now.*

3. Check Yourself

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Finnish?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Useful Words and Phrases* once again as soon as you can, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

If your group has time for outside assignments, sections marked *Individual Study* may be done between meetings of the group. Otherwise use them as independent study during a group meeting.

1. Covering the English (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in *Sections A* and *B*. Cover up the English. Read the Finnish aloud. Keep your voice down if you are working with the rest of the group. Follow your Guide's pronunciation as nearly as you can remember, and test yourself to see if you can recall the meaning of each word and phrase. Check the expressions you are not sure about, and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the English and find their meaning. Repeat this procedure at least three times or until you are satisfied that you know every expression.

2. Review of Useful Words and Phrases

To the Group Leader: Read again for your information the numbered suggestions just preceding *Useful Words and Phrases* on pages 3-4. Your Guide has been directed in his manual to pay particular attention to the correct pronunciation of vowels. He may ask members of the group to repeat words or phrases a good many times in an effort to get a pronunciation that is more nearly correct. See that they listen closely that they repeat promptly and loud enough so that everyone can hear them, and that they imitate the Guide to the last detail.

Go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* in *Sections A* and *B* twice. The first time, have the members of the group repeat individually after the Guide with books open. The second time, have them close their books. The Guide will give each Finnish expression twice, as before. Let the students take turns giving the English equivalent the first time they hear the Guide speak the Finnish and repeating the Finnish as usual the second time. This will help them to check on the meaning of all Finnish expressions in *Useful Words and Phrases.*

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in *Sections A* and *B*. The first time you go through the list, take turns repeating the Finnish after the Guide. Keep your book open, and get all the help you can from the *Hints on Pronunciation*. Pay particular attention to what you have learned about the pronunciation of the vowels. Make every effort to satisfy your Guide with your pronunciation.

The second time you go through the list, check up on the meaning of the Finnish. Keep your books closed and take turns giving the English equivalent the first time you hear the Finnish expression and repeating the Finnish as usual the second time. If you have any trouble with the English, you should find time for more individual study of the *Useful Words and Phrases*, covering the English and checking up on the meaning when you read the Finnish.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

To the Group Leader: The conversations which appear in this section will be read to the group by the Guide or played on the phonograph records. English equivalents are omitted from the *Listening In* material so that students can get practice in understanding spoken Finnish which uses the vocabulary they know. Meaning, therefore, is to be emphasized.

The first time you go through the conversations, have the Guide repeat a conversation, if necessary to help clear up meaning, before you go on to the next conversation. If you have no Guide, lift the needle of the phonograph at the end of each conversation and let the students discuss the meaning of any sentences that are not understood.

Go through the conversations a second time without stopping. Pay about equal attention to pronunciation and meaning.

Finally, assign parts and have the students read the conversations. Give everyone a chance. Suggest that the actors actually take the parts, stand up and move around, sit at a table in the restaurant, stand behind the counter in the store, etc. Keep it moving. Get everyone to speak up! Take a part yourself.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversations and repeat after him. If you have no Guide, you should use the phonograph records, repeating the Finnish immediately after you hear it. At the end of each conversation take time out to check up on the meaning of what you have heard and said. Ask someone in the group to give you the English equivalent of any expression you do not understand. If necessary, go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* to find the meaning. Almost all the words and the expressions you have had in *Useful Words and Phrases* occur in the following conversations.

Record 3B, after spiral

I. Asking Information

John

Anteeksi,
missä on ravintola?

Herra Toivonen

Suoraan eteenpäin.

John

Minä en ymmärrä.
Olkaa hyvä,
puhukaa hitaammin.

Herra Toivonen

Tämä on asema.
Hotelli on vasemmalle.
Suoraan eteenpäin on ravintola.

John

Kiitos, minä ymmärrän.[3]

Herra Toivonen

Hyvä on.
Hyvästi.

Record 4A, beginning

II. In the Restaurant

Neiti

Hyvää iltaa

John

Hyvää iltaa.
Minä haluaisin syödä.
Olkaa hyvä. antakaa minulle vettä.

Neiti

Kyllä.
Haluatteko te kahvia?

---

[3] The record makes a mistake here.

John

Ei kiitos.
Minä haluan maitoa.

Neiti

Mitä te tahdotte syödä?

John

Minä haluaisin lihaa,
perunoita ja leipää.
Paljonko tämä maksaa?

Neiti

Kymmenen markkaa
ja viisi penniä.

John

Minä haluaisin ostaa savukkeita.
Olkaa hyvä, antakaa minulle tulitikkuja.

Neiti

Tässä on.

John

Kiitos.
Neiti, mihin aikaan elokuvat alkavat?

Neiti

Elokuvat alkavat viideltä.

John

Mitä kello on?

Neiti

Kello on neljä.

John

Kiitos.

Neiti

Ei ansaitse!

John

Hyvästi.

2. Check Yourself

Is there any expression in any of these conversations that you do not understand now? If there is, find the meaning of it or ask other members of your group before you proceed. If no one knows, refer to the *Useful Words and Phrases.*

Go through the conversations once more, following the same plan as before. Imitate carefully and be sure to keep in mind the English equivalent of everything you are saying in Finnish.

Finally, go through the conversations again, but this time take turns. The Leader will assign parts and the exercise is to continue at least until everyone has

had a chance to speak one of the parts. Keep this going as long as you have time. Remember that this is another solo performance and that you are to get the most out of it. When your turn comes, speak clearly and with enthusiasm. Put yourself in the situation and let yourself go. If the Guide asks you to repeat, do so until he is satisfied with your pronunciation.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in *Sections A* and *B*. Cover up the Finnish. Read the English silently and test yourself to see if you can speak the Finnish for each word and phrase. Check the expressions you are uncertain about and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the Finnish and review them. Go through the list once more and continue for at least three times or until you can give the Finnish readily for all the expressions. To make sure of this, pick out expressions at random and see if you can speak out the Finnish quickly. Speak the Finnish aloud and try to imitate your Guide's pronunciation as well as you can remember it.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

To the Group Leader: Go to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in *Sections A* and *B*. Read to the group the English equivalent of the Finnish expressions. Call on different students (not in any fixed order) asking for the correct Finnish for the English.

For instance, say to A, "*Kuinka te sanotte tämän suomeksi:* Where's the restaurant?" The students are to respond with their books closed. The Guide will indicate by a negative sign whenever he hears a Finnish expression that is wrong, or, if there is no Guide, the other members of the group will indicate that they do not agree. Immediately ask someone else to give the expression correctly. Any group member who has difficulty in giving the correct Finnish should be told to review the *Useful Words and Phrases* thoroughly before the next meeting of the group. Do not spend any time talking about the *Why* of the Finnish; stick to the *How*.

There are two precautions which the Leader must observe in all exercises of this sort and in the conversation practice throughout the course. Be sure that everyone understands them. They are as follows:

1. Every Finnish expression must be given smoothly and completely before the student's performance can be considered satisfactory. If there is an error in the first attempt, ask the student to give the expression over again in complete form. If he fumbles badly, turn to someone else.
2. Everyone must speak loud enough, so that all can hear.

Every student should be encouraged to call out "Louder, please!" if he can't hear. Check on this occasionally by pointing to the student who is listening to someone else's Finnish and asking "What did he say?"

If you do not observe these precautions, much time and effort may be wasted in group meetings.

In this section you are going to have your first chance to engage in conversation in Finnish. This, of course, is the most useful part of the entire unit and the part you should do with the greatest amount of pep and realism. Do it half-heartedly and you lose most of the value of the unit. Do it earnestly and enthusiastically and you will find that you can really say a great many things in Finnish, fluently and correctly. Read the instructions carefully, get everything you are to do straight in your mind, and then plunge in.

In order to fix in your mind the expressions you will need in the conversation, check yourself on your ability to speak the Finnish you have learned. By now you should not have to grope for it. The Leader of the group will ask you to supply in turn the Finnish expressions for the English equivalents which he reads from the *Useful Words and Phrases*. If you have done a thorough job of recalling the Finnish when you are looking only at the English equivalents, as suggested in Section E, you will have no difficulty in responding promptly and smoothly when you hear the English.

Your Guide will let you know if your Finnish expressions are not correct. If you have no Guide, the members of the group should be ready to correct faulty expressions.

3. Conversation

To the Group Leader: Read the following directions with the class. Encourage the students to strike out for themselves. Spend all the time you can on free conversation practice in an effort to get to the point where students can speak easily and smoothly with a minimum of *ums* and *ers.*

The Leader will assign parts and will ask you to take turns in pairs, carrying on the following conversations. The two persons who are talking together should stand up and act out their parts, speaking as smoothly and naturally as possible. Make it real and get some fun out of it. The Guide will help you if your Finnish is wrong or if your pronunciation is bad. The Leader will prompt you if you are not sure what comes next in your part.

I. Getting Directions

A approaches a stranger, *B*, and asks him for information.

1. *A* apologizes for speaking to *B* and asks him where there is (a) a restaurant, (b) a railroad station or (c) a hotel.

2. *B* gives *A* directions (a) to the right, (b) to the left or (c) straight ahead.
3. *A* apologizes again, explains that he does not understand, and asks *B* if he will please speak slowly.
4. *B* repeats slowly and clearly.
5. *A* says he understands. He adds he would like to buy cigarettes and matches.
6. *B* again gives directions.
7. *A* thanks *B*.
8. *B* says that *A* is welcome.

II. At a Restaurant

C sits down at a table in a restaurant and is waited on by *D*.

1. *D* says (a) good morning, or (b) good day to *C* and asks how *C* is.
2. *C* says, thanks, he's well; he asks after *D*'s health.
3. *D* is also well and asks what *C* would like.
4. *C* orders a meal—he wants meat and potatoes and bread.
5. *D* asks if he wants coffee.
6. *C* says he wants beer.
7. After eating, *C* asks for some water and asks how much it all costs.
8. *D* says that it costs nine marks ten cents.
9. *C* thanks *D* and says good-bye.

If it is desired, particularly when the group is too large to give everybody a chance to participate in the conversation, the exercise may be continued for a generous length of time. It is also a good practice to give people who are having difficulties a second trial.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

To the Group Leader: You can tell from the work that you did on conversation in *Section E* whether or not the group needs to spend more time in preparing for successful conversation. If necessary, spend the first part of this section in individual study, having members of the group say the Finnish of the *Useful Words and Phrases* when they have the English expressions covered. Check up on their vocabulary as in *Section E*. Then continue the work with conversation which you started in *Section E*.

In this section you are to continue taking part in conversations. If the work didn't go well in *Section E*, take time to go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* again with the English covered and to give the Finnish of the English expressions as your Leader asks for it.

Put everything you can into the conversations. Act your part; don't hesitate to talk for fear of making a mistake. You'll make plenty of mistakes at first, but the important thing is to practice talking. You can't correct an error until you have made it.

Try out your Finnish whenever you get a chance. Don't wait for meetings of the group to practice what you have learned. Pair off between meetings and see what you can do with Finnish greetings and conversation. When you are alone, run over the list of Finnish expressions you know. Review them in your mind. Try saying them. See how much you can improve your pronunciation and control of the language in whatever time you can find between meetings of the group. Make this a regular practice throughout the course.

Finder List[4]

alkavat	they begin
antakaa	give
anteeksi	excuse me
asema	station
ei	no
ei ansaitse	it doesn't matter
elokuvat	movies
englantia	English
en ymmärrä	I don't understand
eteenpäin	ahead
etsin	I'm looking for
halpa	cheap
haluaisin	I'd like
haluan	I want
haluatte	you want
halvempi	cheaper
herra	gentleman, Mr.
hinta	price
hitaammin	slower
hotelli	hotel
hotellia	some hotel
hyvin	very
hyvä on	O.K. *or* fine
hyvästi	good-bye
hyvää huomenta	good morning
hyvää iltaa	good evening
hyvää päivää	good day

---

[4] Note on the Finnish alphabet: the Finnish alphabet is similar to the English, but note that the letter *y* is followed by the letter *ä*, which is followed by the letter *ö*.

ja	and
juna	train
kahdeksan	eight
kahdelta	at two
kahvia	some coffee
kaksi	two
kallis	expensive
kello	watch *or* clock
kiitos	thank you
kolme	three
koska	when
kuinka	how
kuinka te voitte?	how are you?
kuusi	six
kyllä	yes
kymmenen	ten
käymälä	toilet
leipää	some bread
lihaa	some meat
liian	too
lähtee	starts
maitoa	some milk
maksaa	costs
markkaa	some marks
mihin aikaan	at what time
minä	I
minulle	to me
missä	where
mitä	what
monta	many
neiti	Miss
neljä	four
neljältä	at four
oikealle	to the right
olkaa hyvä	please *or* you're welcome
olutta	some beer
on	is
ostaa	to buy
paljon	much
paljonko	how much
penniä	some pennies
perunoita	some potatoes
puhukaa	speak
puhutteko	do you speak
ravintola	restaurant
rouva	Mrs.
saapuu	arrives
sana	word
sata	hundred
sanotte	you say

savukkeita	some cigarettes
se	it
seitsemän	seven
sen	it *or* its
suomeksi	in Finnish
suoraan	straight
syödä	to eat
tahdotte	you want
te	you
tuhat	thousand
tulitikkuja	some matches
tuolla	there
tämä	this
tämän	this
tässä	here
täällä	here
vasemmalle	to the left
vettä	some water
viideltä	at five
viisi	five
yhdeksän	nine
yksi	one
ymmärrän	I understand
äännetään	is pronounced

UNIT 2

MEETING PEOPLE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: Adopt the following steps as standard practice in conducting this course:

1. Before each meeting of the group, be sure to read carefully and get clearly in mind the instructions covering those sections of a unit which you expect to take up in the group meeting.
2. Before each group meeting, see that the Guide is available with his manual *Ohjeita Kielenopastajalle* or that phonograph and records are ready.
3. Have the members of the group read together the instructions that precede each piece of work they are to do before they try to do the work. Let one member of the group read these instructions aloud while the others follow the reading in their books.
4. Take time, following the reading of all instructions, to make sure that everyone understands exactly what he is to do.

In Section A of *Unit 2* follow the same procedure as that outlined for *Useful Words and Phrases* of Section A, *Unit 1*. Go through the *Basic Sentences* once with everyone repeating in unison after the Guide or phonograph record. Then take up the *Hints on Pronunciation* which follow. Come back to the *Basic Sentences* and go through them once more, this time having the members of the group repeat individually in turn after the Guide or the record. Pay particular attention to those items of pronunciation you have been working on. Finally, go through the *Basic Sentences* a third time with solo repetition. The Guide will call for as many repetitions as may be necessary to get a pronunciation that sounds to him like Finnish.

Everyone should speak up. Keep the work moving right along.

Begin this section by listening, in the manner already outlined in Section A of the preceding unit, to the *Basic Sentences* which follow. Be sure to keep in mind the meaning of the Finnish by reading silently the English equivalent. Repeat each word loudly and clearly right after you hear it. As you pronounce the Finnish, do so as though you really meant what you are saying. Do not forget that these words and phrases convey a real meaning and it is up to you to say them as though you were actually using them. Go through the sentences in unison and with your book open.

The *Basic Sentences* are set up as conversations so that you may hear and speak the Finnish as you would hear and speak it if you were talking with Finnish people.

Although numerous characters are introduced in these *Basic Sentences*, it is not important for you to try to keep in mind just who they are or their relationship to one another. You are concerned rather with *what* they say and *how* they say it.

1. Basic Sentences

Record 4A, after space

Herra Black talks to herra Toivonen about introductions.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
Herra Black	
Good day!	*Hyvää päivää!*
Herra Toivonen	
How are you?	*Mitä kuuluu?*
Herra Black	
only *or* just	*vain*
Thanks, I'm just fine.	*Kiitos, hyvää vain.*

may I get?	*saanko*
to ask for	*pyytää*
for your advice	*neuvoanne*
May I ask your advice?	*Saanko pyytää neuvoanne?*

Herra Toivonen

Sure.	*Tietysti!*
I'm able	*voin*
to do	*tehdä*
for you	*puolestanne*
What can I do for you?	*Mitä voin tehdä puolestanne?*

Herra Black

tell	*sanokaa*
Please tell me:	*Olkaa hyvä, sanokaa minulle:*
how	*miten*
in Finland	*Suomessa*
one addresses	*puhutellaan*
strange person	*vierasta henkilöä*
how do you address a stranger in Finland?	*miten Suomessa puhutellaan vierasta henkilöä?*

Herra Toivonen

either	*joko*
using	*käyttäen*
some word	*sanaa*

or	*tai*
doctor	*tohtori*
manager	*johtaja*
Either by using the word 'Doctor,' 'Manager,' or 'Mister.'	*Joko käyttäen sanaa 'tohtori,' 'johtaja,' tai 'herra.'*
as in	*kuten*
As in 'Mr. Black,' 'Doctor Toivonen,' or 'Manager Smith.'	*Kuten 'herra Black,' 'tohtori Toivonen,' tai 'johtaja Smith.'*

Record 4B, beginning

	Herra Black
Thanks very much.	*Kiitoksia paljon.*
	Herra Toivonen
I'd like some cigarettes.	*Minä haluaisin savukkeita.*
	Herra Black
How many do you want?	*Kuinka monta te tahdotte?*
	Herra Toivonen
box	*laatikon*
I'd like a pack of cigarettes.	*Minä haluaisin laatikon savukkeita.*
	Herra Black
some Americans	*amerikkalaisia*
I have some American cigarettes.	*Minulla on amerikkalaisia savukkeita.*

Herra Toivonen

Thanks very much.	*Kiitoksia paljon.*
would you like?	*haluaisitteko*
to come	*tulla*
with me	*kanssani*
for dinner	*päivälliselle*
Would you like to come with me for dinner?	*Haluaisitteko tulla kanssani päivälliselle?*

Herra Black

gladly	*mielelläni*
Thanks, I'll be glad to.	*Kiitos, mielelläni.*
would you present?	*esittäisittekö*
me	*minut*
to your daughter	*tyttärellenne*
Would you introduce me to your daughter?	*Esittäisittekö minut tyttärellenne?*

Herra Toivonen

It'll be a pleasure.	*Mielelläni.*

(*At the Toivonen home*)

Herra Black

Hello!	*Terve!*

	Herra Toivonen
to present	*esitellä*
May I present Mr. Black?	*Saanko esitellä herra Black?*
my daughter	*tyttäreni*
My daughter Eve.	*Tyttäreni Eeva.*
	Herra Black
gay	*hauska*
to get acquainted	*tutustua*
I'm glad to meet you.	*Hauska tutustua.*
	Herra Toivonen
from New York	*New Yorkista*
Mr. Black is a New Yorker.	*Herra Black on New Yorkista.*
	Neiti Toivonen
I was	*kävin*
once	*kerran*
in the United States	*Yhdysvalloissa*
I was in the United States once.	*Kävin kerran Yhdysvalloissa.*
	Herra Black
Excuse me.	*Anteeksi.*
I don't understand.	*Minä en ymmärrä* or *en ymmärrä.*
Please speak more slowly.	*Olkaa hyvä, puhukaa hitaammin.*

Neiti Toivonen

that	*että*
I said that I was in the United States.	*Sanoin, että kävin Yhdysvalloissa.*

Herra Black

Really?	*Niinkö?*
What time does the movie start?	*Mihin aikaan elokuvat alkavat?*

Herra Toivonen

At seven.	*Kello seitsemän.*

Herra Black

Miss Toivonen:	*Neiti Toivonen:*
would you come?	*tulisitteko*
to the movie	*elokuviin*
tonight	*tänä iltana*
would you come to the movie with me tonight?	*tulisitteko kanssani elokuviin tänä iltana?*

Neiti Toivonen

Thanks.	*Kiitos!*
I'll be glad to.	*Mielelläni.*
I like	*pidän*
from the movies	*elokuvista*
I like the movies.	*Pidän elokuvista.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

To the Group Leader: The explanations preceding each *Practice* should be read by the group and discussed before the *Practice* is attempted. The practice for *Hints on Pronunciation* is in the Guide's Manual and on the phonograph records. Follow the same procedure in working with the practice material that you have followed with the *Basic Sentences*. Go through as many times as may be necessary to give each member of the group reasonable control of the item of pronunciation that is being taught. Have the group repeat after the Guide, first in unison, then individually.

You will find that the *Practice* material is presented in sections on the phonograph record, with a narrow space of clear record between each section. This arrangement will make it possible for you to play each section of *Practice* as it is needed.

Review of Vowel Sounds. Make sure you can pronounce accurately the Finnish vowel sounds, both short and double, which were discussed in the preceding unit. If you are in doubt as to the sound of any vowel, remember it, listen for that vowel sound and make a special effort to imitate it well the next time you go through the *Basic Sentences*. Pay special attention to these points:

a. Pronounce single vowels short, double vowels long. Note these double vowels:

PRACTICE 7

Record 1A, after sixth spiral

kiitos	thanks	*hyvää päivää*	good day
laatikon	box	*anteeksi*	excuse me

b. Imitate carefully the sounds represented by *ö* and *y*.

PRACTICE 8

Record 1A, after seventh spiral

henkilöä	person	*käyttäen*	using
tyttärellenne	to your daughter	*niinkö*	really?
Yhdysvalloisa	in the United States		

c. Note the vowel *u*. This vowel sound is not exactly the same as the vowel sound you hear in English *cool* (shortened). When you pronounce the Finnish *u*, your tongue becomes tense, is retracted further than in pronouncing the *oo* of *cool*, and is slightly lower down (that is, further away from your palate). Listen very carefully and t[illegible]

PRACTICE 9

Record 1A, after eighth spiral

puhutellaan	one addresses
kuten	as in

tulla	to come
tutustua	to get acquainted

d. In Finnish, as you now know, there are eight vowels, which may also occur double. Moreover, there are a great many other vowel combinations possible. You will find a detailed discussion of vowel combinations with practices in Unit 9, pages 158-61, and in Unit 10, pages 177-8. Note in the following preliminary examples how your Guide or the records pronounce these groups of vowels.

PRACTICE 10

Record 1A, after ninth spiral

käymälä	toilet	*neuvoanne*	for your advice
tietysti	sure	*käyttäen*	using
haluaisin	I'd like	*seitsemän*	seven

If you are uncertain about any of the points of pronunciation which have been discussed, ask your Guide to repeat the words and phrases with which you are having trouble, and try to correct your pronunciation. Remember that the discussion and written examples are at best an imperfect representation of the sounds. They are only intended as an aid to you.

When you are satisfied that you can pronounce correctly all the sounds, go through the *Basic Sentences* taking turns and with your book open. As you repeat after your Guide, keep your eyes on the spelling and note in particular the examples of the sounds discussed. Do not hesitate to ask your Guide to repeat it if you are uncertain about any sound.

Finally go through the *Basic Sentences*, again taking turns but with your book closed. Listen carefully to your Guide and make sure that your pronunciation satisfies him.

3. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice with your book open and then at least once more with your book closed?

Did you repeat each word and phrase immediately after hearing it in a loud, clear voice?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even if it seemed different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Finnish?

If your Guide asked you to repeat, did you do so eagerly and with plenty of pep as many times as necessary until he was satisfied with what you were saying?

Are you satisfied that you can pronounce the eight Finnish vowels?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Basic Sentences*, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

If your group has time for outside assignments, do the *Word Study* between meetings of the group. Otherwise make it independent study in the group meeting.

In this section we take up some of the words and expressions you have just learned and examine them to see how the language is built. First read the words and expressions in each list and make sure that you understand what they mean. Then read the comment which follows each list. This should make clear to you just how the words function and how they are put together. If there are any points that are not clear to you, make note of them and ask about them at the next meeting of the group. Follow the same procedure with each list and each comment.

Comment One—Vowel Harmony

kymmenen	'ten'	*ravintola*	'restaurant'
käymälä	'toilet'	*kahdeksan*	'eight'
neljältä	'at four'	*huomenta*	'morning'
käyttäen	'using'	*savukkeita*	'some cigarettes'
päivälliselle	'for dinner'	*vasemmalle*	'to the left'
tyttäreni	'my daughter'	*johtaja*	'manager'

These two columns contain half a dozen words each. All are of several syllables, and were selected more or less at random from among those you know. Write down the vowels in these words: thus, *yee*, *äää*, *eää*, and so forth, in the lefthand column, and *aioa*, *aeo*, *uoea*, and so forth, in the righthand column. Study the two columns, and you will observe an interesting fact about Finnish words: certain vowels never occur in the same word with certain other vowels.

The eight Finnish vowels fall into three groups: *y*, *ö*, *ä*; *u*, *o*, *a*; and *i*, *e*. Let's call the first the *y*-group, the second the *u*-group; and the last two *neutral vowels*. All but a handful of Finnish words contain more than one syllable. It is consequently important that you understand the following statements about vowel harmony:

If the first syllable of a Finnish word contains a vowel of the *y*-group, the following syllables of the same word must have either vowels of the *y*-group or *neutral vowels* (that is, *y*, *ö*, *ä*, *i*, *e*).

If the first syllable of a Finnish word contains a vowel, of the *u*-group, the following syllables of the same word must have either vowels of the *u*-group or *neutral vowels* (that is, *u*, *o*, *a*, *i*, *e*).

If the first syllable of a Finnish word contains a *neutral vowel*, the second syllable may contain any vowel; if the second vowel is of the *y*-group the vowels thereafter will follow the first rule; if the second vowel is of the *u*-group the vowels thereafter will follow the second rule; and if the second vowel is *neutral*, the earliest *y*-group or *u*-group vowel in the word (if any), will determine all succeeding vowels.

There is but one exception to the above three statements: a word belonging to the *y*-group and one of the *u*-group may be compounded into a single word (that is, a sequence of syllables with a single stress). But these exceptions are apparent rather than real, because compound words are easily broken into two (by placing a stress on the first syllable of the second part of the compound).

Comment Two—Question Suffix

paljonko tämä maksaa?	how much is this?
saanko pyytää neuvoanne?	may I ask for your advice?
haluaisitteko tulla kanssani?	would you like to come with me?
esittäisittekö minut tyttärellenne?	would you present me to your daughter?
niinkö?	really?

As you study the structure of a Finnish word, you will see that it is generally composed of two parts: a *stem*, and one or more *suffixes*. We will examine the stem more closely later, but for a while you must learn some suffixes.

Now read the five sentences carefully and note what they have in common. The first three sentences have this in common: the first word of each sentence ends in *-ko* (*paljon-ko, saan-ko* and *haluaisitte-ko*). The first word of the remaining sentences ends in *-kö* (*esittäisitte-kö, niin-kö*). These endings *-ko* and *-kö* are suffixes; moreover, *-ko* and *-kö* are one and the same suffix. The reason for the different vowels is of course that a suffix in Finnish must be capable of being joined both to a word with *y*-group vowels, and word with *u*-group vowels; consequently, unless the suffix has a neutral vowel *e* or *i*, you may assume that it will have, potentially, two vowels; depending on what stem it is added to, it will appear with *y* or *u*; *ö* or *o*; *ä* or *a*. It follows that it is unnecessary to refer to a suffix by both vowels, for, unless neutral, the other will always be possible. Thus, we can list *-ko*, *-kö*, simply as *-ko*. We will always list suffixes, and refer to them in the *Word-Study*, by the form with the *vowel* of the *u*-group (because it is easier to write).

To return, then, to the *-ko* suffix. This suffix indicates that the sentence is a question (also shown by a question mark after the last word). The suffix is always appended to the first word in the sentence, which is most often a verb (*saan* 'I get', *haluaisitte* 'you would like', *esittäisitte* 'you would introduce'), but which can be another word (*paljon* 'much', *niin* 'so'). Still another example: *tulisittteko kanssani tänä iltana* 'would you come with me tonight' (*tulisitte* 'you will come').

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Read aloud several times all the examples given you in the *Word Study*. Then cover the English and see if you know the meaning of every item. Repeat the operation until you are sure that you know every expression. As a final test, cover the Finnish and see if you can speak out the Finnish expressions by simply looking at the English. Skip about the test yourself thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* with your Guide or the phonograph record. Go through them as many times as you can, taking turns repeating the Finnish individually. Try it with books closed and see how you get along without the help of the *Aids to Listening*. But *always* keep in mind the meaning of the Finnish you are hearing and speaking. As you go through the *Basic Sentences* be on the lookout for examples of the points in *Word Study* you have just covered.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences* with your Guide or the phonograph record. For the detailed procedure to be followed read again the instructions given above for the review of the first half of *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences
(Individual Study)

Here is your chance to find out just how well you have learned the meaning of the Finnish expressions you have had up to this point. Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in Section A and cover the English. Read the Finnish aloud and see whether you can supply the English equivalents of the words and phrases. Mark those you are not sure about and after reading the list through, uncover the English and look up their meaning. Cover the English again and repeat the procedure until you can go through the entire list giving all the meanings without difficulty.

When you are satisfied that you can go through the *Basic Sentences*, giving the meaning for any expression you say in Finnish, try the following exercise:

3. What Would You Say?

I. For each of the following situations two or more Finnish expressions are given. Read all the expressions aloud and check the one you think best fits each situation. Be sure you know why the other choices are not suitable. At the next meeting of the group you will be asked to say what you have chosen and you will have a chance to test your answers. Do not write anything down.

1. You meet a young lady before lunch and you say:
   a. *Hyvää iltaa.*
   b. *Hyvää huomenta.*
   c. *Hyvää päivää.*

2. She asks about your health, saying:
   a. *Kuinka te voitte?*
   b. *Koska juna saapuu?*
   c. *Missä on käymälä?*

3. You ask what you can do for her, saying:
   a. *Saanko pyytää neuvoanne?*
   b. *Mihin aikaan juna lähtee?*
   c. *Mitä voin tehdä puolestanne?*

4. She asks you for a match, saying:
   a. *Se on liian kallis.*
   b. *Minä haluaisin ostaa perunoita.*
   c. *Minä haluaisin tulitikkuja.*

5. You give her a box, and she thanks you:
   a. *Tietysti.*
   b. *Kiitos, paljon.*
   c. *Mielelläni.*

6. Then she asks you when the movie begins:
   a. *Kuinka tämä sana äännetään?*
   b. *Kuinka monta te tahdotte?*
   c. *Koska elokuvat alkavat?*

7. You ask if she would like to go to the movies with you.
   a. *Mitä te tahdotte syödä?*
   b. *Tulisitteko kanssani elokuviin?*
   c. *Mihin aikaan elokuvat alkavat?*

II. Make questions of the following statements:

1. *Asema on vasemmalle.*
2. *Haluan monta olutta.*
3. *Tämä maksaa viisi markkaa.*
4. *Suomessa voin ostaa paljon perunoita.*
5. *Juna lähtee kahdelta.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

To the Group Leader: Read the English describing the situations in *What Would You Say?* of Section C, *Unit 2*, and call on different students, not in any fixed order, to speak the Finnish which the situation calls for. Encourage the students to give the Finnish, if they can, without reading it from their books. Then ask different members of the group to give the meaning in English of the different Finnish expressions listed for each situation.

Go back to the last exercise in the preceding section. The leader will ask different members of the group to speak the Finnish to be used in each of the situations given. Other members of the group will criticize the choices made if they do not agree with them. The Leader will also ask for the English equivalents of all the other expressions offered as choices, taking turns around the group.

2. Word Study Check-Up

To the Group Leader: As a further check on the students' understanding of the *Word Study*, read the English equivalent of the Finnish expressions given before each comment under *Word Study*. Call on different students, not in any fixed order, to give the correct Finnish for the English. For instance, say to A: ***Kuinka te sanotte suomeksi . . . ?***, asking for the various Finnish expressions given as examples in the *Word Study*. The Guide will at this point indicate by a negative sign whenever he hears a Finnish expression that is wrong. If there is no Guide, the other members of the group will signal that they do not agree. Immediately ask someone else to give the right answer. Any member of the group who has difficulty in giving the correct Finnish should be told to review the *Word Study* thoroughly before the next meeting of the group. Do not take time to this exercise to talk about the *Why*. Stick to the *How*.

The Leader will ask different members of the group to give the correct Finnish for the English equivalents of the expressions you studied in the *Word Study*. If you give the wrong answer, the Guide will let you know by making a negative sign; or, if there is no Guide, the other members of the group will indicate that they think your answer is wrong. The Leader will then immediately call on someone else for the right answer. If you have difficulty in giving the correct Finnish, review the *Word Study* thoroughly.

3. Listening In

To the Group Leader: Re-read the note *To the Group Leader* in Section D of *Unit 1*. Follow the same procedure as outlined there. The first time you go through the conversation. Then go through all of them a second time without stopping.

Finally, assign parts and have the students read the conversations. Get them to do a little acting if you can. Encourage them to speak up and to get into the spirit of the situation.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversation and repeat after him in unison. If you have no Guide, you should use the phonograph records, repeating the Finnish immediately after you hear it. At the end of each conversation take time out to check up on the meaning of any word or phrase about which you are in doubt. Ask some other member of the group to give you the English equivalent or in case no one knows, go back to the Basic Sentences of this unit and make sure that you understand everything before you proceed any further. Go through the conversations a second time, repeating after the Guide individually. Then take parts in the conversations. This Exercise contains most of the new words you have learned in this unit.

Record 5A, beginning

I. John and Eve are out on a date.

John

Hyvää iltaa.

Eeva

Hyvää iltaa.
Mitä kuuluu?

John

Kiitos hyvää vain.
Mihin aikaan elokuvat alkavat?

Eeva

Kello viisi.

John

Haluaisitteko tulla kanssani?

Eeva

Kiitos mielelläni.
Minä pidän elokuvista.

John

Hyvä.
Paljonko elokuviin maksaa?

Eeva

Kahdeksan markkaa.

(After the movie.)

John

Missä on ravintola?

Eeva

Ravintola Helsinki on vasemmalle.
Haluaisitteko syödä?

John
Kyllä, minä haluaisin leipää ja maitoa.

Eeva
Ja minä haluaisin kahvia ja leipää.

John
Neiti Toivonen, puhutteko te englantia?

Eeva
Kyllä kävin kerran Yhdysvalloissa.

John
Niinkö?

Neiti
Tässä on kahvia leipää ja maitoa.

John
Paljonko[1] *se maksaa?*

Neiti
Kuusi markkaa ja kymmenen penniä.

John
Olkaa hyvä.

Neiti
Kiitoksia paljon.

John
Haluan laatikon tulitikkuja.

Neiti
Tässä on.

John
Kiitos.
Antakaa minulle amerikkalaisia savukkeita.

Neiti
Laatikon hinta on neljä markkaa.

Eeva
Paljonko kello on?

John
Kello on kymmenen.

Eeva
Minä haluaisin vettä.

---

[1] The record says "Paljoko".

Neiti

Tässä on.
Olkaa hyvä.

Eeva

Kiitos.
Hyvästi.

Record 5A, after spiral

II. Mr. Black asks Herra Toivonen for information about trains.

Herra Black

Saanko pyytää neuvoanne?

Herra Toivonen

Tietysti!
Mitä voin tehdä puolestanne?

Herra Black

Anteeksi, minä en ymmärrä.
Olkaa hyvä, puhukaa hitaammin.

Herra Toivonen

Mitä voin tehdä puolestanne?

Herra Black

Missä on asema?

Herra Toivonen

Asema on suoraan eteenpäin.

Herra Black

Mihin aikaan juna saapuu?

Herra Toivonen

Se saapuu kello yksi.

Herra Black

Ja koska juna lähtee?

Herra Toivonen

Juna lähtee kello kolme.

Herra Black

Kiitoksia paljon.

Is there any word or phrase in this conversation that you do not understand now? If there is, be sure to find out its meaning by asking members of your group or looking it up in the *Basic Sentences.*

Go through the conversation again following the

same plan as before. Imitate carefully and keep in mind the meaning of everything you are saying in Finnish.

Finally go through the conversation a third time. Take turns speaking the parts and continue until everybody has had a chance to speak at least one of the parts. Keep this exercise going as long as you have time. Get the most out of this solo performance and when your turn comes, speak clearly and with feeling. The Guide will correct any errors he hears by asking you to repeat. Make every effort to satisfy him with your pronunciation.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences
(Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit. Cover up the Finnish. Read the English silently and test yourself to see how many words and phrases you can say in Finnish. Check the words you are uncertain about and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the Finnish and review them. Go through the list once more and continue for at least three times or until you can give the Finnish readily for all the expressions. This test is hard, but if you succeed in saying the Finnish for all the sentences by merely looking at the English, you are doing well indeed. To make sure of this, after you are certain you know the material, pick out expressions at random and see if you can still speak the Finnish quickly. As you practice, you must always speak the Finnish aloud and try to imitate the pronunciation of your Guide as well as you can recall it.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

To the Group Leader: Go to the *Basic Sentences.* Read to the group the English equivalents of the Finnish expressions. Call on different students, not in any fixed order, asking for the correct Finnish for the English. This check-up is to be conducted in the same way as the Vocabulary *Check-Up* of Section E in Unit 1. If you have any question about the proper procedure, review the note *To the Group Leader* in that Section. Remember not to spend any time talking about the *Why* of the Finnish; stick to the *How.*

Prepare the following conversations by checking yourself on your ability to speak the Finnish you have learned up to this point. As in the *Vocabulary Check-Up* of Unit 1, the Leader of the group will ask you to supply in turn the Finnish expressions for the English equivalents which he reads from the *Basic Sentences*. Figure out how to say the Finnish for each English phrase or sentence, whether it is your turn to speak or not. Only in this way can you get the most value out of the Check-Up. If there is much of the Finnish which you don't know, review the *Basic Sentences* at the first opportunity outside of the group meeting.

3. Conversation

To the Group Leader: This section represents the real purpose of the entire unit. The course is intended to teach you to speak Finnish and to understand it when you hear it spoken. Follow the instructions and give all the time you can to the free conversation practice. Any members of the group who have special difficulty recalling the Finnish words and phrases they need to express a meaning should be told to do more work with the *Useful Words and Phrases* and the *Basic Sentences*. They need, in particular, more practice in covering the Finnish and recalling it when they read the English. Practice in getting the meaning of the *Listening In* records will also help. Arrangements should be made for students to play and listen to the records whenever they can between meetings of the group.

Turn to the conversation of *Listening In*. Assign parts and ask the students to act out part of the scene and conversation of *Listening In*. Vary the situations and suggest to the students that they vary the Finnish slightly as they gain confidence in their speaking. Remember to keep the speaking loud enough so that everyone can hear. See that everyone is listening and trying to understand the Finnish that is being spoken.

The Leader will assign parts and will ask you to reproduce the conversational situations of *Listening In*. Act your part. Don't be afraid to vary the conversation if you are sure of your Finnish and use the Finnish you have learned in Unit 1 as well as in Unit 2. Continue with this practice until everyone can speak any part of the conversations even though slight changes in the situations are introduced. The following situations may be used to start with:

A is introduced to B.

(1) A asks how B is.

(2) B says, he's fine.

(3) A asks B to speak more slowly, and asks if B speaks English.

(4) B says he speaks only Finnish.

(5) A wants to know where the station is, when the train leaves (arrives).

(6) B says the train leaves (arrives) at five.

(7) A thanks B and says good-bye.

Here are several other conversations, to give more students a chance to participate:

1. X asks for Y's advice. Y says, he'll gladly help him; what can he do for X? X wants to meet Y's daughter. Y will be happy to introduce him to her, and does.

2. C, an American, meets a Finnish girl, and invites her to a movie, and afterwards to a restaurant. They order beer, and smoke American cigarettes. The girl walks C to the station, where he's leaving that night.

3. Q explains to R how you must address a stranger in Finnish. R understands little, and asks Q to speak more slowly. Q says he's sorry, but he can't speak English. He finally invites R for dinner.

Throw yourself into these conversations. Do the best you can with pronunciation and with the Finnish, but don't worry too much about mistakes. Think more of acting your part and speaking smoothly and as though you meant what you were saying. The Guide will help you correct your errors. If you can do this work well, it means that you are actually conversing in Finnish, and that, of course, is your chief aim in this course.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Read again the instructions given in Section F of the preceding unit. If necessary, spend the first part of the group meeting in individual study of the *Basic Sentences* or checking up on vocabulary, as in Section E. Then continue the conversations which you started in Section E.

Finder List

The new words and expressions and suffixes introduced in this unit, with their English equivalents, are listed below in alphabetical order for your convenient reference.

amerikkalaisia	some American(s)
elokuvista	from the movies
esitellä	to present
esittäisitte	you would present
että	that
haluaisitte	you would like
hauska	gay
hyvää vain	I'm just fine
johtaja	manager
joko	either
kanssani	with me
kerran	once
-ko	?
kuten	as in
käyttäen	using
kävin	I was
laatikon	box

mielelläni	gladly
minulla on	I have
minut	me
miten	how
mitä kuuluu	how are you?
neuvoanne	for your advice
New Yorkista	from New York
niinkö	really
pidän	I like
puhutellaan	one addresses
puolestanne	for you
pyytää	to ask for
päivälliselle	for dinner
saan	I get
sanaa	some word
sanoin	I said
sanokaa	tell
Suomessa	in Finland
tai	or
tehdä	to do
terve	hello
tietysti	sure
tohtori	doctor
tulisitte	you would come
tulla	to come
tutustua	to get acquainted
tyttärellenne	to your daughter
tyttäreni	my daughter
tänä iltana	tonight
vain	only *or* just
vierasta henkilöä	strange person
voin	I'm able to
Yhdysvalloissa	in the United States

UNIT 3

WHAT'S YOUR TRADE?

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: Read carefully the note to the *Leader* preceding Section A of Unit 2. Then go through the *Basic Sentences* once, and take up the *Hints on Pronunciation.* Go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice more individually, paying especial attention to pronunciation.

Go through the *Basic Sentences*, in unison, the same way you did for Section A of the preceding unit. Be sure to put plenty of life into your repetition of the sentences. After you have gone through the *Basic Sentences* once in unison and have done the *Hints on Pronunciation*, come back to the *Basic Sentences*. Pay particular attention to the points of pronunciation you have just been working on and go through the sentences at least twice more individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Record 5B, beginning

Liisa and Herra Stone talk about family and trades.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
Liisa	
you have	*teillä on*
some brothers	*veljiä*
some sisters	*sisaria*
Have you any brothers or sisters, Mr. Stone?	*Onko teillä veljiä tai sisaria, Herra Stone?*

	Herra Stone
some brother	*veljeä*
sister	*sisar*
Yes, I have two brothers and one sister.	*Kyllä, minulla on kaksi veljeä ja yksi sisar.*
	Liisa
are	*ovat*
they	*he*
married	*naimisissa*
Are they married?	*Ovatko he naimisissa?*
	Herra Stone
Two brothers are married.	*Kaksi veljeä on naimisissa.*
but	*mutta*
my sister	*sisareni*
goes	*käy*
some school	*koulua*
But my sister goes to school.	*Mutta sisareni käy koulua.*
	Liisa
I have only one sister, and she is married.	*Minulla on vain yksi sisar, ja hän on naimisissa.*
	Herra Stone
he *or* she has	*hänellä on*
some children	*lapsia*
Has she any children?	*Onko hänellä lapsia?*

some son *or* some boy	*poikaa*
Yes, she has two sons.	*Kyllä, hänellä on kaksi poikaa.*
	Herra Stone
old	*vanhoja*
How old are they?	*Kuinka vanhoja he ovat?*
	Liisa
older	*vanhempi*
some year	*vuotta*
old	*vanha*
The older one's eight.	*Vanhempi on kahdeksan vuotta vanha.*
younger	*nuorempi*
healthier	*terveempi*
The younger is six, and he is healthier.	*Nuorempi on kuusi vuotta vanha, ja hän on terveempi.*
	Herra Stone
to ask	*kysyä*
you do	*teette*
What do you do, may I ask?	*Saanko kysyä, mitä te teette?*
	Liisa
I am	*olen*
in work	*työssä*
in office	*konttorissa*
I work in an office.	*Olen työssä konttorissa.*

Herra Stone

businessman	*liikemies*
I'm a businessman.	*Olen liikemies.*

Liisa

your	*teidän*
your brothers'	*veljienne*
occupation	*toimi*
What's your brothers' occupation?	*Mikä on teidän veljienne toimi?*

Herra Stone

oldest	*vanhin*
youngest	*nuorin*
farmer	*maanviljelijä*
The oldest is a doctor and the youngest is a farmer.	*Vanhin on tohtori ja nuorin on maanviljelijä.*

Liisa

his	*hänen*
his farm	*maatilansa*
Where is his farm?	*Missä on hänen maatilansa?*

Record 6A, beginning

Herra Stone

outside	*ulkopuolella*
of Helsinki	*Helsingin*
It's outside of Helsinki.	*Se on Helsingin ulkopuolella.*

your father's	*isänne*
What does your father do?	*Mikä on teidän isänne toimi?*
	Liisa
of the bank	*pankin*
He's manager of the bank.	*Hän on pankinjohtaja.*
	Herra Stone
of which	*minkä*
Which bank is he the manager of?	*Minkä pankin johtaja?*
	Liisa
he *or* she	*hän*
Finland[1]	*Suomi*[1]
He's manager of the Bank of Finland.	*Hän on Suomen Pankin johtaja.*
what	*mikä*
trade	*ammatti*
What's your father's trade?	*Mikä on teidän isänne ammatti?*
	Herra Stone
shoemaker	*suutari*
He's a shoemaker.	*Hän on suutari.*
	Liisa
Has he any brothers or sisters?	*Onko hänellä veljiä tai sisaria?*

---

[1] This line should read: "of Finland . . . *Suomen*".

	Herra Stone
some sister	*sisarta*
Yes, he has three brothers and two sisters.	*Kyllä, hänellä on kolme veljeä ja kaksi sisarta.*
	Liisa
all	*kaikki*
Are they all here?	*Ovato he kaikki täällä?*
	Herra Stone
No, they're in the United States.	*Ei, he ovat Yhdysvalloissa.*
	Liisa
Where are they working?	*Missä he ovat työssä?*
	Herra Stone
tailor	*räätäli*
One's a tailor.	*Yksi on räätäli.*
other	*toinen*
barber	*parturi*
The other is a barber.	*Toinen on parturi.*
third	*kolmas*
dentist	*hammaslääkäri*
The third is a dentist.	*Kolmas on hammaslääkäri.*
And the two sisters are married.	*Ja kaksi sisarta on naimisissa.*

	Liisa
to visit	*käydä*
I'd like to visit the United States.	*Haluaisin käydä Yhdysvalloissa.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for the *Hints on Pronunciation* of Unit 2. Have the group read and discuss the explanations, and then go through the *Practice* for each *Hint* with the Guide or phonograph record.

You had opportunity to practice the vowel sounds—single, double, and in groups. You have probably noticed that consonants also occur single, double, or in groups. It is particularly important for you to pronounce double consonants as double. (This subject is taken up in more detail later, in Unit 8, pages 137-9.

PRACTICE 11

Record 1A, after tenth spiral

ammatti	trade	*herra*	mister
penniä	some pennies	*vasemmalle*	to the left
kaikki	all	*tyttärellenne*	to your daughter

Most of the single consonants are easy for you to pronounce. We'll take these up now in turn. But first:

Aspiration: the sounds *p*, *t*, and *k* in English, especially at the beginning of a word and when followed by a vowel, are pronounced with a puff of breath as the lips part: p^h, t^h, k^h. Try this by holding a slip of paper before your lips as you say *put*, *top*, *cook*, and you will see that the slip will bend backwards and wave as the puff of breath hits it. The Finnish *p*, *t*, *k* are pronounced entirely without the puff of breath. Try the words below, in Practices 12-14, with the slip of paper before your mouth, paying special attention to pronouncing the consonants without the ^{h}. (It would be more effective to try the experiment described with the flame of a candle in place of the slip of paper. The Guide should demonstrate, if possible.)

Consonant p: this consonant is very similar to the *p* in English *spin*. (You will find *p* in Finnish at the beginning of a word, or in the middle, but never at the end.)

PRACTICE 12

Record 1A, after eleventh spiral

paljon	much	*lapsia*	some children
ulkopuolella	outside		

Consonant t: this consonant is very similar to the *t* in English *stick*, but in pronouncing it the tip of your tongue should press against the back of your upper front teeth with some force. (You will find *t* at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end of Finnish words.)

PRACTICE 13

Record 1A, after twelfth spiral

työ	work
ovat	they are
tohtori	doctor

Consonant k: this consonant resembles the English *c* of *scan* or *k* of *skin*. (It occurs at the beginning, the middle, but never the end of Finnish words.)

PRACTICE 14

Record 1A, after thirteenth spiral

kyllä	yes
mikä	which
kaksi	two

The remaining consonants will be taken up in the coming units. Go back over the Practices in units 1-2, and make sure you can pronounce all Finnish vowels correctly.

Now go through the *Basic Sentences* once more individually, with your book open. As you repeat after your Guide, keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening* and note in particular the examples of the sounds discussed. Again, do not hesitate to ask your Guide to repeat if you are uncertain about any sound.

Finally, go through the *Basic Sentences* at least once again, this time taking turns in doing solo work. Keep your book closed, listen carefully to your Guide and make sure that your pronunciation satisfies him.

3. Check Yourself

Did you pronounce very carefully all the vowels in each of the illustrations in this and the previous unit?

Were you especially careful in pronouncing single sounds as single and double sounds as double?

Can you pronounce *p*, *t*, *k* without the aspiration following?

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

As in Section B of unit 2, read the words and expressions in each list and make sure that you understand the meaning of the Finnish. Then read the Comments which follow each list. When you have finished the Word Study ask other members of the group about points which are not clear to you.

Comment One—Suffix -mpi

halvempi	cheaper	*vanhempi*	older
nuorempi	younger		

The suffix *-mpi* corresponds to the English suffix *-e* (as in 'big', 'bigg*er*'; *not* 'work', 'work*er*'!). It is added to a class of Finnish words called *adjectives*. The latter differ from nouns only in two respects, namely, that they can take the *-mpi* suffix, and one other suffix (see below). Note that the vowel of the *-mpi* suffix being the neutral *i*, it might be added to any stem irrespective of vowel harmony.

You have learned the word for 'old': *vanha*. Note that when you add the suffix *-mpi*, the last *a* of *vanha* is replaced by an *e*. Whenever the suffix *-mpi* is added to a word which consists of two syllables (*van-ha*), the second of which ends in an *-a* (or *-ä*), the last vowel is replaced by an *e*. Note these further examples: *terveempi* (from *terve* 'healthy', stem form *tervee-*) 'healthier', *kalliimpi* (from *kallis* 'expensive', stem form *kallii-*) 'more expensive', *hauskempi* (from *hauska* 'gay', stem *hauska-*, with replacement of final *-a-* by *-e-* before *-mpi*) 'gayer'. (Note: the formation of stems will be explained in later units.)

Comment Two—Suffix -in

vanhin	the oldest	*nuorin*	the youngest

The suffix *-in* corresponds to the English suffix *-est* (as in 'big', 'bigg*est*'). It is added to the same class of words (adjectives) to which *-mpi* is added. This suffix has a neutral vowel *i*, and may therefore be added to any stem, irrespective of vowel harmony.

Again note the word for 'old': *vanha*. You will see that when you add the suffix *-in*, the final *a* of *vanha* disappears altogether: *vanh-in*.

Also note the word for 'young': *nuori*. You will see that when you add the suffix *-in*, the final *i* or *nuori* disappears altogether: *nuor-in*.

Final *-a*, *-ä*, *-e*, *-i* always disappears before *-in;* double vowels always become single before *-in*.

Note these further examples: *tervein* (*tervee-in* replaced by *tervein.*) 'healthiest', ***kallein*** (***kallii-in*** replaced by ***kalli-in***, replaced by ***kallein***, the latter being due to a rule that the *-i-* of a stem is replaced by *-e-* before the ***-in*** suffix) 'most expensive', ***hauskin*** (***hauska-in*** replaced by ***hauskin***) 'gayest'.

Two important words which you have had, ***hyvä*** 'good', and ***paljo*(*n*)** 'much', as well as some half dozen other words, change their stems completely when the suffixes ***-mpi*** or ***-in*** are added. These forms (***parempi*** 'better', ***enempi*** 'more'; ***parhain*** or ***paras*** 'best', ***enin*** 'most') must be memorized separately, of course.

Comment Three—Suffix -ssa

olen työssä konttorissa	I work in an office

Note this sentence carefully. The literal translation goes, 'I am in work in an office.'

Yhdysvalloissa	in the United States
Suomessa	in Finland

These words all end in the suffix *-ssa* (in *työ-ssä* the vowel of the *u*-group is replaced by the corresponding vowel of the *y*-group in the suffix.) The rough meaning of this suffix is 'in', 'inside' but the exact meaning must be learned by context, that is, from seeing it function in many sentences. (*Note:* this is true of all suffixes, and, indeed, of all word-meanings as well.)

missä	where	*tässä*	here

Note that the suffix *-ssa* appears also in the above words.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Review this Word Study by reading aloud all of the Finnish expressions. Then cover the English and make sure that you know the meaning of every item. Finally, cover the Finnish and see if you can say each Finnish expression when you are looking only at the English.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With Guide or records, review the first half of *Basic Sentences* for better pronunciation, meaning, and examples of points in the Word Study.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences.* Follow the procedure suggested above.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in Sections A and B, cover the English and test yourself by reading the Finnish, just as you did in Section C of the previous unit. If you are not sure about the meaning of any words or phrases, when you have finished reading the Basic Sentences aloud, uncover the English and look up their meaning. Keep this up until you know all the meanings completely.

3. What Would You Say?

A. In the following exercise you have certain situations presented for which you are to choose the correct expression in Finnish. Read the situation, *repeat aloud all of the solutions for each situation*, and then indicate for the next class meeting the answer you consider most appropriate.

Mr. Stone and Mr. Toivonen discuss their relatives and occupations.

1. Mr. Stone asks Mr. Toivonen what his occupation is.
   a. *Mitä te teette?*
   b. *Mikä on teidän isänne toimi?*
   c. *Kuinka te voitte?*

2. Mr. Toivonen tells him that he's a shoemaker.
   a. *Hän on tyttäreni.*
   b. *Sisar käy koulua.*
   c. *Minä olen suutari.*

3. Mr. Stone says he's a tailor.
   a. *Minä olen räätäli.*
   b. *Toinen on hammaslääkäri.*
   c. *Hän on pankinjohtaja.*

4. Mr. Stone asks him whether he has any brothers or sisters.
   a. *Onko teillä veljiä tai sisaria?*
   b. *Ovatko he naimisissa?*
   c. *Missä ovat ravintola ja asema?*

5. Mr. Toivonen says he has a sister.

   a. *Kävin kerran Yhdysvalloissa.*
   b. *Minulla on kolme veljeä.*
   c. *Minulla on yksi sisar.*

6. Mr. Toivonen says he is a farmer.

   a. *Hänen maatilansa on Helsingin ulkopuolella.*
   b. *Minä olen maanviljelijä.*
   c. *Minä olen naimisissa.*

7. Mr. Stone wants to know whether the farm is straight ahead.

   a. *Onko se oikealle?*
   b. *Onko se Helsingin ulkopuolella?*
   c. *Onko se suoraan eteenpäin?*

8. Mr. Toivonen asks Mr. Stone to come with him.

   a. *Sisar käy koulua kanssani.*
   b. *Tulisitteko kanssani?*
   c. *Johtaja ja tohtori ovat Yhdysvalloissa.*

B. Read all of the Finnish expressions aloud and choose the best ones to express the following situations.

1. You say it doesn't matter.
2. You say there is a toilet in the restaurant.
3. You say you would like to buy some meat.
4. You say that eight and one are nine.
5. You want to know how to address a stranger in Helsinki.
6. You say that your third daughter is the gayest in school.
7. You want to be excused.
8. You say you have only one sister.
9. You say that this dentist is more expensive, but he's the best.
10. You say that you work in the United States.

a. *Minä haluaisin ostaa lihaa.*
b. *Seitsemän ja kaksi on yhdeksän.*
c. *Ravintolassa on käymälä.*
d. *Kahdeksan ja yksi on yhdeksän.*
e. *Haluaisitteko tulla kanssani päivälliselle?*
f. *Ei ansaitse.*
g. *Miten Helsingissä puhutellaan vierasta henkilöä?*
h. *Kolmas tyttäreni on hauskin koulussa.*
i. *Tämä hammaslääkäri on kalliimpi, mutta hän on parhain.*
j. *Minä olen työssä Yhdysvalloissa.*
k. *Minulla on vain yksi sisar.*
l. *Tämä johtaja on vanhempi.*
m. *Mutta minulla on sisaria.*
n. *Onko hänellä lapsia?*
o. *Anteeksi.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for Section D of unit 2. Call on different students (not in any fixed order) to give their answers in Finnish for the exercise *What Would You Say?* in Section C of this unit. Encourage them to give the answers directly and not from the books, if possible. Then check on the students' knowledge of the meaning in English of the different expressions in Finnish.

Go back to the last exercise in the preceding section. The Leader will call for your answers in Finnish for the exercises. If you can, give the correct answers without reading from the book. Other members of the group will criticize the choice made if they disagree. The Leader will then call for the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercises.

2. Word Study Check-Up

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for this part of Section D of unit 2. Call on various students for the correct Finnish for the English equivalents of the expressions given in the Word Study. Make sure that all the students have learned the material thoroughly.

Go back to the Word Study in Section B. The Leader will ask different members of the group to give the correct Finnish for the English equivalents of the expressions you went over in the Word Study. Be sure you are able to give the correct form without having to read it from the book. If you have difficulty in giving the correct Finnish, review the Word Study thoroughly.

3. Listening In

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for *Listening In* in Section D of unit 2. Check up on the meaning at the end of each conversation on the first time through; then, after the second time through, assign parts and have the students read the conversation.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversations, or while they are played on the phonograph, and repeat the Finnish immediately after hearing it. At the end of each conversation, check up on the meaning of any word or phrase about which you are in doubt, either by asking some other member of the group or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows.

Go through the conversation again, with your books open, being sure to imitate carefully and to keep in mind the meaning of everything you are saying. Then take turns speaking the parts. Make the conversations real. Say your part as though you meant it.

Record 6A, after first spiral

I. Mr. Black meets Liisa and invites her to go to a movie

Herra Black

Hyvää päivää.
Kuinka te voitte?

Liisa

Kiitos, minä voin hyvin.

Herra Black

Onko isänne täällä?

Liisa

Ei. Hänen maatilansa on Helsingin ulkopuolella.

Herra Black

Niinkö!
Tulisitteko kanssani elokuviin?
Elokuvat alkavat kello kuusi.

Liisa

Mielelläni.

Record 6A, after second spiral

II. Eeva inquires about a dentist.

Herra Black

Paljonko kello on?

Eeva

Kello on seitsemän.

Herra Black

Haluaisitteko tulla kanssani päivälliselle?

Eeva

Kiitos ei, juna saapuu kello kymmenen;
mutta saanko pyytää neuvoanne?
Missä on hammaslääkäri?

Record 6B, beginning

Herra Black

Hammaslääkäri on hotellissa.

Eeva

Tämä hammaslääkäri on liian kallis.
Olkaa hyvä, antakaa minulle vettä.

Herra Black

Tässä on.
Helsingin ulkopuolella on hyvä ja halvempi hammaslääkäri.

Eeva

Kiitoksia paljon.
Hyvästi.

Record 6B, after first spiral

III. Mr. Brown and Liisa in the restaurant are talking about relatives

Herra Brown

Kahvia ja leipää, olkaa hyvä.
Neiti Toivonen, onko teillä sisaria?

Liisa

Minulla on kaksi veljeä.

Herra Brown

Ovatko he koulussa?

Liisa

Toinen käy koulua ja toinen on työssä.

Herra Brown

Onko vanhempi tai nuorempi työssä?

Liisa

Vanhempi on konttorissa työssä.

Herra Black

Onko hän liikemies?

Liisa

Kyllä, hän on liikemies.
Mikä on teidän veljienne ammatti?

Herra Brown

Minulla on kolme veljeä.
Nuorin on maanviljelijä,
vanhempi on hammaslääkäri,
vanhin on pankinjohtaja.

Liisa

Ovatko he naimisissa?

Herra Brown

Kyllä, vanhin on naimisissa.
Hänellä on kaksi poikaa.

Liisa

Kuinka vanhoja he ovat?

Herra Brown

Nuorempi on kolme vuotta
ja vanhempi viisi vuotta vanha.

Liisa

Tahdotteko enempi kahvia?

Herra Black

Kiitos ei.
Mutta halvan savukkeita ja tulitikkuja.

Liisa

Minulla on savukkeita ja tulitikkuja.
Tässä on, olkaa hyvä.

Herra Black

Kiitoksia paljon.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish in Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Just as you did in Section E of unit 2, go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit, cover up the Finnish, and test yourself to see how many words and phrases you can say in Finnish when you are looking only at the English.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

To the Group Leader: As in unit 2, go around the class calling on various students and asking them '*Kuinka sanotte suomeksi* ...' for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences*, with their books closed. If any student does not answer in a reasonable time, do not allow hemming and hawing; call on another student. Make sure that every student speaks up loud enough so that all can hear. Do not allow any mumbling. Any student who cannot give satisfactory answers needs more review of the *Basic Sentences.*

As you did in unit 2, supply the Finnish expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences*, when the Leader calls on you in turn. Do not fool around and waste time; give your answers in a clear, loud voice, so that everyone can hear you.

3. Conversation

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for Section F of unit 2. Have the students converse, first following closely the model of the conversations in *Listening In*, and then changing the situations slightly.

As you did in the *Conversation* in Section F of unit 2, first go through the *Basic Sentences* and *Listening In* sections of this Unit, taking turns reading them with your book open. As soon as you can speak the parts smoothly without looking at your books, then pass to acting them out in front of the group; keep this up until you can do this easily and smoothly.

Then you can change the situations somewhat, and introduce material from the previous units. Use your imaginations in thinking up various combinations of situations. Here are some suggestions:

a. Two friends meet. One asks the other where you can find a barber. The other answers, there's a barber in the hotel. The friends walk to the barber talking on the way about the work each of them does (one is a farmer, the other a shoemaker), and about the work of their fathers, brothers, sisters, sons, daughters.

b. A works in an office, and he's telling his girl about it. He then invites her for dinner to a restaurant just outside Helsinki. At the restaurant they drink beer, then they go to a movie. After the movie, A must go to the station. Then follows a discussion about time, arrival and departure of trains. He says good-bye.

c. B wants to know if C is going to school. C says, no, he's going to the dentist, and asks B if he would be good enough to introduce him. A promises to do it. B says he's glad, because he doesn't speak Finnish. A tells him to speak more slowly. B thanks him and they part.

In this way, you can go on conversing until everyone is able to speak every part of the conversation *with absolute ease* and *without errors*.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E. If necessary to make the conversations smoother and more successful, review parts 1 and 2 of Section E.

Finder List

This finder list has all the new words and suffixes used in this unit. These, as well as those of the previous two units, are words and expressions that you should know perfectly by this time.

ammatti	trade
enempi	more
enin	most
hammaslääkäri	dentist
he	they
Helsingin	of Helsinki
hän	he *or* she
hänellä on	he *or* she has
hänen	his
-in	-est
isänne	your father's
kaikki	all
kolmas	third
konttori	office
koulua	some school
kysyä	to ask
käy	goes
käydä	to visit
lapsia	some children
liikemies	business man
maanviljelijä	farmer
maatilansa	his farm
mikä	what
minkä	of which
-mpi	-er
mutta	but
naimisissa	married
nuori	young
olen	I am
ovat	they are
pankin	of the bank
paras	best
parempi	better
parhain	best
parturi	barber
poikaa	some son *or* some boy

räätäli	tailor
sisar	sister
sisareni	my sister
sisaria	some sisters
sisarta	some sister
-ssa	inside
Suomi	Finland
suutari	shoemaker
teette	you do
teidän	your
teillä on	you have
terve	healthy
toimi	occupation
toinen	other
työ	work
ulkopuolella	outside
vanha	old
vanhoja	old (they)
veljeä	some brother
veljienne	your brothers'
veljiä	some brothers
vuotta	some year

UNIT 4

WHERE ARE YOU FROM?

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go through the *Basic Sentences* in unison. Then work on the *Hints on Pronunciation* and after that go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice more individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Record 6B, after space

Herra Jussila and Mr. Smith talk about their homes and families.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
	Herra Smith
your home	*kotinne*
Where's your home?	*Missä on teidän kotinne?*
	Herra Jussila
from Turku	*Turusta*
I'm from Turku.	*Minä olen Turusta.*

Herra Smith

Turku	*Turku*
to the north	*pohjoiseen*
to the south	*etelään*
from Helsinki	*Helsingistä*
Is Turku to the north or to the south of Helsinki?	*Onko Turku pohjoiseen tai etelään Helsingistä?*

Herra Jussila

No.	*Ei.*
to the west	*länteen*
Turku is to the west of Helsinki.	*Turku on länteen Helsingistä.*

Record 7A, beginning

Herra Smith

far[1]	*kaukana*
How far is Turku from Helsinki?	*Kuinka kaukana on Turku Helsingistä?*

Herra Jussila

about	*noin*
some kilometer[2]	*kilometriä*
It's about a hundred kilometers from Helsinki.	*Se on noin sata kilometriä Helsingistä.*

---

[1] This line was omitted from the records.

[2] One kilometer equals 5/8 of a mile, and is abbreviated km.

	Herra Smith
long time	*kauan*
you have been	*olette olleet*
How long have you been in Finland?	*Kuinka kauan olette olleet Suomessa?*
	Herra Jussila
I've been	*olen ollut*
some month	*kuukautta*
I've been here for three months.	*Olen ollut täällä kolme kuukautta.*
	Herra Jussilla
very	*oikein*
well	*hyvin*
some Finnish	*suomea*
You speak Finnish very well!	*Te puhutte suomea oikein hyvin!*
	Herra Smith
Thank you.	*Kiitos.*
if	*jos*
slowly	*hitaasti*
I understand better when you speak slowly.	*Minä ymmärrän paremmin, jos te puhutte hitaasti.*
	Herra Jussila
everything	*kaiken*
I say	*sanon*
Do you understand everything I say?	*Ymmärrättekö te kaiken, mitä minä sanon?*

	Herra Smith
Yes, indeed, if you only speak more slowly.	*Kyllä, jos vain te puhutte hitaammin.*
	Herra Jussila
your wife	*vaimonne*
also	*myöskin*
Is your wife here too?	*Onko teidän vaimonne myöskin täällä?*
	Herra Smith
No, she's in America.	*Ei ole, hän on Amerikassa.*
my son	*poikani*
army	*armeija*
My son is in the army.	*Poikani on armeijassa.*
soldier	*sotilas*
He's a soldier, and he's in the United States too.	*Hän on sotilas, ja hän on myöskin Yhdysvalloissa.*
	Herra Jussila
Does your daughter go to school?	*Käykö tyttärenne koulua?*
	Herra Smith
No.	*Ei.*
My daughter works.	*Tyttäreni käy työssä.*

	Herra Jussila
How old is she?	*Kuinka vanha hän on?*
	Herra Smith
She's twenty years old.	*Hän on kaksikymmentä vuotta vanha.*
	Herra Jussila
Where does she work?	*Missä työssä hän on?*
	Herra Smith
In an office.	*Hän on konttorissa.*
	Herra Jussila
Where?	*Missä?*
	Herra Smith
factory	*tehdas*
clerk	*konttoriapulainen*
She's a clerk in a factory.	*Hän on konttoriapulainen tehtaassa.*
	Herra Jussila
In a factory?	*Tehtaassako?*

	Herra Smith
weapon	*ase*
Yes, in an armament factory, but she's here with me.	*Kyllä, asetehtaassa, mutta hän on kanssani täällä.*
	Herra Jussila
Is this factory here in Helsinki?	*Onko tehdas täällä Helsingissä?*
	Herra Smith
No.	*Ei.*
to the east	*itään*
It's to the east of Helsinki.	*Se on itään Helsingistä.*
	Herra Jussila
How old is your son?	*Kuinka vanha on teidän poikanne?*
	Herra Smith
twenty-two	*kaksikymmentäkaksi*
He's twenty-two.	*Hän on kaksikymmentäkaksi.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

In the previous unit you were introduced to some of the Finnish consonants, and you will now have opportunity to practice some of the others.

Consonant h: In English, the consonant *h* is restricted pretty much to the beginning of words (*hat*) or, at any rate, to the beginning of syllables (*be-have*);

it does not occur either at the end of syllables, or at the end of words. The situation in Finnish is quite different. The *h* occurs both at the beginning and the end of syllables (and at the beginning of words). You must listen carefully and imitate especially those words where *h* ends syllables.

PRACTICE 15

Record 1B, beginning

halpa	cheap	*tuhat*	thousand
vanha	old	*kahdeksan*	eight
tohtori	doctor	*yhdeksän*	nine

Consonants m and n: The letter *n* has several pronunciations. It is pronounced *n* always at the beginning and the end of words; it is pronounced *n* also in the middle of words, except when it occurs before either a *p* or a *k* or a *g*. Before a *p* you are likely to hear an *m* instead of an *n*:

PRACTICE 16

Record 1B, after first spiral

eteenpäin, eteenpäin	ahead

(Pronounced as *eteempäin.*)

The combination *nk* is pronounced similarly to the English *nk* combination as in *inky*. When *n* is followed by *kk*, pronounce *nk* followed by *k*, somewhat as the *nk c* is pronounced in *mink cape*.

PRACTICE 17

Record 1B, after second spiral

minkä	of which	*pankki*	bank

The combination *ng* is pronounced similarly to the English *ng* in *singing;* but while in English the back of your tongue is pressed against the rear of your palate but for an instant, in Finnish it is pressed there almost twice as long, especially when the *ng* comes between vowels.

PRACTICE 18

Record 1B, after third spiral

Helsingistä	from Helsinki	*englantia*	English

The consonant *m* is pronounced similarly to *m* of English *maim*. Remember, again, that the letter *n* before *p* is pronounced *m*. (The *m* is found as word initial, and occurs inside words, but never at the end.)

PRACTICE 19

Record 1B, after fourth spiral

minä	I	*halvempi*	cheaper
tämä	this	*armeija*	army

Now go through the *Basic Sentences* once more individually, with your book open. Again, as you repeat after your Guide, pay special attention to the examples of the sounds you have just practiced; if there is anything you are uncertain about, ask your Guide to repeat.

Then go through the *Basic Sentences* at least once more, taking turns in doing solo work, and with books closed. Listen carefully to the Guide, and make sure that your pronunciation satisfies him.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

In doing the *Word Study*, follow the same procedure as in earlier units.

Comment One—More About Numbers

seitsemäntoista	seventeen

The numbers from eleven through nineteen are formed by adding *-toista* to the digits. For example: *yksitoista* 'eleven', *kolmetoista* 'thirteen', *kahdeksantoista* 'eighteen', *yhdeksäntoista* 'nineteen'.

kaksikymmentäkaksi	twenty-two

Numbers 20, 30, 40, and so forth, through 90, are formed by adding *-kymmentä* to the digits. For example, *neljäkymmentä* 'forty', *viisikymmentä* 'fifty', *seitsemänkymmentä* 'seventy'.

To form the numbers between 21 through 29, 71 through 79, and so forth, you must add the given digit to the number in question. For example, *kolmekymmentäviisi* 'thirty-five', *kuusikymmentäyksi* 'sixty-one', *kahdeksankymmentäyhdeksän* 'eighty-nine', *yhdeksänkymmentäseitsemän* 'ninety-seven'.

Comment Two—Suffix -ni

poikani	my son	*tyttäreni*	my daughter

The suffix *-ni* in Finnish indicates possession by the speaker and is translated as 'my'. Note these examples: ***hotellini*** 'my hotel', ***vaimoni*** 'my wife', ***maitoni*** 'my milk', ***pankkini*** 'my bank', ***veljeni*** 'my brother', ***sisareni*** 'my sister', ***isäni*** 'my father'.

Comment Three—Suffix -nsa

maatilansa	his farm

The suffix *-nsa* in Finnish indicates possession by 'him, her, it, them', and is translated as 'his' or 'their'. Note these examples: ***ravintolansa*** 'his (or their) restaurant', ***johtajansa*** 'his (or their) manager', ***työnsä*** 'his (or their) work', ***konttorinsa*** 'his (or their) office', ***lapsensa*** 'his (or their) children'.

Comment Four—Suffix -nne

kotinne	your home	***vaimonne***	your wife

The suffix *-nne* in Finnish indicates possession by 'you' and is translated as 'your'. Note these examples: ***asemanne*** 'your station', ***koulunne*** 'your school', ***toimenne*** 'your occupation', ***parturinne*** 'your barber'.

Comment Five—Possessive Suffixes

The suffixes *-ni* 'my', *-nsa* 'his . . .', *-nne* 'your', are known together as *possessive suffixes*. Other suffixes which come under this classification, but which you haven't yet encountered are: *-s*(*i*) and *-mme*. The suffix *-s*(*i*) indicates possession by the second singular 'thee' and is translated 'your' (or literally as 'thy'). You use it when you address people whom you know well and when you talk informally. Some of your Guides will pronounce it as *-si*, but you may well run across the form *-s*. The suffix *-mme* indicates possession by 'us' and is translated 'our'. Note these examples: ***kotimme*** 'our home', ***päivällisesi*** 'your dinner', ***poikasi*** 'your son', ***räätälisi*** 'your tailor', ***suutarimme*** 'our shoemaker', ***vaimosi*** 'your wife'.

kanssani	with me

Note the appearance of the suffix *-ni* in this word. You can say: ***kanssasi*** 'with you', ***kanssaan*** (or ***kanssansa*** more rarely) 'with him *or* them', ***kanssamme*** 'with us', ***kanssanne*** 'with you'.

Comment Six—Suffix -lle

oikealle	to the right	***vasemmalle***	to the left
päivälliselle	to dinner		

This suffix means, roughly, 'to' or 'for'. Note these examples: ***tulisitteko kanssani kahville*** 'would you come with me for (some) coffee?', ***junalle*** 'to the train', ***maatilalle*** 'to the farm', ***koululle*** 'to the school' (but 'to (attend) school': ***koulua!***).

Comment Seven—Suffix -sta

Turusta from Turku   *Helsingistä* from Helsinki

This suffix means, roughly, 'from'. Note these examples: *asemasta* 'from the station', *ravintolasta* 'from the restaurant', *käymälästä* 'from the toilet', *kodista* 'from the home'.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Review this Word Study by reading aloud all of the Finnish expressions. Then cover the English and make sure that you know the meaning of every item. Finally, cover the Finnish and see if you can say each Finnish expression when you are looking only at the English.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With Guide or records, review the first half of *Basic Sentences* for better pronunciation, meaning, and examples of points in the Word Study.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Go back to the Basic Sentences in Section A, and read them aloud covering up the English. Note any words or phrases you are not sure about, and, when you have finished reading the *Basic Sentences*, uncover the English and look up the meaning of what you did not get. Keep this up until you know all the meanings completely.

3. What Would You Say?

I. The following sentences contain one or more words followed by ——. These blanks indicate that a suffix is to be supplied by you. In some cases more than one solution is possible.

a. *On —— konttori vasemma ——?*
b. *Ravintola —— on perunoita.*
c. *Koti —— on kaukana Turu ——.*
d. *Hotelli —— on asema —— kolme kilometriä.*
e. *On —— sotilas armeija ——?*
f. *He ovat veljiä —— ja sisaria ——.*

g. *Tämä ravintola on kallii* ——.
h. *Terve* —— *tytär käy koulua* ——.

II. In the following sentences a word is missing, but it appears in the list following the sentences. Fill in from the list the appropriate blanks.

a. *Herra johtaja, kuinka monta* —— *on teidän konttorissanne?*
b. *Koulu on asemasta* ——.
c. *Sotilas ja hänen* —— *ovat junassa.*
d. *Minä* —— *olutta.*
e. —— *ja veljeni ovat Turussa.*
f. *Hän on* —— *pankissa.*
g. *Koulussa on* —— *poikaa.*
h. *Olkaa hyvä* —— *suomea.*
i. *Maanviljelijä on* —— *mies.*

1. *vaimonsa*
2. *oikealle*
3. *parturi*
4. *työssä*
5. *konttoriapulaista*
6. *yksi*
7. *kotimme*
8. *nuorin*
9. *tuhat*
10. *haluaisin*
11. *puhukaa*
12. *isäni*
13. *räätäli*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Finnish for the last exercise in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Do it without reading from the book, if possible. Other members of the group will criticize your choice if they disagree with it. Then give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the correct Finnish for each English expression in the Word Study, without having to read it from the book. If you cannot do this easily, it means you need to put in more work on the Word Study. The Group Leader will give the English and call on different members of the group for the Finnish.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, repeat the Finnish of the following conversations immediately after the Guide or the record. After each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if necessary.

Go through the conversation again with books open, following the same plan as before, imitating carefully and keeping in mind the meaning of everything you say.

Record 7B, beginning

I. Mr. Black and Mr. Toivonen have a discussion while waiting for a train.

Herra Black

Saapuuko junanne kello neljä?

Herra Toivonen

Ei, junani saapuu Turusta kello kuusi.

Herra Black

Onko teidän vaimonne junassa?

Herra Toivonen

On kyllä, ja poikani myöskin.

Herra Black

Onko teidän poikanne armeijassa?

Herra Toivonen

On.

Herra Black

Kuinka vanha hän on?

Herra Toivonen

Poikani on kaksikymmentäseitsemän vuotta vanha.

Herra Black

Onko tyttärenne koulussa?

Herra Toivonen

Ei, hän on asetehtaassa työssä.

Herra Black

Haluaisitteko syödä kanssani?

Herra Toivonen

Kiitos mielelläni!

Herra Black

Haluaisin esitellä vaimoni ja tyttäreni.

Herra Toivonen

Hauska tutustua.

Herra Black

Onko teidän maatilanne kaukana Helsingistä?

Herra Toivonen

Se on noin ykstoista kilometriä
Helsingin ulkopuolella.

Herra Black

Niinkö kaukana!

Herra Toivonen

Tulisitteko kanssani maatilalleni?

Herra Black

Haluaisin käydä hammaslääkärissä.

Herra Toivonen

Veljeni on hammaslääkäri.
Hänen konttorinsa on kolme kilometriä maatilasta.

Herra Black

Missä täällä on parturi ja suutari?

Herra Toivonen

Hotellissa on parturi, mutta täällä on halvempi.

Herra Black

Onko hotellissa myöskin suutari?

Herra Toivonen

Ei.
Suutari on asemasta vasemmalle.

Herra Black

Onko hän kallis?

Herra Toivonen

Ei, hän on halpa ja hyvä.

Record 7B, after first spiral

II. Mr. Stone tells Mr. Jussila about Finnish and English; then they speak about his family and home.

Herra Stone

Anteeksi, puhutteko englantia?

Herra Jussila

Minä ymmärrän vain suomea.

Herra Stone

Minä olen Amerikasta.

Herra Jussila

New Yorkistako?

Herra Stone

Ei, Floridasta.

Herra Jussila

Oletteko olleet kauan Suomessa?

Herra Stone

Vain kuusi kuukautta.

Herra Jussila

Puhutteko suomea Yhdysvalloissa?

Herra Stone

Kyllä, vaimoni on Suomesta.

Herra Jussila

Niinkö!
Oletteko olleet kauan naimisissa?

Herra Stone

Kaksikymmentäyksi vuotta.

Herra Jussila

Onko vaimonne myöskin Suomessa?

Herra Stone

Kyllä, hänellä on maatila Helsingin ulkopuolella.

Record 8A, beginning

Herra Jussila

Ovatko poikanne täällä?

Herra Stone

Ei, minulla on vain tytär.

Herra Jussila

Kuinka vanha hän on?

Herra Stone

Hän on yhdeksäntoista vuotta vanha.

Herra Jussila

Mikä on teidän tyttärenne ammatti?

Herra Stone

Hän on maanviljelijä.

Herra Jussila

Suomessako?

Herra Stone

Niin, hän on vaimoni kanssa.

Record 8A, after first spiral

III. Paul and John meet and discuss the price of cigarettes and matches.

Paul

Terve!

John

Terve, terve!

Paul

Minä haluaisin amerikkalaisia savukkeita.

John

Liike on suoraan eteenpäin.

Paul

Kuinka paljon on laatikon hinta?

John

Se maksaa neljä markkaa.

Paul

Saanko minä myöskin tulitikkuja?

John

Ei, tulitikkulaatikko maksaa viisikymmentä penniä.

Paul

Haluaisitteko tulla kanssani kahville?

John

Kiitos, ravintolassa on kahvia.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish in Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

As in previous units, the Group Leader will call on various members of the group to give the Finnish expressions which correspond to the English in the *Basic Sentences*.

3. Conversation

The Leader will assign parts in the ***Listening In*** conversation. Act them out in front of the group; keep this up until you can do it easily and smoothly. Then change the situations somewhat. You now have material which you can work into your conversations. Invent the same kind of conversation which you did for the previous units. One person meets another, and conversation takes place on models such as these:

1. An American soldier meets a Finn in Turku. The American asks for directions and how he can find a barber. He excuses himself for his inability to speak good Finnish. The Finn asks him if he has a family, whereupon he explains that, indeed, he has several children. The Finn says he is a farmer and invites the American to his farm for dinner.

2. The American is now at the farm of his new Finnish friend. The Finn introduces the American to his wife and his daughter. The daughter spent years in Minnesota. The American speaks at length about his family describing occupation of his son and ages of his younger children.

3. The Finns then talk about their relatives describing where their homes are with regard to distance and direction from Turku. Then he talks about the business of his father (who is a tailor), his brother's trade (he's a shoemaker), and his son's (he's a bank clerk). His son is married to the daughter of the bank-manager.

4. The American thanks him for the dinner. He says he must go to the station to inquire about trains to Helsinki. They all say good-bye.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E. If necessary for better conversations, review parts 1 and 2 of Section E by covering the English and making sure that you can give the Finnish for every English expression. Keep this up until you can do absolutely everything easily. Then test yourself by picking English expressions at random and making sure you can give the Finnish when the Finnish is covered.

Review the entire unit. Check up on your knowledge of the spoken Finnish by covering all English equivalents and making sure that you know the meaning of every Finnish expression in the unit. Then cover the Finnish and see if you can speak it promptly and easily when you are looking only at the English.

Finder List

Here is the alphabetical list of the new items to be learned in the unit.

armeija	army
ase	weapon
asetehdas	armament factory
etelään	to the south
hitaasti	slowly
hyvin	well
itään	to the east
jos	if
kaiken	everything
kauan	long time
kaukana	far
kilometriä	some kilometer
konttoriapulainen	clerk
koti	home
kuukautta	some month
länteen	to the west
-lle	to *or* for
-mme	our
myöskin	also
-ni	my
-nne	your

noin	about
-nsa	his, her, its, their
oikein	very
olen ollut	I've been
olette olleet	you have been
poika	son *or* boy
pohjoiseen	to the north
sanon	I say
-s(i)	yours (*or* thy)
sotilas	soldier
-sta	from
suomea	some Finnish
tehdas	factory
vaimo	wife

UNIT 5

LET'S TALK ABOUT THE WEATHER

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Once through the *Basic Sentences*, in unison, then the *Hints on Pronunciation*, then twice more through the *Basic Sentences* individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Record 8A, after space

Eero Anttila and Väinö Sara sit in the lobby of a hotel and talk about the weather

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
Eero Anttila	
yesterday	*eilen*
was	*oli*
nice *or* beautiful	*kaunis*
day	*päivä*
It was a nice day yesterday.	*Eilen oli kaunis päivä.*
Väinö Sara	
today	*tänään*
cold	*kylmä*
But it's cold today.	*Mutta tänään on kylmä.*

	Eero Anttila
you	*sinä*
have lived	*olet asunut*
Have you lived in this hotel long?	*Oletko sinä asunut kauan tässä hotellissa?*
	Väinö Sara
Yes, about four months.	*Kyllä, noin neljä kuukautta.*
	Eero Anttila
I live in	*asun*
I live in this hotel, too.	*Minä asun myöskin tässä hotellissa.*
	Väinö Sara
It's a fine hotel.	*Tämä on hyvä hotelli.*
	Eero Anttila
just now	*juuri*
I just got back from the bank.	*Minä kävin juuri pankissa.*
	Väinö Sara
still	*vielä*
outside	*ulkona*
it is raining	*sataa*
Is it still raining outside?	*Vieläkö ulkona sataa?*

Record 8B, beginning

	Eero Anttila[1]
warm	*lämmin*
No, it's quite warm out	*Ei, ulkona on lämmin.*
	Väinö Sara
let's go	*mennään*
to the restaurant	*ravintolaan*
beer	*olut*
Let's go to the restaurant for some beer	*Mennään ravintolaan oluelle.*
	Eero Anttila
Sure, let's go.	*Mennään vain.*
Cold beer is what I want.	*Kylmä olut on juuri mitä haluan.*
	Väinö Sara
he comes	*tulee*
mother	*äiti*
into town	*kaupunkiin*
Is your mother coming to town today?	*Tuleeko äitisi tänään kaupunkiin?*
	Eero Anttila
Yes, she's coming tonight.	*Kyllä, hän tulee tänä iltana.*

---

[1] The next two lines are repeated twice, once at the end of record 8A, once at the beginning of record 8B.

	Väinö Sara
Is she coming for dinner?	*Tuleeko hän päivälliselle?*
	Eero Anttila
Yes, and she'll be leaving on the ten o'clock train for her farm.	*Kyllä, ja lähtee kello kymmenen junassa maatilallensa.*
	Väinö Sara
lunch	*lounas*
Why not have lunch here?	*Eikö syödä lounas täällä?*
	Eero Anttila
No thank you!	*Kiitos ei!*
more	*lisää*
I'd only like to have some more beer.	*Haluaisin vain lisää olutta.*
	Väinö Sara
Miss!	*Neiti!*
Two more beers, please!	*Kaksi olutta, olkaa hyvä.*
	Eero Anttila
There comes my mother!	*Tuolla tulee äitini!*

	Väinö Sara
How do you do, Mrs. Anttila!	*Hyvää päivää, rouva Anttila!*
	Eero Anttila
Hello mother!	*Päivää äiti!*
you want	*haluat*
Would you like some beer?	*Haluatko olutta?*
	Rouva Anttila
Hello Väinö!	*Päivää Väinö!*
Hello son!	*Päivää poikani!*
No thank you, I'd like some coffee.	*Ei kiitos, haluan kahvia.*
	Väinö Sara
you like	*pidätte*
How do you like Helsinki?	*Mitä pidätte Helsingistä?*
	Rouva Anttila
always	*aina*
I like Helsinki, but it's always so cold here.	*Pidän Helsingistä, mutta täällä on aina niin kylmä.*
	Eero Anttila
fall	*syksy*
winter	*talvi*
they are cold	*ovat kylmät*
Fall and winter are cold in Helsinki.	*Syksy ja talvi ovat kylmät Helsingissä.*

Rouva Anttila

I never	*en koskaan*
during summer	*kesällä*
I haven't been	*en ole ollut*
I've never been in Helsinki during the summer.	*En ole koskaan ollut Helsingissä kesällä.*

Väinö Sara

must see	*on nähtävä*
You must see Helsinki in summer.	*Teidän on nähtävä Helsinki kesällä.*

Rouva Anttila

next	*ensi*
during next summer	*ensi kesänä*
I come	*tulen*
Next summer I'll come, if I can.	*Ensi kesänä tulen, jos voin.*
when	*milloin*
you come	*sinä tulet*
But Väinö, when are you coming to our farm?	*Mutta Väinö, milloin sinä tulet maatilallemme?*

Record 9A, beginning

Väinö Sara

during the week	*viikolla*
with Eero	*Eeron kanssa*
I'll come with Eero next week.	*Tulen Eeron kanssa ensi viikolla.*

	Eero Anttila
your	*sinun*
soon	*pian*
Mother, your train'll leave soon.	*Äiti, sinun junasi lähtee pian.*
	Rouva Anttila
At ten o'clock.	*Kello kymmenen.*
now	*nyt*
It's nine o'clock now.	*Kello on nyt yhdeksän.*
	Väinö Sara
How many kilometers is it to your farm?	*Kuinka monta kilometriä on maatilallenne?*
	Eero Anttila
About sixty kilometers from Helsinki.	*Noin kuusikymmentä kilometriä Helsingistä.*
	Väinö Sara
hour's	*tunnin*
trip	*matka*
About an hour's trip by train?	*Noin tunninko junamatka?*
	Rouva Anttila
at home	*kotona*
No, I'll be at home around twelve o'clock.	*Ei, olen kotona noin kello kaksitoista.*

	Eero Anttila
from the station	*asemalta*
From the station it's still ten kilometers to the farm.	*Asemalta on vielä kymmenen kilometriä maatilalle.*
	Väinö Sara
you said	*sanoitte*
Mrs. Anttila, you said that your train is leaving soon.	*Rouva Anttila, sanoitte että junanne lähtee pian.*
	Eero Anttila
with mother	*äidin kanssa*
Let's go to the station with mother.	*Mennään äidin kanssa asemalle.*
	Väinö Sara
so long	*näkemiin*
So long till next week.	*Näkemiin ensi viikolle.*
	Rouva Anttila
good-night	*hyvää yötä*
boys	*pojat*
Good-night boys.	*Hyvää yötä pojat.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

Consonant d: You will find the Finnish *d* sound only between vowels, or following the *h*. At the beginning of a very few completely foreign words, like *dollari* 'dollar', many Finns will simply pronounce a *t-* or some other sound instead of the *d*. This *d* in Finnish resembles the English *d* of *deed*, but it's without aspiration (see discussion of aspiration in unit 3, p. 52.)

PRACTICE 20

Record 1B, after fifth spiral

kahdeksan	eight	*syödä*	to eat
käydä	to visit	*tehdas*	factory

Consonant v: The Finnish *v* is generally similar to the English *v* of *very*, but you will hear some Finnish speakers pronounce it more like an English *w* or some sound between *v* and *w*. Always imitate the pronunciation of your own Guide. (The *v* will occur at the beginning and the middle, but not the end of words.)

PRACTICE 21

Record 1B, after sixth spiral

veljeä	some brother	*kahvia*	some coffee
savukkeita	some cigarettes	*terve*	hello
rouva	Mrs.		

Consonant l: The Finnish *l*, before a vowel is quite similar to the English *l* of *lily* or *polo*. (It may be found at the beginning, middle, and, rarely, the end of words.) Before a consonant, you may think you hear a very short vowel (*hal*^{a}*pa*), as pronounced by some speakers.

PRACTICE 22

Record 1B, after seventh spiral

liikemies	businessman	*neljä*	four
haluan	I want	*halpa*	cheap

Consonant r: The Finnish *r* is rather different from the English *r*. When you pronounce it, your tongue should be tapping against the hard ridge behind your upper teeth. The sound may be just a single flap or a trill of several flaps in rapid succession. The nearest sound to this Finnish *r* is the *tt* of *butter*, as pronounced by some speakers of English. (The *r* sound may be found at the beginning, the middle, and end of words.)

PRACTICE 23

Record 1B, after eighth spiral

rouva	Mrs.	*hammaslääkäri*	dentist
parturi	barber	*sisar*	sister

Check Yourself

Are you taking every opportunity to practice your Finnish by talking with other members of the group or with Finnish speaking people whom you may meet?

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Comment One—Noun Stems

If you take a Finnish noun and strip it of all suffixes at the end, you will arrive at a theoretical form known as *stem*. Stems are of two kinds, and it is essential that you know to which of the stem types a given word belongs before you can add the necessary suffixes.

Type I.

syksy	fall	*koulu*	school
työ	work	*vaimo*	wife
isä	father	*johtaja*	manager

If you examine the nouns in the left-hand column, you will note that each ends in what we have called a vowel of the *y*-group and the nouns in the right-hand column end in what we have called a vowel of the *u*-group. When a noun, stripped of all suffixes, ends in any of the above vowels it belongs to stem type I. A given suffix will be added directly to this stem (but subject to certain automatic changes in the stem, which will be pointed out later). Thus:

syksy+stä	from the fall	*koulu+mme*	our school
työ+ssä	in work	*vaimo+lle*	to the wife
isä+ni	my father	*johtaja+nsa*	his manager

Now note these stems:

ammatti	trade	*konttori*	office
tohtori	doctor	*parturi*	garber
räätäli	tailor	*suutari*	shoemaker

If you study these words you will find that they have two things in common: they all end in *-i*; they all consist of three syllables. It may be stated that all stems ending in *-i* and consisting of three (or more) syllables belong to stem type I. See how suffixes are added directly to the stem:

ammatti+ssa	in trade
tohtori+mme	our doctor
räätäli+stä	from the tailor
konttori+lle	to the office
parturi+si	your (informal) barber
suutari+nsa	his shoemaker

Comment Two—Suffix -t

elokuvat	(movie) pictures	*pojat*	boys

The suffix *-t* is one of several plural markers. Its distinguishing characteristic is that no suffixes can follow it. It is added regularly to vowel stems: *rouvat* 'ladies', *tohtorit* 'doctors'. The change in the stem of *poika* to *pojat* in the plural is one of the regular, automatic changes which take place in Finnish; others occur in *laatikko*, becoming *laatikot* 'boxes', *ammatti* becoming *ammatit* 'trades'; these will be taken up in detail later.

Comment Three—Suffix -n and the Object Relation

kuinka te sanotte tämän suomeksi?	how do you say this in Finnish?
minä haluaisin laatikon savukkeita	I want a pack of cigarettes

In the English sentence *John hit Paul* the only way of telling who is the actor and who the sufferer, is by the relative position of the two names to the verb *hit*—the object of the hitting follows the verb. In the sentence *he hit him*, the actor (*he*) differs from the sufferer (*him*) in form as well as in relative position. In Finnish, the object relationship is indicated by the suffix *-n* (*tämä+n*, *laatiko+n*) when the noun is in the singular; in the plural, as in English, actor and sufferer are not differentiated in form. Note these examples: *minä haluan savukkeen* 'I want a cigarette', *antakaa savukkeet minulle* 'give me the cigarettes'; *haluan hyvän kellon* 'I want a good watch', *antakaa minulle hyvät kellot* 'give me good watches'; *ymmärrän sen* 'I understand that'; *haluan halvat suutarit ja räätälit* 'I want inexpensive shoemakers and tailors'.

Comment Four—Suffix -lta

kahdelta	at two	*neljältä*	at four
asemalta	from the station		

This suffix, like the *-sta* suffix discussed in unit 4, page 74, means roughly 'from'. But while *-sta* means 'from the inside', *-lta* means 'from the outside'. When added to numbers, as in the examples above, *-lta* means 'at' — 'at one' *yhdeltä*, 'at three' *kolmelta*, and so on (note the stem-change in *yksi* becoming *yhdeltä*). To say 'from a given time' you use *-sta*—'from one' *yhdestä*, 'from two' *kahdesta*, 'from five' *viidestä*, and so on. Note these expressions: *maatilalta on seitsemän kilometriä asemalle* 'from the farm it's seven kilometers to the station; *koululta on tunnin matka asemalle* 'it's an hour's trip from the school to the station'; and *tuleeko hän koulusta* 'is he coming from (inside) school?'.

Comment Five—Summary

This is what you've learned about Finnish words up to this point:

1. Two classes of words were mentioned: *nouns* and *verbs*. Any noun or verb may be broken down into a

stem and one or more *suffixes*. A noun stem is distinguished from a verb stem by a particular set of suffixes it takes.

2. There are two types of noun stems: the first type was discussed.

3. Noun stems take a characteristic set of suffixes known together as *case* suffixes. You've had so far five of these case suffixes, namely, *-n*, *-lle*, *-lta*, *-ssa*, *-sta*. Another set of suffixes characterising nouns are known together as *possessive* suffixes. You've had all five: *-ni*, *-s(i)*, *-nsa*, *-mme*, *-nne*. Nouns also take the plural suffix *-t*.

4. Some nouns take the *-mpi* and *-in* suffixes, and are known as *adjectives*.

5. You've had the *-ko* suffix, which is most often added to verbs and makes a question out of a statement.

6. You've learned that in a given stem only certain vowels will occur, and not others. A given suffix is joined to a stem in accordance with vowel harmony.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Check yourself on your knowledge of *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Finnish, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Go through the *Basic Sentences* in Section A and B, covering up the English and read aloud the Finnish. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say?

Read aloud the following and pick out the expression you think most suitable.

1. You ask someone to go for some beer.
   a. *Haluan olutta.*
   b. *Mennään oluelle.*
   c. *Olutta, olkaa hyvä.*

2. You say you like your hotel.

a. *Hotellinne on hyvin kaukana.*
b. *Se on hyvä hotelli.*
c. *Pidän hotellistani.*

3. You say fall is warm.

a. *Talvi on kaunis ja kylmä.*
b. *Ulkona sataa tänään.*
c. *Syksy on lämmin.*

4. You say you are thirty-three years old.

a. *Isäni on vanha liikemies.*
b. *Olen kolmekymmentäkolme vuotta vanha.*
c. *Poika on kolme vuotta vanha.*

5. You say hello.

a. *Näkemiin.*
b. *Hyvää yötä.*
c. *Terve.*

6. You say it is far away from here.

a. *Se on tuolla.*
b. *Se on kaukana täältä.*
c. *Tässä se on.*

7. You say your mother is beautiful.

a. *Veljesi on sotilas.*
b. *Sisareni on naimisissa.*
c. *Äitini on kaunis.*

8. You ask for your father's occupation.

a. *Onko isänne työssä tehtaassa?*
b. *Mikä on isäsi toimi?*
c. *Mikä on ammattisi?*

9. You say your mother is coming to town.

a. *Äitini lähtee maatilalle.*
b. *Äitimme on vanha.*
c. *Äitisi saapuu kaupunkiin.*

10. You say you'll come next week.

a. *Hän tulee ensi viikolla.*
b. *Tulen ensi viikolla.*
c. *Elokuvat alkavat ensi viikolla.*

Combinations

Read all the Finnish words and phrases aloud. Then say aloud each expression in the left-hand column and follow it with a word in the right-hand column. Make as many combinations as you can, but see that they do not conflict with common sense, or with grammar.

1. *haluan lisää*
2. *juuri nyt*
3. *onko äitisi*
4. *pian tulee*
5. *mennään*
6. *ravintolaan on*
7. *oletko asunut kauan*
8. *tänään tulee kaunis*
9. *asemalle on viisi*
10. *näkemiin ensi*
11. *milloin juna*
12. *pidättekö*

a. *kilometriä*
b. *niinkö*
c. *tunnin matka*
d. *miten*
e. *lähtee*
f. *viikolla*
g. *suomea*
h. *päivä*
i. *kaupunkiin*
j. *maksaa*
k. *kotona*
l. *sataa*

13. *asun kaukana*
14. *sisareni käy*
15. *missä on teidän*
16. *puhutteko*
17. *juna lähtee*
18. *missä on*
19. *mitä laatikko savukkeita*
20. *ulkona*

m. *on kylmä*
n. *koulua*
o. *sen*
p. *talvi*
q. *mikä*
r. *kahvista*
s. *hammaslääkäri*
t. *kaupungissa*
u. *aikaan*
v. *täältä*
w. *hyvää vain*
x. *kotinne*
y. *olutta*
z. *hitaasti*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

To the Group Leader: There is a new type of exercise in the preceding section of this unit. In this exercise, *Combinations*, read the Finnish expressions in the left-hand column, one at a time and ask different members of the group to repeat them, combining with them appropriate words from the right-hand column. The Guide or members of the group will correct any faulty Finnish they hear. Make sure that everyone understands the English equivalents of all the Finnish expressions in this exercise.

Give your answers in Finnish for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Do it without reading from the book, if possible. The Guide or other members of the group will criticize your Finnish if it is not correct. Then give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Finnish for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Finnish immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Then take parts and carry on the conversation.

Record 9A, after first spiral

Väinö Anttila visits his friend Eero Sara and his mother at their home:

Väinö Anttila

Hyvää päivää, rouva Sara.
Onko Eero kotona?

Rouva Sara

Päivää, päivää, Väinö.
Eero on työssä.
Hän tulee pian.

Väinö Anttila

Ulkona on hyvin kylmä tänään.

Rouva Sara

Niin on, ja eilen oli niin lämmin.

Väinö Anttila

Mihin aikaan Eero tulee?

Rouva Sara

Hän on kotona kuudelta.

Väinö Anttila

Onko Eero vielä tehtaassa?

Rouva Sara

Ei, hän on elokuvissa.
Tuolla hän tulee.

Eero Sara

Terve Väinö!
Mitä kuuluu?

Väinö Anttila

Terve, hyvää vain.
Sisareni saapuu tänä iltana Amerikasta.

Eero Sara

Niinkö, käykö hän koulua?

Väinö Anttila

Ei, hän on työssä pankissa.

Eero Sara

Kuinka vanha hän on?

Väinö Anttila

Hän on yhdeksäntoista vuotta vanha.

Eero Sara

Haluatko esitellä minut sisarellesi?

Väinö Anttila

Tietysti.

Not recorded from here to the end

Haluatko tulla kanssamme päivälliselle.

Eero Sara

Kiitos mielelläni.
Mihin aikaan?

Väinö Anttila

Kello kahdeksalta.

Rouva Sara

Kahville, pojat!
Väinö, ovatko äitisi ja isäsi täällä?

Väinö Anttila

Kyllä, isä ja äiti ovat täällä.
Haluatteko tulla myöskin kanssamme.

Rouva Sara

Ei kiitos.
Olen kotona mielelläni.
Ulkona on niin kylmä.

Väinö Anttila

Haluan savukkeita.

Eero Sara

Tässä on, ja tulitikkuja myöskin.

Rouva Sara

Minun on nähtävä sisaresi.
Tahdotteko tulla maatilallemme ensi viikolla.

Väinö Anttila

Kiitoksia paljon.

Rouva Sara

Haluatko lisää kahvia.

Väinö Anttila

Kiitos kyllä.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish in Basic Sentences
(Individual Study)

Cover the Finnish of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Finnish equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the model of *Listening In* fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. By now you have a fair amount of material that you can bring into your conversations. Invent new combinations of subject-matter, on models such as these:

1. An American soldier is walking along a street in Turku. He is trying to find the railway station. He

addresses a stranger with apologies and asks him for directions to the station. The stranger says he regrets, he cannot speak English. The soldier says it doesn't matter provided he speaks slowly. The Finn then explains that the station is not far from the school, and the school is to the left. The soldier asks the stranger for his advice: he wants to find a good restaurant. The Finn asks him what time his train leaves and he learns that the train is not leaving till the evening. He therefore asks the soldier to come to his home for lunch. The soldier accepts gladly.

2. The soldier is now in the home of the Finn, whose name is Mr. Toivonen. He says his son will be home from work and his daughter will be home from school very soon. Then they begin to talk about the weather.

3. The daughter comes home from school. She is seventeen years old. She says she was in the United States at the age of eleven. The soldier inquires about details as to the amount of time she spent there, what towns she visited, and so on.

4. Meanwhile the younger Mr. Toivonen has come home. He's a doctor. He says that he just came from the barber, and asks the soldier to accompany him later to the tailor, the shoemaker and the bank. Mr. Toivonen, it seems, is manager of the bank of Turku.

5. Mrs. Toivonen begins to serve lunch, which consists of meat and potatoes, bread, milk, and coffee.

You can go on combining situations in this way indefinitely. Try to develop originality and use your imagination in inventing combinations; and remember at all times that the most important thing is to have something in Finnish on the tip of your tongue. Try to be as quick as you can and keep the ball rolling.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E with a review of parts 1 to 5 if necessary.

Finder List

Here is the alphabetical list of the new words to be learned in this unit.

aina	always
asun	I dwell
eilen	yesterday
en koskaan	I never
en ole ollut	I haven't been

ensi	next
ensi kesänä	during next summer
haluat	you want
hyvää yötä	good-night
juuri	just now
kanssa	with
kaunis	nice *or* beautiful
kaupunkiin	into town
kesällä	during summer
kotona	at home
kylmä	cold
lisää	more
lounas	lunch
-lta	from the outside
lämmin	warm
matka	trip
mennään	let's go
milloin	when
-n	object relation
nyt	now
näkemiin	so long
olet asunut	have lived
oli	was
olut	beer
on nähtävä	must see
pian	soon
pidätte	you like
päivä	day
ravintolaan	to the restaurant
sanoitte	you said
sataa	it's raining
sinun	your
sinä	you
syksy	fall
-t	plural suffix
talvi	winter
tulee	he
tulen	I come
tulet	you come
tunnin	hour's
tänään	today
ulkona	outside
vielä	still
viikolla	during the week
äiti	mother
äidin kanssa	with mother

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN FINNISH?

To the Group Leader: This unit is intended to furnish the group with a thorough review of all the work done to date: understanding of vocabulary, use of vocabulary, and grammar. Pronunciation should be the object of attention whenever the students are talking. Either the Guide or, if there is no Guide, the Leader and other students should correct faulty pronunciation.

Section A consists of four parts. Part I is a true-and-false quiz which is to be read to the group by the Guide or the phonograph records. Each student is to write the numbers from 1 to 20 on a sheet of paper. After hearing each statement in Finnish, the students are to mark T opposite the number of that statement if they consider it a true statement, and an F if they consider it false. If the students understand the Finnish they will have no difficulty in deciding whether or not the statements are generally true or false.

Use the first item in the quiz as a practice item. When you are ready to start, announce "Statement 1," and give the signal to the Guide to begin, or put on the phonograph record. The Guide or record will then read the Finnish statement: "*Kaksi ja seitsemän on kahdeksan*" and will repeat the statement once more. Explain to the group that, since the meaning of the statement is: "Two and seven are eight" they should write an F after the figure 1 on their papers. Then announce "Statement 2" and continue with the Guide or phonograph record. Each statement in Finnish is to be presented twice. Part I will be found on Record 9B, beginning.

Part II is a pattern exercise. The Guide or the phonograph records will read to the group twenty series of words or phrases. In each series one word is obviously out of place. Each student is to write the numbers from 21 to 40 on a sheet of paper. After hearing each series in Finnish he is to pick out the word or phrase that doesn't belong and write it opposite the number of the series. Use the twenty-first item in the quiz as a practice item: "*Yksi, kaksi, kylmä, neljä*". Explain to the group that since the meaning of the series is: "One, two, cold, four" they should write "cold" after the figure 21 in their papers. Each series in Finnish should be presented twice (but is read on the records only once). Part II will be found on record 10A, beginning.

Part III is a completion exercise. The Guide or the records will read to the group ten incomplete statements in Finnish, each followed by three completions (a, b, c) in Finnish, of which one is obviously the right one. Each student is to write the numbers from 41 to 50 on a sheet of paper. After hearing each statement in Finnish and three completions in Finnish, he is to pick out the correct one and write "a", "b", or "c" opposite the number of the question. Use the forty-first item "*kolme ja viisi on*" "a. *Kaksi;* b. *Yhdeksän;* c. *Kahdeksan*" in the quiz as a practice item. Explain to the group that since the incomplete statement reads "three and five are" they should write "c" after the figure 41 in their papers, since the answer is "eight". Each statement and completions should be presented twice (but are read on the records only once). Part III will be found on record 10B, beginning.

Part IV is a true-and-false quiz of a different sort. The Guide or records will present a series of four brief conversations in Finnish. After each conversation the Guide or records will read a number of statements referring to the immediately preceding conversation. Each statement will be true or false in terms of the conversation. Each student is to write the numbers 51 to 70 on a sheet of paper. After hearing each conversation and the relevant statements he should write T (true) or F (false) opposite the number of the statement. Each conversation in Finnish will be read only once, but the statements about it will be read twice. Part IV, Conversation I, will be found on record 10B, after space, and the true-and-false sentences after the spiral which follows. Conversations II-III, and the appropriate statements, are on record 11A. Conversation IV and the appropriate statements, are on record 11B, beginning and after the first spiral.

When working with a Guide, continue to call the number of each item throughout the quiz so that the students will have no trouble keeping the proper place.

In the back of the Guide's manual you will find a list giving the correct answers for each Finnish item, together with the English translations. After the quiz is over, read to the group the correct answers for each item. The students are to check their papers. Find the average number of correct answers per student for your group. Any student who gets less than the average number of answers or less than 80% (whichever is higher) correct, needs more thorough study and review of the preceding units. Be sure that the students understand the meaning of all the items which they got wrong; those are the items on which they are weak and need further study.

This unit provides several tests which will help you to make sure that you have thoroughly covered the work of the first five Learning Units of the course. They will show you what you may need to restudy or review.

Section A consists of four parts. After you have marked the numbers 1 to 70 on a sheet of paper, your Leader will have the Guide read or will play the phonograph records containing a number of items in Finnish. Items 1, 21 and 41, are practice items, and will show you just how to proceed with the rest of the items.

After you have done each part, the Leader will go through your answers with you as a group and will tell you the correct solutions. Score your paper, counting one for each correct answer. The Leader will figure out the average score for your group. If your score falls below the average of the group as a whole, you need more study and review of the previous units. For each item on which you are wrong, be sure that you understand why you are wrong, and what the true meaning of the item is.

If you come out pretty well on this quiz, that indicates that you have a pretty good understanding of practically all the work you have covered to date.

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

(Individual Study)

Go through the following English sentences and prepare to say the equivalents for the English at your next group meeting. *Do not write anything down*, but say the Finnish equivalents out loud and keep practicing them aloud until you have the Finnish down so cold that when the English is fired at you point-blank you can fire the Finnish right back without any hesitation.

I

1. Let's go get some coffee.
2. Eve is my daughter.
3. Is it cold outside?
4. I understand English.
5. I've got matches.
6. He works in a factory.
7. My son is a soldier.
8. His daughter goes to school.
9. How much does this cost?
10. It's too expensive.

II

1. The train arrives at five.
2. Would you introduce your brother to me?
3. The school is to the right.
4. Give me some cigarettes.
5. Would you like some coffee?
6. Give me some water.
7. How many do you want?
8. How far is the hotel?
9. Five and six are eleven.
10. I like movies.

III

1. What do you want to eat?
2. May I ask, where is the restaurant?
3. Is your brother in Finland?
4. He is a farmer.
5. Is he a good dentist?
6. Have you got some American cigarettes?
7. How old is your daughter?
8. I've been in the United States.
9. He's from New York.
10. May I present my daughter now?

IV

1. Glad to meet you.
2. Does the train leave at four?
3. I'd like to buy some potatoes.
4. What time does the movie start?
5. Is your brother married?
6. Have you many children?
7. What's your occupation?
8. My youngest brother is a doctor.
9. Is your father manager of a bank?
10. Have you been in Helsinki?

V

1. It's five kilometers from the farm to the station.
2. He's a good tailor, and reasonable.
3. Do you like your hotel?
4. He has three sons; the barber is the third.
5. The shoemaker in this hotel is too expensive.
6. The restaurant is to the left of the station.
7. Helsinki is ten kilometers to the east of Turku.
8. Have you been in Finland long?
9. Do you speak Finnish well?
10. A cold winter is better.

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

To the Group Leader: Simply follow the directions given below.

This Section is a drill on the work you have done in Section B of this unit. Keep your book closed. The Leader will call on members of the group (but not in any fixed order) to speak the Finnish equivalents of the English sentences given in Section B. The work must be kept moving rapidly, and interest should never lag. If the Guide is present he is to listen and correct your pronunciation and expressions.

This section is intended to give you a check on your ability to use the vocabulary you have learned.

SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

(Individual Study)

Do the following exercises. Read all sentences aloud with correct solutions. Have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

I

Make questions of these statements:

1. *Hän käy ulkona jos ulkona on lämmin.*
2. *Olen aina ollut kaupungissa syksyllä ja talvella.*
3. *Isäni koti on pohjoiseen asemastanne.*
4. *Hänen äitinsä lähtee junalla maatilallensa kello kaksi päivällä.*
5. *Äiti pyytää lapsia päivälliselle.*

II

This is an exercise on the case suffixes. In each sentence below there is one word in English. Translate this word; fit it into its sentence. Say each sentence aloud.

6. *Ensi viikolla ostan* (hotel).
7. (Station) *saapuu paljon lapsia.*
8. *Hänellä on* (weapon).
9. (Shoemaker) *haluaa syödä kotonansa.*
10. *Olen ollut kauan* (army).
11. (Four days) *juna saapuu kaupunkiin.*
12. (Restaurant) *ostan olutta.*
13. *Sanon sen* (boy) *suomeksi.*

14. *Koululta* (station) *on monta kilometriä.*
15. *Mennään* (trip) *ensi kesänä.*
16. (Father) *ovat aina työssä.*
17. *Saan sen* (mother).
18. (Train) *lähtee hitaasti asemalta.*
19. *Minun on nähtävä tämä* (home).
20. *Olen täällä* (summer).
21. (Farmer) *saan vettä.*
22. *Haluan ostaa* (weapon) *pojalleni.*
23. *Hän saapuu* (city) *tänään.*
24. *Etsin poikaa* (movies).
25. *Tahdon kysyä neuvoa* (clerk).
26. *Pidän hyvin paljon tästä* (boy).
27. *Te teette* (work) *hyvin.*
28. *Haluan esitellä* (my mother).
29. *Antakaa* (child) *minulle.*
30. *Tahdotteko tämän* (box)?
31. (Child) *alkavat käydä koulua.*
32. *Hän tulee kanssani ravintolaan* (lunch).
33. (Autumn) *ovat kauniit.*
34. *Vaimoni* (work) *on hyvä.*
35. *Isä ja äiti ovat* (movies).

III

Can you do these additions in your head?

36. *Kolmekymmentäseitsemän ja neljäkymmentäviisi on* . . .
37. *Yhdeksänkymmentäkaksi ja kahdeksantoista on* . . .
38. *Neljätoista ja seitsemäntoista on* . . .
39. *Viisikymmentäyksi ja kaksitoista on* . . .
40. *Seitsemänkymmentäkuusi ja kolmetoista on* . . .

IV

Translate these sentences illustrating the use of adjectives.

41. Yesterday it was colder, today it's a warmer day.
42. This is the best school in this town.
43. I want a cheaper watch.
44. He is my healthiest and youngest child.
45. This is a more expensive but better restaurant.

SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

To the Group Leader: Simply follow the directions given below.

As in Section C, the Leader will go around the group and ask various members to supply (with books closed) the correct solutions of the exercises in the previous Section. If the Guide is present, he will listen and correct pronunciation and expressions.

This section is intended to give you a check on your understanding of the way the language is built and functions.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION

The members of the group will carry on short conversations lasting not more than 1 to 2 minutes each, in which the entire contents of the preceding units should be used. Everyone should have a chance to take part as many times as possible. The situations of the conversations should be varied and combined as much as possible. Each conversation should begin with greetings and inquiries after each other's health and should end with formal leave-taking. Here are just a few out of many possibilities for conversations:

1. Getting around.

   (Include: asking for directions to specific places; orientation as to prices in hotels, shops, restaurants; train times and destinations.)

2. Introducing people.

   (Include: introducing a friend or relative to someone; questions as to where from, languages spoken; offering cigarettes and light; asking where going now; arranging future date.)

3. In a restaurant.

   (Include: questions and answers about food and drink preferences; ordering a meal; asking prices, discussion of prices, adding total and paying.)

4. Buying things.

   (Include: purchase of some article or articles; discussion with sales girl; arguing about prices; adding totals and paying.)

5. A social call.

(Include: discussion of weather; offering refreshments; coffee or beer; offering smokes; going out to the movies together.)

6. Going on a trip.

(Include: inquiring about trains; directions; prices; accommodations; weather conditions there; if a farm, how far from what town.)

7. Meeting a friend on a street.

(Include: questions about each other's health; discussion of family affairs—health of parents, brothers, sisters, children; what they are doing, and where they are living now.

8. Conversing about trades.

(Include: questions about the type of work one does, the work of one's friends and relatives, the things produced where one works.)

9. Inquiring about a movie and how to get to it.

(Include: questions about the place of a movie, the time it starts, whether it is good, whether the person likes movies and really wants to go.)

10. Exchanging information about one's home.

(Include: questions about each other's origin, talk about location of homes, and city or farm, description of relatives, where they are and what they do.)

PART TWO UNIT 7

A PLACE TO LIVE

To the Group Leader and Members of the Group: The pattern for each unit has been set in Learning Units 2–6 of *Part One.* From now on no detailed instructions will be given for any section unless the plan of work for that particular section departs from the customary procedure. If you are in doubt as to the correct procedure at any point, turn back to the corresponding section of Learning Unit 2 where directions are given in full.

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Record 11B, after space

Two American soldiers are looking for a room in the country.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
Bill	
Excuse me, may I ask for your advice?	*Anteeksi, saanko pyytää neuvoanne?*
Maanviljelijä	
What can I do for you?	*Mitä voin tehdä puolestanne?*

	Bill
some room	*huonetta*
I'm looking for a room.	*Minä etsin huonetta.*
	Maanviljelijä
house	*talo*
There is a house.	*Tuolla on talo.*
mistress *or* landlady[1]	*emäntä*
he rents	*vuokraa*
some rooms	*huoneita*
And the landlady rents rooms.	*Ja sen emäntä vuokraa huoneita.*
	Bill
American	*amerikkalainen*
I'm an American soldier.	*Minä olen amerikkalainen sotilas.*
	Maaviljelijä
Really?	*Niinkö?*

---

[1] *Isäntä* is master and economic leader of an extended household, including family and servants; the term is also used as an address, like 'Master'. *Emäntä* refers to the mistress and landlady of a household, in the same capacity as the *isäntä*.

	Bill
my	*minun*
friend *or* pal	*toveri*
This is my pal Jack Carter.	*Tämä on minun toverini Jack Carter.*
name	*nimi*
And my name is Bill Morgan.	*Ja minun nimeni on Bill Morgan.*
	Maanviljelijä
master *or* landlord[1]	*isäntä*
Pohjola's	*Pohjolan*
I'm the Master of Pohjola.	*Minä olen Pohjolan isäntä.*
you intend	*aijotte*
to be	*olla*
How long do you intend to be here?	*Kuinka kauan aijotte olla täällä?*
	Bill
we do not	*emme*
know	*tiedä*
We don't know.	*Emme tiedä.*
Record 12A, beginning	
perhaps	*ehkä*
a couple	*pari*
some week	*viikkoa*
Perhaps a couple of weeks.	*Ehkä pari viikkoa.*

---

[1] See footnote on Page 111.

	Maanviljelijä
welcome	*tervetuloa*
at us	*meillä*
to visit	*käymään*
Please come to see us.	*Tervetuloa meillä käymään.*
	Bill
Thanks very much.	*Kiitoksia paljon.*
we	*me*
we come	*tulemme*
Yes, we'll come.	*Kyllä me tulemme.*
let's go	*lähdetään*
to see	*katsomaan*
that	*sitä*
Let's go see the room.	*Lähdetään nyt katsomaan sitä huonetta.*
	Maanviljelijä
So long, boys.	*Näkemiin, pojat.*
	Bill
How do you do.	*Hyvää päivää.*
some vacant(s) *or* some tree(s)	*vapaita*
Have you any vacant rooms?	*Onko teillä vapaita huoneita?*

	Emäntä
to stay *or* to live in	*asua*
same	*sama*
Would you like to stay in the same room?	*Tahdotteko asua samassa huoneessa?*
	Bill
room	*huone*
large	*suuri*
Yes, if the room's large.	*Kyllä, jos huone on suuri.*
we get	*saamme*
to see	*nähdä*
Can we see it?	*Saammeko nähdä sen?*
	Emäntä
second *or* another	*toinen*
floor	*kerros*
It's on the second floor.	*Se on toisessa kerroksessa.*
	Bill
in it	*siinä*
bathroom	*kylpyhuone*
Is there a bathroom?	*Onko siinä kylpyhuone?*
	Emäntä
our	*meidän*
is not	*ei ole*
some bathroom	*kylpyhuonetta*
In our house there's no bathroom.	*Meidän talossamme ei ole kylpyhuonetta.*

we have	*meillä on*
steambath[2]	*sauna*
But we have a steambath outside.	*Mutta meillä on sauna ulkona.*
	Bill
That's fine.	*Se on hyvä.*
Is the toilet outside too?	*Onko käymälä myöskin ulkona?*
	Emäntä
Yes.	*On.*
inside	*sisällä*
And there is another one inside.	*Ja toinen on sisällä.*
	Bill
How much do you charge for this room?	*Kuinka paljon tämä huone maksaa?*
	Emäntä
It's fifteen marks a day.	*Viisitoista markkaa päivässä.*

---

[2] Village bath house where steam is produced by pouring water over a heated oven. Found all over Finnish speaking territory in Finland, Northern Scandinavia, and Northwestern Russia. Also found in the United States —especially in the Finnish communities of Minnesota, northern Michigan, and Massachusetts.

	Bill
includes *or* belongs to	*kuuluu*
breakfast	*aamiainen*
in the same	*samaan*
Does that include breakfast?	*Kuuluuko aamiainen samaan?*
	Emäntä
you get	*saatte*
No, but you'll get coffee and bread.	*Ei, mutta te saatte kahvia ja leipää.*
Record 12B, beginning	
	Bill
That's cheap.	*Se on halpa.*
we take	*otamme*
We'll take the room.	*Me otamme tämän huoneen.*
	Emäntä
to move in	*muuttaa*
When do you want to move in?	*Koska te haluatte muuttaa?*
	Bill
we move in	*muutamme*
We'll move in tonight.	*Me muutamme tänä iltana.*

Emäntä

I put	*laitan*
in order	*kuntoon*
Fine, I'll get the room ready.	*Hyvä, laitan huoneen kuntoon.*
you eat	*syötte*
some lunch	*lounasta*
some dinner	*päivällistä*
Where do you eat lunch and dinner?	*Missä te syötte lounasta ja päivällistä?*

Bill

we eat	*syömme*
We eat with the army.	*Me syömme armeijassa.*

Emäntä

then	*sitten*
You'll be welcome, boys.	*Tervetuloa sitten, pojat.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

How to pronounce tervetuloa and kolmekymmentä: Note the pronunciation of these two compound words, *terve-tuloa* 'welcome', and *kolme-kymmentä* 'thirty'. Chances are that your Guide will pronounce them as if they were spelled *tervettuloa* and *kolmekkymmentä* (*tt* for *t* and *kk* for *k* at the border between the two members of the compound).

PRACTICE 24

Record 1B, after ninth spiral

tervetuloa	welcome	*kolmekymmentä*	thirty

Consonant s: The sound represented by the Finnish letter *s* differs little from the one represented by the

English *s* of *so*, or *this*, although it may have a bit more of a 'whistling' quality; and between vowels it may sometimes sound more like a *z* to you. (It is found at the beginning, the middle, and the end of words.)

PRACTICE 25

Record 1B, after tenth spiral

sata	hundred	*hyvästi*	good-bye
asema	station	*kaunis*	beautiful

Consonant j: The letter *j* in Finnish stands for quite a different sound than in English. It corresponds rather to the sound represented in English by *y*, as in *yes* or *beyond*. (This sound occurs only at the beginning and middle, but not at the end of Finnish words.)

PRACTICE 26

Record 1B, after eleventh spiral

ja	and	*johtaja*	manager
maanviljelijä	farmer	*armeija*	army

Other consonants: the consonants *b*, *f*, and a few others, will occur in a handful of foreign words. Educated Finns will pronounce these sounds (as in *bambu* 'bamboo', *filmi* 'film') with their foreign value; but in various parts of Finland different native sounds will be substituted for the foreign ones (e.g., *pampu* 'bamboo').

All but one (which you have not yet had) of the native Finnish consonants and all of the vowels have been discussed and described in some detail up to this point. If you are not sure about the pronunciation of any Finnish consonant or vowel *go back right now* to the discussion, listen repeatedly to your Guide or the records, and keep on imitating every detail. Only when you can reproduce each sound to your Guide's and to your own satisfaction should you pass on to the discussion of groups of sounds, which follows.

Consonant groups: The following table summarizes for your convenience the most common clusters or groups of consonants of Finnish. Look over the table carefully; read the brief general comment which comes after the table; in the following units the various groups will be examined more closely.

Table One

Finnish Consonant Groups

	p	t	k	m	n	r	l	s	h
p	pp			mp mpp		rp rpp	lp lpp	sp	
t	pt	tt			nt ntt	rt rtt	lt ltt	st	ht
k		tk	kk		nk nkk	rk rkk	lk lkk	sk	hk
m				mm		rm	lm	sm	hm
n					nn	rn	ln	sn	hn
r	pr	tr	kr			rr			hr
l	pl		kl				ll		
s	ps	ts	ks	ms mss	ns nss	rs rss	ls lss	ss	
h					nh	rh	lh		
d									hd
g					ng				
v		tv				rv	lv	sv	hv
j		tj				rj	lj		hj
h									hh

General comment: Groups of consonants will occur neither at the beginning, nor at the end of Finnish words; they are found only in the middle. (*Note:* a few words, recently taken over from foreign languages, may contain consonant groups at the beginning of Finnish words, but only as pronounced by natives who are well educated.)

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

Comment One—Noun Stem Type II

a. *Free form and stem form.*

syksy	fall	*syksy-stä*	from the fall
työ	work	*työ-ssä*	in work

It is necessary to distinguish the *free form* of a noun or a verb from its *stem form.* The free form of a noun (often called the *nominative* form) is the one you will find in dictionaries; it is a form which can always stand by itself, such as *syksy* 'fall', or *työ* 'work'. Then there is the *stem form,* or the form you will find when you remove all suffixes (as when you take the *-stä* away from *syksystä* and get *syksy-*); it is the combining form. In the above example you will note that the free form *syksy* is absolutely identical with the stem form *syksy-*; and the free form *työ* is identical with the stem form *työ-*. *The free form of all nouns belonging to stem type I is absolutely identical with the stem form;* this, however, is not necessarily true of nouns belonging to stem type II, as you will observe below.

b. *Type II*

1. *-e- stems*

nuori	young	*nuore-mpi*	younger
suuri	big	*suure-ssa*	in the big

Both words in the column to the left end in *-ri*, and are of two syllables (*nuo-ri, suu-ri*). Most Finnish nouns of two syllables, which end in *-ri* in their free forms (or in *-hi, -li, -ni*) belong to type II. This means that their stem form will end in either *-re-* (or in *-he-, -le-, -ne-*, as the case may be), illustrated by the above examples, or simply in *-r-* (or in *-h-, -l-, -n-*, as the case may be). Words belonging to type II always have two stem forms, one ending in a vowel, the other simply dropping the final vowel. Before some suffixes the vowel stem is used; before others, the consonant stem. Henceforth, in the discussion of any suffix it will be pointed out which stem you must add it to.

vesi	water	*vet-tä*	some water
vuosi	year	*vuot-ta*	some year

Two syllable nouns which end in *-si* in their free form, like the words in the column to the left, belong to type II, and have two stem forms, one ending in a vowel, *-te-*, and, as in the column to the right, before the element *-ta* (to be discussed in Unit 9, pages 161-3), for example, ending in a consonant only, *-t-*. According to a certain rule concerning automatic changes (see Unit 11, pages 201-3), you will find the *-t-* replaced by *-d-*: note *vedessä* 'in the water', *veden* 'the water'; *vuodesta* 'from the year', *vuodelle* 'to the year'.

länsi	west	*länte-en*	to the west

Two syllable nouns ending in *-nsi* (or in *-rsi*, *-lsi*) in their free form, end in *-te-* or in *-t-* in their stem forms.

lapsi	child	*lapse-t*	children
nimi	name	*nime-t*	names
toimi	occupation	*toime-t*	occupations
Suomi	Finland	*Suome-ssa*	in Finland

There are many Finnish nouns of two syllables which end in *-i* in their free form other than those discussed above. These belong to type II when the *-i* is preceded by *-m-* or *-ps-* (or *-ts-*, *-ks-*, *-ht-*), and have a vowel stem ending in *-e-*, as in the examples above to the right; the consonant stem simply drops the *-e-* (thus, *laps-*, *nim-*, and so on).

Note: There are some nouns of two syllables ending in *-i* in their free form which belong to type I. These nouns then are of two sorts; some will end in *-i-* in their stem form; others will end in *-e-*. There is no way for you to know which group a given noun of this kind will belong to, so you must learn each separately. For instance, *veli* 'brother', belongs to type I (having but one stem form), and the stem ends in *-e-*: *velje-*.

2. *-ee- stems*

terve	healthy	*tervee-mpi*	healthier
ase	weapon	*asee-n*	weapon
huone	room	*huonee-ssa*	in the room

Nouns ending in *-e* in their free form belong to type II (with a very few exceptions), and their vowel stem form ends in *-ee-*. As for the consonant stem form, that ends in *-e(')-* (the consonant symbol ' is explained in unit 8, pages 139-40.

The third class of stem type II nouns, the *consonant stems*, are discussed in unit 8, pages 140-2.

Comment Two—Numeral Stems

The stem forms of the numbers from one to ten are listed in the right hand column:

yksi	1	*yhte-, yh-*
kaksi	2	*kahte-, kah-*
kolme	3	*kolme-*
neljä	4	*neljä-*
viisi	5	*viite-, viit-*
kuusi	6	*kuute-, kuut-*
seitsemän	7	*seitsemä-, (seitsen-)*
kahdeksan	8	*kahdeksa-*
yhdeksän	9	*yhdeksä-,*
kymmenen	10	*kymmene-, (kymmen-)*

Note that *kolme, neljä, kahdeksan, yhdeksän* always belong to stem type I; *seitsemän* and *kymmenen* may belong to stem type I or II; *yksi, kaksi, viisi, kuusi* always belong to stem type II. Note the automatic stem change from *t* to *d* in *kahdelta* 'at two', *viideltä* 'at five'.

Comment Three—Personal Verb Suffixes

sanon	I say	*tulen*	I come
asun	I dwell	*olen*	I am

Verbs are constructed similarly to nouns; that is, they can be broken up into a stem and one or more suffixes. Among the latter, characterising verb stems, are the so-called personal suffixes, which indicate the person who is performing the action designated by the stem. Various other suffixes indicate the time when the action takes place and the type of action it is and they *precede* always the personal suffixes.

The series of words above all end in *-n*. This suffix, when added to verb stems, indicates that the action is performed by the speaker alone ('I'—first person singular).

haluat	you want	*tulet*	you come

The suffix *-t*, when added to verb stems, indicates that the action is performed by the hearer alone ('you', 'thou'—second person singular, informal).

tulee	he comes	*käy*	he goes
on	he is		

The third person singular is indicated in several ways. When the verb stem (formation of which is discussed later) ends in a single vowel, like *tule-*, the single vowel is doubled: *tulee*. When the verb stem ends in more than a single vowel, like *käy-*, there is no change: *käy*.

Note the form ***on*** 'is', from the verb ***olla*** 'to be', which does not conform to the above rule.

tulemme	we come	***saamme***	we get
otamme	we take	***muutamme***	we move

The suffix ***-mme***, when added to verb stems, indicates that the action is performed by a number of speakers ('we'—first person plural).

puhutte	you speak	***teette***	you do
tahdotte	you want	***pidätte***	you like

The suffix ***-tte***, when added to verb stems, indicates that the action is performed by a number of hearers ('you'—second person plural, formal).

ovat	they are

The third person plural is indicated by the suffix ***-vat***: ***tulevat*** 'they come', ***käyvät*** 'they go'.

After a few tense and other suffixes (for instance, in giving orders), the person is indicated by some other suffixes than the above outlined. As a whole, however, the personal suffixes are used as illustrated.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the Word Study and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the Basic Sentences.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the Basic Sentences.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the Basic Sentences. This is individual study.

3. What Would You Say?

I. This exercise is of the type found in Unit 4, pp. 74-5. Fill in blanks with the appropriate suffix.

a. *Halve —— hotelli on vasemma——.*
b. *Toise—— kerrokse—— on kylpyhuone.*
c. *Rouva on talo—— emäntä.*
d. *Kaikki poja—— ovat armeija——.*
e. *Hotelli—— on paljon huoneita.*
f. *Kävin äiti—— kanssa Turu——.*
g. *Juna saapuu viide——.*
h. *Velje—— tulle päivällise——.*
i. *Lähdetään maatila—— tänään.*
j. *Poika on neljä—— vuotta vanha.*
k. *Hän on vanh—— velje——.*
l. *Saan—— pyytää lisää kahvia?*
m. *Talo—— on kylpyhuone.*
n. *Konttori—— ovat hyvä—— ja suure——.*
o. *Talo—— on kaunis kesällä.*
p. *Mennään maatila——.*
q. *Asetehdas on hyvin kaukana asema——.*
r. *Tahdotte—— tulla kanssa—— koulu——.*

II. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the appropriate word from the righthand column.

a. *Saanko —— olutta?*
b. *Haluan ostaa ——.*
c. *Juna lähtee —— kello kaksi.*
d. *—— tulee lapsia.*
e. *Pidättekö ——?*
f. *Se on —— kaunis mutta —— kallis.*
g. *Onko —— sauna?*
h. *Sinä olet asunut —— kanssa.*
i. *—— on tuhat kilometriä.*
j. *Lähdetään —— saunassa.*

1. *kaupunkiin*
2. *hyvin*
3. *ase*
4. *liian*
5. *ravintolassa*
6. *koululta*
7. *tulee*
8. *savukkeita*
9. *täällä*
10. *laatikon*
11. *länteen*
12. *anna*
13. *koulusta*
14. *isäni*
15. *käymään*

III. How Would You Answer? Read the following questions aloud and be ready to *speak out* the answer to each one. Make your answers brief (but by no means simply *kyllä, ei*). Do not attempt to bring in any additional information.

Sample: Mitä te teette? Minä olen amerikkalainen sotilas.

1. *Missä teidän isänne ja äitinne ovat?*
2. *Oletteko olleet kauan armeijassa?*
3. *Mitä kello on?*
4. *Milloin juna saapuu asemalle?*
5. *Kuinka vanha teidän veljenne on?*
6. *Mikä kaupunki on itään Turusta?*
7. *Missä on asetehdas?*
8. *Onko tässä talossa kylpyhuonetta?*
9. *Haluaisitteko lihaa tai perunoita?*
10. *Lähdetäänkö oluelle?*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your responses to the two previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

After you are through with this, turn to

2. What Did You Answer?

The Leader will read the first question in the exercise *How Would You Answer?* and ask some member of the group to answer it. The person who answers reads the next question and the Leader indicates who is to answer it. Continue in this way until you have gone through all questions and answers in this exercise. Be sure to speak up if you disagree with the answers given.

3. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the Word Study as the Leader calls for it.

4. Listening In.

Record 12B, after first spiral

I. Liisa Jussila meets Bill Carter and invites him to her home for coffee.

Liisa

Päivää, herra Carter!

Bill

Hyvää päivää, neiti Jussila!
Kuinka te voitte?

Liisa

Oikein hyvin, kiitos.
Oletteko olleet kauan täällä?

Bill

Vain pari päivää.
Ja olen vielä pari päivää lisää.

Liisa

Niinkö, se on hyvä.
Haluaisitteko tulla meillä käymään?

Bill

Kiitos, tulen mielelläni.
Onko kotinne kaukana täältä?

Liisa

Ei, se on juuri tässä.

Bill

Mennäänkö sitten?

Record 12B, after second spiral

II. Liisa and Bill are now drinking coffee and talking about the room and about Liisa's farm.

Bill

Tämä on kaunis huone.

Liisa

Niin on, ja suuri
Pidän asua tässä huoneessa.

Bill

Onko tämä toisessa kerroksessa?

Liisa

Kyllä, tämä on toisessa kerroksessa.

Bill

Niinkö, onko tässä kylpyhuonetta?

Liisa

On kyllä.
Se on suoraan eteenpäin.

Bill

Onko täällä sauna myöskin?

Liisa

Ei ole.
Oletteko olleet saunassa?

Bill

Kävin kerran.
Ja pidän saunasta hyvin paljon.

Liisa

Niinkö, nyt laitan kahvia.

Bill

Anteeksi, saanko kysyä, paljonko tämä huone maksaa?

Liisa

Maksaa sata markkaa viikossa.

Bill

Kuuluuko kahvi tai aamiainen samaan?

Liisa

Ei, laitan kahvia huoneessani.

Bill

Haluatteko savukkeen?

Liisa

Ei kiitos.
Nyt kahville, olkaa hyvä.

Bill

Kiitos, onko teillä sisaria tai veljiä täällä?

Liisa

Minulla on vain yksi sisar, mutta hän ei ole täällä.

Not recorded from here to end

Bill

Onko teillä maatila?

Liisa

On maatilallemme on tunnin matka Helsingistä.

Bill

Noin tunnin junamatkako?

Liisa

Niin, haluaisitteko tulla maatilallemme ensi viikolla?

Bill

Kiitos kyllä. Haluaisin nähdä sen kesällä.

Liisa

Sisareni saapuu tänään Helsinkiin.
Juna saapuu asemalle kello viisi.

Bill

Esittäisittekö sisarenne minulle?

Liisa

Kyllä, tulisitteko kanssani asemalle?

Bill

Mielelläni.
Kello on nyt neljä, kolmekymmentä.

Liisa

Mennään sitten.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practise until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the Basic Sentences as the Leader calls for it.

3. Conversation

1. An American soldier arrives at the station in Helsinki. He addresses a stranger asking him where he could stay for the next few days. The stranger says that there's a very good hotel to the left of the station. The soldier answers that the hotel is too expensive and that he'd like to rent a room. The man says that he's a doctor and has a farm just outside Helsinki to the east. He says that the soldier could stay there with him and his wife. The soldier replies that the farm is too far from the armament factory where he must work in the office. The Finn says that his sister rents rooms and her house is only two kilometers to the west of the station. He asks the soldier to come with him to his mother's. The soldier accepts gladly.

2. Jack Morgan, the soldier, is at the house of Miss Sara, the sister of Dr. Sara, the stranger he met at the station. They talk about the weather. Dr. Sara says that it's still raining outside but that it is quite warm. The soldier says it's cold where he comes from, the northern United States, even in the fall. Miss Sara asks him how long he has been in Finland. He replies, he has been there for seven months. The Saras compliment him on his knowledge of Finnish.

3. The talk finally comes around to the renting of a room for the soldier. He asks if there are any vacancies and Miss Sara tells him that she has a beautiful room on the second floor. The room and breakfast, she replies to the inquiry of the soldier, will come to fourteen marks a day. The soldier now asks about the bathroom, and is told that there's always cold and hot water. The soldier is very pleased and decides to rent the room. Dr. Sara invites him to dinner to his farm, which the soldier accepts with thanks.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the Basic Sentences by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Review

Complete check-up on the material of the Word Study and Basic Sentences.

Finder List

aamiainen	breakfast
aijotte	you intend
amerikkalainen	American
asua	to stay *or* to dwell
ei ole	is not
ehkä	perhaps
emme	we do not
emäntä	mistress *or* landlady
huone	room
huoneita	some rooms
huonetta	some room
isäntä	master *or* landlord
katsomaan	to see
kerros	floor
kuntoon	in order
kuuluu	includes *or* belongs to
kylpyhuone	bathroom
kylpyhuonetta	some bathroom
käymään	to visit
laitan	I put
lounasta	some lunch
lähdetään	let's go

me	we
meidän	our
meillä	at us
meillä on	we have
-mme	first person plural verb suffix
minun	my
muutamme	we move in
muuttaa	to move in
-n	first person singular verb suffix
nimi	name
nähdä	to see
olla	to be
otamme	we take
pari	a couple
Pohjolan	Pohjola's
päivällistä	some dinner
saamme	we get
saatte	you get
sama	same

samaan	in the same
sauna	steambath
siinä	in it
sisällä	inside
sitten	then
sitä	that
suuri	large
syömme	we eat
-t	second person singular verb suffix
talo	house
tervetuloa	welcome
tiedä	know
toinen	second *or* another
toveri	friend *or* pal
-tte	second person plural verb suffix
tulemme	we come
vapaita	some vacant(s) *or* some free(s)
-vat	third person plural verb suffix
viikkoa	some week
vuokraa	he rents

UNIT 8

SPRUCING UP

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader and Members of the Group: If you have been working without a Guide and only with the phonograph records, from now on you will have to proceed by yourselves from this learning unit. When you go through the *Basic Sentences* of this and later units, you may read the English equivalents as you have done up to now and call on different members of the group to speak the Finnish twice for each item in the *Basic Sentences.* Or, if you prefer, you can have one student read the English and another student say the Finnish twice, and so on, chain fashion. Both you and the other members of the group should be on the watch to detect and correct faulty pronunciation. (The *Hints on Pronunciation* are recorded through Unit 10.)

1. Basic Sentences

James Grey talks to his landlady about going to the barber's and elsewhere about town.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
	James Grey
Good morning, Mrs. Mikkola.	*Hyvää huomenta, rouva Mikkola.*
	Rouva Mikkola
Good morning, James.	*Huomenta, James.*
you slept	*nukuitte*
Did you sleep well?	*Nukuitteko hyvin?*

And how do you like your room?	*Ja mitä te pidätte huoneestanne?*
	James Grey
Thank you, I slept very well.	*Kiitos, nukuin oikein hyvin.*
quiet *or* peaceful	*rauhallinen*
My room is very quiet.	*Huoneeni on niin rauhallinen.*
	Rouva Mikkola
to go	*mennä*
out	*ulos*
Do you intend to go out?	*Aijotteko mennä ulos?*
It's beginning to rain out there.	*Ulkona alkaa sataa.*
	James Grey
I must	*minun täytyy*
Yes, I must go to the station.	*Kyllä, minun täytyy mennä asemalle.*
	Rouva Mikkola
Is your friend Bill coming to town?	*Tuleeko toverinne Bill kaupunkiin?*
	James Grey
He's arriving at three o'clock, by train.	*Hän saapuu junalla kello kolme.*

	Rouva Mikkola
some laundry	*pyykkiä*
Have you got some laundry?	*Onko teillä pyykkiä?*
I send	*lähetän*
own	*oma*
I'm just sending out my own.	*Lähetän omani juuri ulos.*
	James Grey
laundry	*pyykki*
I have some laundry in my room.	*Minulla on pyykki huoneessani.*
I bring	*tuon*
down	*alas*
I'll bring it down.	*Tuon sen alas.*
	Rouva Mikkola
Have you got a great deal?	*Onko teillä paljon?*
	James Grey
some shirt	*paitaa*
I have only a couple of shirts,	*Minulla on vain pari paitaa,*
some pair	*paria*
some socks	*sukkia*
six pairs of socks,	*kuusi paria sukkia,*
some shorts	*alushousuja*
three pairs of shorts,	*kolme paria alushousuja,*

dozen	*tusina*
some handkerchiefs	*nenäliinoja*
and a dozen handkerchiefs.	*ja tusina nenäliinoja.*
	Rouva Mikkola
Very well.	*Hyvä on.*
simultaneously	*yhtaikaa* tai *yht'aikaa*
I'm sending everything at the same time.	*Lähetän kaikki yhtaikaa.*
	James Grey
Thanks very much.	*Kiitoksia paljon.*
hair (of the head)	*tukka*
long	*pitkä*
Isn't my hair too long, Mrs. Mikkola?	*Eikö tukkani ole liian pitkä, rouva Mikkola?*
	Rouva Mikkola
Yes, it is.	*On kyllä.*
you know	*tiedätte*
Do you know where the barber is?	*Tiedättekö missä on parturi?*
	James Grey
Yes, he's in this same house.	*Kyllä, se on tässä samassa talossa.*

I shave	*ajan partani*
at the same (time)	*samalla*
beard	*parta*
I'll get a shave at the same time.	*Ajan myöskin samalla partani*
	Rouva Mikkola
I noticed	*huomasin*
shoe	*kenkä*
broken	*rikki*
I noticed that your shoe needs repair.	*Huomasin, että teidän kenkänne on rikki.*
	James Grey
quite	*aivan*
Quite right.	*Aivan oikein.*
Tell me, where's a shoemaker?	*Sanokaa minulle missä on suutari?*
	Rouva Mikkola
The shoemaker's to the left of the barber.	*Suutari on parturista vasemmalle.*
	James Grey
Is he good?	*Onko hän hyvä?*
	Rouva Mikkola
Yes, he's good.	*Kyllä, hän on hyvä.*

of the town	*kaupungin*
But there's a cheaper one outside town.	*Mutta halvempi on kaupungin ulkopuolella.*
	James Grey
oh	*oi*
coat	*takki*
Oh, my coat's ripped!	*Oi, takkini on rikki.*
to have pressed	*prässäyttää*
trousers	*housut*
I'd like to have my trousers pressed too.	*Ja haluan prässäyttää housuni.*
	Rouva Mikkola
There's a very good tailor in the hotel.	*Hotellissa on oikein hyvä räätäli.*
	James Grey
certainly	*varmaan*
But he's sure to be too expensive.	*Mutta hän on varmaan liian kallis.*
	Rouva Mikkola
He's more expensive, but he's the best.	*Hän on kalliimpi mutta myöskin parhain.*
	James Grey
guess	*arvatkaa*
I go	*menen*
Guess where I'm going tonight?	*Arvatkaa mihin menen tänä iltana?*

Rouva Mikkola	
You must be going out to the movies with Miss Jussila.	*Varmaan menette elokuviin neiti Jussilan kanssa.*
James Grey	
I'm going with Miss Jussila to a restaurant for dinner, and then to the movies.	*Menen neiti Jussilan kanssa ravintolaan päivälliselle ja sitten elokuviin.*
Rouva Mikkola	
Which restaurant are you going to?	*Mihin ravintolaan te menette?*
James Grey	
We'll eat dinner at the Helsinki restaurant.	*Syömme päivällistä Helsingin ravintolassa.*

Hints on Pronunciation

Double Consonants

If you glance back at Table One in Unit 7, page 119, you will note that nine Finnish consonants occur in groups of two. These double consonants are: *pp*, *tt*, *kk*, *mm*, *nn*, *rr*, *ll*, *ss* and *hh*. As yet, you had no example in which *pp* or *hh* occurred, but the others may now be taken up in turn.

Double t: Pronounce *tt* as you would in the English expressions *hot tea*, or *rat tail*, (in contrast to *detail*). Note the brief period of silence while the tongue rests against the back of your front teeth as the *tt* is pronounced in Finnish. This is very important. If you don't observe this, especially if you substitute a simple *t*, you might easily be misunderstood.

PRACTICE 27

Record 2A, beginning

vettä	water
esittäisitte	you'd introduce
saatte	you get

Double k: Pronounce *kk* as you would pronounce *ck c* in the English expression *black coal*, or the *ck k* in *sick king* (in contrast to *sickening*). Again, keep your tongue pressed against your palate for a brief while, to distinguish the *kk* from the *k*, or you might easily be misunderstood.

PRACTICE 28

Record 2A, after first spiral

pyykki	laundry
tukka	hair
kaikki	all

Double m: Pronounce *mm* as you would in English *roommate* (in contrast to *roomer*).

PRACTICE 29

Record 2A, after second spiral

kymmenen	ten
emme	we don't
saamme	we get

Double n: Pronounce *nn* as you would in English *penname* (in contrast to *penny*).

PRACTICE 30

Record 2A, after third spiral

penniä	some pennies
mennään	let's go
huoneestanne	from your room

Double r: To learn the pronunciation of *rr*, you must first master the pronunciation of *r*. Look up the discussion of *r* in Unit 5, page 91. The double *rr* is produced like the simple *r*, but with about twice as many flaps of the tongue. The nearest English equivalent is the *rr* sound in the expression of disgust or cold, *brr*.

PRACTICE 31

Record 2A, after fourth spiral

herra	Mr.
kerros	floor
kerran	once

Double l: Pronounce *ll* as you would in English *wholly* (in contrast with *holy*).

PRACTICE 32

Record 2A, after fifth spiral

täällä	here
tuolla	there
kallis	expensive

Double s: Pronounce *ss* as you would pronounce the *s c* in the English expression *this city* (in contrast with *publicity*), or the *ss S* in *Miss Sue* (in contrast with *misuse*).

PRACTICE 33

Record 2A, after sixth spiral

missä	where	*tässä*	here
naimisissa	married		

The letter '

Note the word for 'simultaneously' in the Basic Sentences: it may be written *yhtaikaa* or *yht'aikaa* or, as a matter of fact, in two words, *yhtä aikaa*. The first spelling reflects the pronunciation in rapid speech; the last represents a careful, measured pronunciation. The word in the middle, which you will hear some Finns pronounce, contains a spelling device you should know about: the letter ', called hereafter the 'catch'. The catch, as you see, may be omitted entirely in the above expression; nevertheless, you must learn to recognize it because (1) it will occur in words where it can not be omitted (at least in the speech of certain Finnish areas), and (2) it plays a very important role in the grammar, even when not actually pronounced as such.

Pronunciation of the catch: The sound we have called catch is heard when you are clearing your throat or, when strongly exaggerated, it constitutes the explosive sound heard when you are coughing. A common kind of cough could be written *'uh'uh*. The Finnish catch in the throat is a much milder explosion, however. Here is how you do it: the vocal cords are brought into close contact (hold your breath and feel the constriction in your throat), and the air compressed by the pressure from your lungs is brought against the cords; when they are opened suddenly the air escapes (release your breath). The resulting sound is the catch. You will hear it in some English expressions: between the two *a*'s in *soda-ash* (*soda'ash*), before each of the *o*'s in *oh-oh* (*'o'o*), and in Scotland or Brooklyn in *bottle* (*bo'l*) for example. If your Guide pronounces the catch, have him demonstrate.

PRACTICE 34

Record 2A, after seventh spiral

yht'aikaa, yht'aikaa	simultaneously

Substitutions for the catch: You learned in Unit 7, page 121, that the consonant stem form of *-ee-* stems ends in '. This is not written in the regular spelling, but if it were, we would write *terve'*, *ase'*, *huone'*, and so forth. Now, the catch is not pronounced here by most Finns as a catch; the catch, however, is replaced quite regularly by other consonants. Reread, first of all, Unit 7, page 117, on the pronunciation of *terveluloa* and *kolmekymmentä*. This is what happens: the first part of each of these compound words ends in the catch: *terve'* (being the consonant stem form) and *kolme'*; we can say that when a word ending in a catch is followed by a word beginning in a consonant (especially *p*, *t*, *k* and *s*, but also others), that consonant is substituted for the catch: thus ' is replaced by *t*, *terve'tuloa*, *tervetuloa*, and by *k*, *kolme'kymmentä*, *kolmekkymmentä*.

PRACTICE 35

Record 2A, after eighth spiral

asetehdas	armament factory
huonekylpy	room bath
kolme kuukautta	three months
liikemies	business man

The importance of the catch in grammar will be explained to you later on in various Word Study sections.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

Comment One—Consonant Stems

All nouns which do not belong to any of the stem types discussed so far (that is, type I, or *-e-* and *-ee-* of type II) belong to the sub-group of stem type II, which we label consonant stems. A consonant stem, like all stems belonging to type II, has one stem ending in a vowel and another in a consonant. The free form of consonant stems ends in a consonant, and since only *-t*, *-r*, *-l*, *-s*, *-n* can occur at the end of free forms (see the various Hints on Pronunciation), we can classify consonant stems according to the final consonant of the free form as *-t* group, *-r* group *-n* group, *-l* group.

1. *-t* group

olut	beer	*olue-lle*	for beer
tuhat	thousand	*tuhanne-ssa*	in a thousand

When a word ends in *-t* in its free form it will have two stem forms: the consonant stem will end in *-t-* (thus *olut-* and *tuhat-*) and the vowel stem generally in *-e-* (thus *olue-* and *tuhante-*; note automatic replacement of *nt* by *nn* in *tuhannessa*). Further examples: *olutko* 'beer?', *tuhantemme* 'our thousands'. Some nouns n the *-t* group have vowel stems in *-ee-* and even in ther long vowels.

2. *-r* group

sisar	sister	*sisare-lta*	from sister
tytär	daughter	*tyttäre-ni*	my daughter

When a word ends in *-r* in its free form it will have wo stem forms: the consonant stem will end in *-r-* thus *sisar-*, *tytär-*) and the vowel stem in *-e-* (*sisare-*, *yttäre-*; note automatic replacement of *tt* by *t* in *ytär*). Further examples: *sisarta* 'some sister' (with he *-(t)a* suffix, added to the consonant stem *sisar-*), *yttären* 'the daughter'.

3. *-l* group

You have no words as yet belonging to this group, ut you may note that the words ending in *-l* in their ree form behave just like those in the *-r* group, that s, have a consonant stem in *-l-* and a vowel stem in *-e-*.

4. *-s* group

lounas	lunch	*lounaa-t*	lunches
sotilas	soldier	*sotilaa-mme*	our soldiers
tehdas	factory	*tehtaa-ssa*	in the factory
kolmas	third	*kolmanne-ssa*	in the third

Words in the *-s* group fall into several sub-groups according to what vowel precedes the *-s* in the free form. Thus, all of the above belong to the *-as* sub-group. All but a very few words the free forms of which end in *-as* have consonant stems in *-s-* (*lounas-*, *sotilas-*, etc.), and vowel stems in *-a-* (*lounaa-*, *tehtaa-*; note the automatic replacement of *t* by *d* in *tehdas*). *Kolmas* is one of the few exceptions, having its consonant stem in *-t-* (*kolmat-*) and its vowel stem in *-nte-* (note the replacement of *nt* by *nn* in *kolmannessa*).

(liike)mies	(business)man	*miehe-t*	men

Among words ending in *-es* in their free form you had but one, which happens to belong to the handful of exceptional forms: the word *mies* 'man' has a consonant stem *mies-* and a vowel stem *miehe-*.

kaunis	beautiful	*kaunii-mpi*	more beautiful
kallis	expensive	*kallii-mpi*	more expensive

Words ending in *-is* in their free form have consonant stems in *-s-*, vowel stems in *-i-*.

kerros	floor	*kerrokse-t*	floors

Words ending in *-os* in their form have consonant stems in *-s-*, vowel stems in *-kse-*.

5. *-n* group

aamiainen	breakfast
aamiaise-t	breakfasts
amerikkalainen	American
amerikkalaise-ssa	in an American
(*konttori*)*apulainen*	(office) helper
apulaise-lta	from the helper
rauhallinen	quiet
rauhallise-sta	from the quiet
suomalainen	Finnish
suomalaise-t	Finnish ...s
kymmenen	ten
kymmene-ssä	in ten

Words in the *-n* group fall into several sub-groups according to what sounds precedes the *-n* in the free form. Thus, all the above belong to the *-nen* sub-group. Words which end in *-nen* in their free form have consonant stems in *-s-* and vowel stems in *-se-*, except *kymmenen*. Further examples: *aamiaista* 'some breakfast' (consonant stem *aamiais-* and suffix *-*(*t*)*a*), *rauhallisen* 'the quiet'.

vasen	left	*vasemma-lle*	to the left

Among words ending in *-en* (that is, in a consonant other than *n-* followed by *-en*) in their free form you had but one, which happens to be an exceptional form. While all others end in *-n-* in their consonant stem and in *-ne-* in their vowel stem, *vasen* has a consonant stem *vasen-*, but a vowel stem *vasempa-* (note the replacement of *mp* by *mm* in *vasemmalle*). Further examples: *vasenko* 'left?', *vasemmalta* 'from the left', *vasempani* 'my left'.

suurin	biggest	*suurimma-ssa*	in the biggest
parhain	best	*parhaimpa-ni*	my best
tervein	healthiest	*terveimpä-nsä*	his healthiest

Look up the discussion of the *-in* suffix in Unit 3, pages 54-5. If you want to add further suffixes to these adjectives in *-in* they take on a stem form ending in *-mpa-* (or, by automatic replacement, in certain cases in *-mma-*), as in the illustrations. These adjectives must not be confused with free forms ending in *-in*, because the latter have consonant stems in *-n-*, vowel stems in *-me-*.

You have no examples yet of words belonging to other *-n* sub-groups, except *seitsemän* 'seven', *kahdeksan* 'eight', and *yhdeksän* 'nine', which are exceptional and were already discussed in Unit 7, page 122.

Comment Two—Verb Stems (*Type I*)

lähettää	to send	*lähetä-n*	I send
sanoa	to say	*sano-tte*	you say

syödä	to eat	*syö*	he eats
tuoda	to bring	*tuo-mme*	we bring

Verb stems, like noun stems, are of two types. To type I belong those which have only one stem form—always ending in a vowel; and to type II belong those which have two stem forms—one ending in a vowel, the other in a consonant. Verbs, like nouns, have a free form and a stem form. Free verb forms appear in the column to the left above, and are translated by the English infinitives, that is, with 'to': 'to do', 'to sleep', and so on.

All the verbs in the columns above belong to stem type I. A verb the free form of which ends in *-a* (or *-ä*), and when the *-a* is preceded by either a vowel (as in *lähett-ä-ä*, *san-o-a*) or a *-d-* (as in *syö-d-ä*, *tuo-d-a*), belongs to type I. The stem form is built by leaving off the final *-a* if that follows a vowel, and the *-da* in the other case. Personal verb suffixes (see Unit 7, pages 122-3) are always added directly to the stem of verbs in the present tense, as illustrated in the column to the right. Study these further examples: *käydä* 'to go', stem *käy-*, *käyn* 'I go', *käy* 'he goes'; *ajaa* 'to shave', stem *aja-*, *ajat partas* 'you shave', *ajaa partansa* 'he shaves'.

tehdä	to do	*teke-e*	he does
nähdä	to see	*näke-e*	he sees

These two verbs, though they have free forms ending in *-da*, do not belong to type I, and are somewhat unusual in other respects as well. They belong to type II, have a vowel stem as in the illustrations, and a consonant stem *tek-* and *näk-*. The *-k-*, however, undergoes various automatic changes, about which you'll learn more later on.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences.* This is individual study.

3. What Would You Say?

I. In the following sentences you will find one or more words in parentheses. These are *free forms.* Each free form must take a *suffix,* to make sense in the sentence. Add the right suffix throughout, making sure that you're adding to the correct *stem forms.* (In some cases more than one solution is possible.)

1. *(Pyykki) on monta paitaa.*
2. *Tuon (kenkä) tänään (suutari).*
3. *Syömme (aamiainen) aina (kahdeksan).*
4. *Menen (oma) (maatila) ensi (viikko).*
5. *(Nukuitte) (sama) (huone) (toveri) kanssa?*
6. *Hän on (työ) (tehdas).*
7. *(Nuori) (poika) ovat (armeija).*
8. *(Vanha) (sisar) on hyvä (toveri).*
9. *(Asema) on (vasen) (hotelli)?*
10. *(Maatila) on kaukana (Turku).*
11. *Helsinki on (kaunis) kaupunki.*
12. *Hän on (vanha) (sisar).*
13. *(Huone) on (rauhallinen).*
14. *(Juna) saapuu (Turku) (asema).*
15. *Hän (etsiä) huonetta kaupungin ulkopuolella.*
16. *Juna (lähteä) asemalta kello kolme.*
17. *(Saapua) äitinne Helsinkiin tänään?*
18. *Te (tietää), että maatilani on hyvin kaunis kesällä.*
19. *Toverini ja minä (syödä) päivällistä ravintolassa.*
20. *Sisareni (nukkua) samassa huoneessa kanssani.*
21. *Minä (asua) kauniissa talossa asemalta vasemmalle.*
22. *(Tuoda) pyykkisi alas tänään.*
23. *(Aikoa) mennä kolulle ensi viikolla?*
24. *Jos sinä (antaa) minulle päivällistä, tulen teillä käymään.*
25. *Hän (ymmärtää) että samaan kuuluu myöskin aamiainen.*

II. Select the right response for each situation.

1. You say you're looking for a room.
   a. *Lapsi tulee huoneesta.*
   b. *Talossa on vapaita huoneita.*
   c. *Minä etsin huonetta.*
2. You ask if it's raining outside.
   a. *Mennäänkö ulos?*
   b. *Onko sauna ulkona?*
   c. *Sataako ulkona?*
3. You say you must have your coat pressed.
   a. *Sotilas prässäyttää housunsa.*
   b. *Minun täytyy prässäyttää takkini.*
   c. *Takkini on räätälissä.*
4. You ask if your laundry is coming today.
   a. *Tuleeko pyykkini tänään?*
   b. *Onko teillä paljon sukkia pyykissä?*
   c. *Lähdetäänkö katsomaan missä on pyykkini?*

. You say you're shaving in the bathroom.
   a. *Hotellissa on parturi ja suutari.*
   b. *Emäntä ja isäntä ovat sisällä.*
   c. *Ajan partani kylpyhuoneessa.*

6. You ask someone how long he has been here.
   a. *Aijotteko olla täällä kauan.*
   b. *Koska te menette ulos?*
   c. *Kuinka kauan olette olleet täällä?*

7. You say you have a dozen shorts at home.
   a. *Minulla on nenäliinoja laatikossa.*
   b. *Minulla on kotona tusina alushousuja.*
   c. *Minulla on kolme paitaa.*

III. How Would You Answer? This exercise is like the one on pages 124-5 of the previous unit.

1. *Syöttekö päivällistä ravintolassa?*
2. *Menettekö elokuviin tänä iltana?*
3. *Saapuuko toverinne kaupunkiin?*
4. *Tiedättekö missä on hammaslääkäri?*
5. *Onko maatilanne kaukana Helsingistä?*
6. *Vuokraako rouva Mikkola huoneita?*
7. *Onko New York kaunis kaupunki?*
8. *Kuinka vanha on teidän nuorin sisarenne?*
9. *Onko parturi asemasta oikealle tai vasemmalle?*
10. *Paljonko on huoneenne vuokra?*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your response to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

I. Liisa Jussila and James Grey walk home from the movies and talk about James' friend, Jack, and other topics.

James Grey

Se oli oikein hyvä elokuva.

Liisa Jussila

Niin oli. Pidän elokuvista.
Asutteko vielä samassa huoneessa?

James Grey

Ei, asun rouva Toivosen talossa.

Liisa Jussila

Pidättekö huoneestanne?

James Grey

Kyllä, se on hyvin rauhallinen.
Ja rouva Mikkola on hyvä emäntä.

Liisa Jussila

Syöttekö myöskin siellä?

James Grey

Syön vain aamiaisen.
Lähteekö äitinne maatilalleen ensi viikolla?

Liisa Jussila

Ei, on liian kylmä.
Hän on mielellään kaupungissa.

James Grey

Toverini Jack tulee myöskin kaupunkiin.

Liisa Jussila

Tahdotteko te ja toverinne syödä lounasta kanssani?

James Grey

Koska, ja mihin aikaan?

Liisa Jussila

änään syömme noin kello yksi.

James Grey

Kiitos, mutta minun täytyy mennä asemalle kello yksi.

Liisa Jussila

aapuuko toverinne kello yhden junalla?

James Grey

Kyllä, ja hänen täytyy mennä hotelliin myöskin.

Liisa Jussila

aluatteko tulla päivälliselle kello kuusi?

James Grey

aammeko tulla päivälliselle?

Liisa Jussila

ietysti, tervetuloa!

James Grey

Jack käy pankissa ja konttorissa kello viisi.

Liisa Jussila

Missä työssä Jack oli Amerikassa?

James Grey

Hän oli konttoriapulainen.

Liisa Jussila

Asetehtaassako?

James Grey

Niin, samassa asetehtaassa minun kanssani.

Liisa Jussila

Onko Jack vanhempi kuin te?

James Grey

Ei, hän on monta vuotta nuorempi.

Liisa Jussila

Vieläkö ulkona sataa?

James Grey

Ei, mutta on kylmä.

Liisa Jussila

Kesällä on kaupungissa aina lämmin.

James Grey

Haluaisin olla Helsingissä kesällä.

Liisa Jussila

Olen mielelläni maatilalla.
Kaupungissa on liian lämmin.

James Grey

Amerikassa on vielä lämpimämpi.

II. Mistaken identity.

Jack

Sanokaa, Liisa, saanko tulla teille tänä iltana?

Eeva

Tietysti, Eero, tervetuloa!

Jack

Mutta tämä ei ole Eero.

Eeva

Ja tämä ei ole Liisa.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Conversation

1. You're in your hotel room and ring for th
waiter who enters shortly thereafter. You tell th
waiter that you have just arrived from Turku. No
that you're in Helsinki, you're anxious to get a shave
you ask the waiter where the barber shop is. He tell
you that there is one on the second floor of the hote
He then remarks that your coat and trousers nee
cleaning and pressing. You say that your train leave

in five hours. He says that the coat and trousers cannot be pressed then. You inquire about the restaurants in town and mention that you have to drop in at the Bank of Helsinki. The waiter tells you that the Bank is to the right of the hotel. There's a very good restaurant to the left of the Bank. You thank the waiter for the information and dismiss him.

2. You're now at the barber's getting a shave. The barber is very talkative and speaks in detail, first about the weather in Helsinki during the various seasons; then he tells you all about the many members of his family (their ages and occupations). You finally interrupt him with a question: "Where's a shoemaker?" The barber is a bit offended at your impatience and says that there's one straight ahead but that he's very expensive and not very good. You say it doesn't matter and ask the barber for the price of the shave. He tells you that it costs eight marks. You pay him and say good-bye.

3. You're now in the office of the manager of the Bank of Helsinki. He's a good friend of your father's. Your father, in fact, was his doctor. The manager is very friendly and says he'd like to introduce his wife. He invites you for dinner to his farm which is seven kilometers from Helsinki. You decline regretfully because you must be at the station in a few hours. Then you take your leave.

Finder List

aivan	quite
ajaa	to shave (*or* to ride)
alas	down
alushousuja	some shorts
apulainen	helper
arvatkaa	guess
housut	trousers
huomasin	I noticed
kaupungin	of the town
kenkä	shoe
lähettää	to send
mennä	to go
mies	man
minun täytyy	I must
nenäliinoja	some handkerchiefs
nukuitte	you slept
oma	own
oi	oh
paitaa	some shirts
paria	some pairs

parta	beard
pitkä	long
pyykki	laundry
pyykkiä	some laundry
prässäyttää	to press
rauhallinen	quiet *or* peaceful
rikki	broken
samalla	at the same time
sukkia	some socks
takki	coat
tietää	to know
tukka	hair (of the head)
tuoda	to bring
tusina	dozen
varmaan	certainly
yhtaikaa (or *yht'aikaa*)	simultaneously
ulos	out

UNIT 9

LET'S EAT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Lieutenant Steward takes Miss Laakso out to dinner.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
Luutnantti Steward	
What time is it?	*Kuinka paljon on kello?*
to wait	*odottaa*
some valley	*laaksoa*
I'm expecting Miss Laakso for dinner.	*Odotan neiti Laaksoa päivälliselle.*
Herra Joki	
a quarter	*neljännes*
past	*yli*
It's a quarter past five.	*Kello on neljänneksen yli viisi.*
lieutenant	*luutnantti*
Where do you intend to eat, lieutenant?	*Missä aijotte syödä, Herra Luutnantti?*

Luutnantti Steward

I don't	*en*
I don't know.	*En tiedä.*
half	*puoli*
We eat at eight thirty.	*Syömme puoli yhdeksän.*
you could	*voisitte*
to recommend	*suositella*
some restaurant	*ravintolaa*
Mr. Joki, could you recommend a good restaurant?	*Voisitteko te, Herra Joki, suositella hyvää ravintolaa?*

Herra Joki

Of course.	*Tietysti.*
on Esplanad street	*Esplanadinkadulla*
There are a couple of good restaurants on Esplanad Street,	*Esplanadinkadulla on pari hyvää ravintolaa,*
such as the Hotel Savoy and the Grand.	*kuten Hotelli Savoy ja Grand.*

Luutnantti Steward

on Anna street	*Annankadulla*
Is there a good restaurant on Anna street?	*Eikö Annankadulla ole hyvää ravintolaa?*

Herra Joki

there	*siellä*
small	*pieni*
Yes, there's just a small restaurant.	*Kyllä, siellä on vain pieni ravintola.*

on Heikki street	*Heikinkadulla*
But there is a better one on Heikki street.	*Mutta, Heikinkadulla on parempi.*
	Luutnantti Steward
We're going to the Grand restaurant.	*Me menemme Grand ravintolaan.*
Mr. Joki, tell me,	*Herra Joki, sanokaa minulle,*
one eats	*syödään*
abyut what time do they eat	*mihin aikaan Suomessa syödään*
some breakfast	*aamiaista*
breakfast, lunch and dinner in Finland?	*aamiaista, lounasta ja päivällistä?*
	Herra Joki
family	*perhe*
The family breakfast is at eight o'clock,	*Aamiainen on perheessä kello kahdeksan,*
to two	*kahteen*
lunch from twelve o'clock to two,	*lounas kello kahdestatoista kahteen,*
of six	*kuuden*
and dinner about six o'clock.	*ja päivällinen kuuden aikaan.*
	Luutnantti Steward
But we're going to dinner.	*Mutta me menemme päivälliselle.*
a quarter	*neljännestä*
to	*vailla*
At a quarter to eight.	*Neljännestä vailla kahdeksan.*

Herra Joki	
It's quite all right to go to a restaurant at eight.	*On paras mennä ravintolaan kahdeksan aikaan.*
Luutnantti Steward	
Thank you for your advice.	*Kiitoksia paljon neuvostanne.*
In the Restaurant	
Waiter:	*Tarjoilija:*
table	*pöytä*
Table for two?	*Pöytä kahdelleko?*
Luutnantti Steward	
menu	*ruokalista*
Yes, and the menu, please.	*Niin, ja ruokalista, olkaa hyvä.*
What'll you have, Miss Laakso?	*Mitä te haluatte, neiti Laakso?*
Miss Laakso	
chicken	*kana*
vegetables	*vihannekset*
I'm fond of chicken and vegetables.	*Pidän kanasta ja vihanneksista.*
Luutnantti Steward	
some onion beefsteak	*sipulipihviä*
There's some onion beefsteak on the menu.	*Ruokalistassa on sipulipihviä.*
Tell me what it is.	*Sanokaa minulle, mitä se on.*

	Miss Laakso
as	*kuin*
same	*samaa*
It's the same as your 'steak'.	*Se on samaa kuin teidän 'steak'.*
	Luutnantti Steward
first	*ensin*
some bouillon	*lihalientä*
Would you like some bouillon first?	*Haluatteko ensin lihalientä?*
	Miss Laakso
Yes, thank you.	*Kyllä, kiitos.*
	Luutnantti Steward
Waiter, we'll have two bouillons.	*Tarjoilija, saammeko kaksi lihalientä.*
portion	*annos*
some chicken	*kanaa*
of vegetables	*vihannesten*
A portion of chicken with vegetables	*Annos kanaa vihannesten kanssa.*
some meat balls	*lihapullia*
And meat balls and potatoes.	*Ja lihapullia ja perunoita.*
	Tarjoilija
some salad	*salaattia*
Would you like some salad?	*Haluatteko salaattia?*

	Luutnantti Steward
No thank you.	*Ei kiitos.*
we order	*tilaamme*
dessert	*jälkiruoka*
late	*myöhään*
We'll order the dessert later.	*Tilaamme jälkiruoan myöhemmin.*
	Miss Laakso
some fish	*kalaa*
Would you like some fish too?	*Haluaisitteko myöskin kalaa?*
	Luutnantti Steward
glass	*lasi*
some wine	*viiniä*
No, but I want a glass of wine.	*Ei, mutta tahdon lasin viiniä.*
how about	*entäs*
How about you, Miss Laakso?	*Entäs te, neiti Laakso?*
	Miss Laakso
Yes, I'd love it.	*Kyllä, mielelläni.*
	Luutnantti Steward
some glass	*lasia*
Waiter, two glasses of wine, please.	*Tarjoilija, olkaa hyvä, kaksi lasia viiniä.*

	Tarjoilija
some ice cream	*jäätelöä*
some pastries	*leivoksia*
We have ice cream and pastry on the menu.	*Meillä on ruokalistassa jäätelöä ja leivoksia.*
	Luutnantti Steward
Do you want pastry and coffee?	*Tahdotteko leivoksia ja kahvia?*
	Miss Laakso
small	*pieni*
cup	*kuppi*
Yes, and just a small cup of coffee.	*Kyllä, ja vain pieni kuppi kahvia.*
	Luutnantti Steward
bill	*lasku*
Waiter, the bill, please.	*Tarjoilija, lasku, olkaa hyvä.*
	Tarjoilija
it's fifty-one marks.	*Se on viisikymmentäyksi markkaa.*
	Luutnantti Steward
Here's sixty marks.	*Tässä on kuusikymmentä markkaa.*
the rest *or* end	*loppu*
tip	*juomaraha*
The rest is your tip.	*Loppu on juomarahanne.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

Glance back at your table of consonant groups in unit 7, page 119. Note that combinations of more than two consonants occur only in the *m*, *n*, *r*, and *l* columns. The remaining columns contain only groups of two consonants. Of these, we have already discussed all those the first member of which is identical with the second (that is, the *double consonants*). The other groups of two are easy to pronounce: the first member is always the sound closing one syllable, and the second member begins the next. Now, some of the first members, especially *h*, will never occur at the end of a syllable in English and you may tend to omit them (see unit 4, pages 71-2); in Finnish, however, both members of a group must be fully pronounced. The pronunciation of the individual members was already discussed in the various units. You must pay a good deal of attention to these groups when the first member is *h*.

PRACTICE 36

Record 2A, after ninth spiral

johtaja	manager	*kahvi*	coffee
tahdotte	you want	*Pohjolan*	Pohjola's

Combinations of three consonants will be discussed in the following unit. We shall now pass to a discussion of vowel groups.

Vowel groups: The following table summarizes for your convenience the Finnish vowel groups. Look over the table carefully.

Table Two

Finnish Vowel Groups

	i	e	ä	y	ö	u	o	a
i	ii	ei	äi	yi	öi	ui	oi	ai
e	ie	ee	äe	ye	öe	ue	oe	ae
ä	iä	eä	ää	yä	öä			
y		ey	äy	yy	öy			
ö	iö		äö	yö	(öö)			
u	iu	eu				uu	ou	au
o	io	eo				uo	oo	ao
a	ia	ea				ua	oa	aa

Every vowel, as you see from the table, occurs in groups of two. The *öö* was put in parentheses because it's extremely rare. Of the others, *ii*, *ee*, *ää*, *yy*, *uu*, and *aa* will occur quite often, and it is very important that you pronounce them correctly. In general, a long (or double) vowel will be pronounced exactly like its short (or single) counterpart, but about one and a half times as long.

Double i: Pronounce the Finnish *ii* similarly to the *ee* of English *heed* (in contrast with the *i* of *hid*).

PRACTICE 37

Record 2A, after tenth spiral

viisi	five
viikolla	during the week
näkemiin	so long

Double e: The nearest approximation to the Finnish *ee* in English is the *a* in *shade.*

PRACTICE 38

Record 2A, after eleventh spiral

tulee	he comes
länteen	to the west
teette	you do

Double ä: Pronounce the Finnish *ää* a little longer than you would the *a* of English *mad.*

PRACTICE 39

Record 2A, after twelfth spiral

tänään	today
lisää	more
lähdetään	let's go

Double y: There is no sound in English approximating a Finnish *yy.* Reread the discussion in unit 1, page 14, and imitate the Guide's (or record's) pronunciation of *y*; then pronounce this sound about one and a half times as long, and you'll have the *yy.*

PRACTICE 40

Record 2A, after thirteenth spiral

pyytää	to ask for
pyykki	laundry

Double u: Pronounce the Finnish *uu* similarly to the *oo* of English *soon* (in contrast with the *oo* of *soot*), only longer.

PRACTICE 41

Record 2A, after fourteenth spiral

juuri	just
kuuluu	includes
muuttaa	to move in

Double o: The nearest approximation to the Finnish *oo* in English is the *oa* in *load.*

PRACTICE 42

Record 2A, after fifteenth spiral

kuntoon, kuntoon	in order

Double a: Pronounce the Finnish *aa* similarly to the *aa* found in the name *Haas,* only about twice as long.

PRACTICE 43

Record 2A, after sixteenth spiral

sataa	it's raining	*saamme*	we get
aamiainen	breakfast		

Rise in pitch: You have probably noticed that you use ups and downs of tone in speaking English to express surprise, for instance, or in questions, exclamations. In Finnish, too, you will hear rising pitch in certain cases. There are some words where the last syllable may have a distinctly higher pitch than those preceding. Your Guide may tell you that this pronunciation is 'shop-keeper's Finnish' (that is, common), but chances are, he too says it under certain circumstances. In the following Practice the syllable with higher pitch is marked by an accent. Note how your Guide or the records call out these words:

PRACTICE 44

Record 2A, after seventeenth spiral

kyllä́	yeah!	*mitä́?!*	what?!
poiká!	hey, boy!	*kiitós!*	thanks!
hyvästí!	good-bye!		

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

Comment one—The -(t)a suffix and when to use it

1. The suffix -(*t*)*a:*

syötte lounasta	you eat lunch	*hyvää yötä*	good night
kaksi sisarta	two sisters		

You have learned the words *lounas* 'lunch', *yö* 'night', *sisar* 'sister', with the *-ta* suffix attached as in the above examples. This suffix is added to the consonant variety of stems belonging to type II, and to stems ending in a double vowel. For example: *lapsi* 'child', consonant stem *las-*, *lasta* 'some child'; *vapaa* 'free', stem *vapaa-*, *vapaata* 'some free . . .'.

minä etsin huonetta	I'm looking for a room

The consonant stem of *huone* 'room' is *huone'-*; when you add the *-ta*, the -' is replaced by *-t*, hence *huonet-ta* 'some room'. Thus also, *ase* 'weapon', *ase'-*, *asetta* 'some weapon' (see unit 8, pages 139-40).

hyvää iltaa	good evening	*hyvää päivää*	good day
haluaisitteko kalaa?	would you like some fish?		

You have learned the words *hyvä* 'good', *ilta* 'evening', *päivä* 'day', *kala* 'fish', with the *-a* suffix attached as in the above examples. This suffix is identical with *-ta*, but is added to stems ending in a single vowel. For example: *vaimoa* 'some wife', *ammattia* 'some trade'.

Since the *-ta* and the *-a* are the same suffix, differing only according to what stem they are added to, we can refer to it as the -(*t*)*a* suffix.

Stems ending in two vowels other than double may take -(*t*)*a* in either variety.

The numerals can take this suffix: *yhtä*, *kahta*, *kolmea*, *neljää*, *viittä*, *kuutta*, *seitsemää*, *kahdeksaa*, *yhdeksää*, *kymmentä*, etc.

2. How to use -(*t*)*a:*

sata kilometriä	100 kilometers
kaksikymmentä	twenty
kolme kuukautta	three months
neljätoista	fourteen

minulla on kaksi veljeä ja yksi sisar
I have two brothers and one sister

nuorempi on kuusi vuotta vanha
the younger is six

kaksi sisarta on naimisissa
the two sisters are married

The above sentences and expressions illustrate one of the uses of the -(*t*)*a* suffix. Note that whenever a noun follows a numeral other than *yksi* (see *yksi sisar* above), and when that numeral appears in its free form, the noun will take the -(*t*)*a* suffix. This is true even for the words for 20, 30, etc., when *kymmenen* must take this suffix, and of the words for 11-19, where *toinen* must take this suffix.

annos kanaa	a portion of chicken
lasi viiniä	a glass of wine
kuppi kahvia	a cup of coffee
paljon rahaa	much money

These expressions illustrate another use of -(*t*)*a*. When a noun follows a word of quantity or a measure, the noun takes the -(*t*)*a* suffix.

hyvää yötä	good night	*kiitoksia*[1]	thanks

In greetings and exclamations of this sort the -(*t*)*a* suffix is used. After the expression 'I wish you' the suffix would appear regularly; in expressions of this kind, however, 'I wish you' is simply omitted, as in English.

haluan lihaa	I want some meat
haluaisin olutta	I'd like some beer
haluaisitteko lihalientä?	would you like some bouillon?

---

[1] You will often hear, however, *kiitos paljon* for *kiitoksia paljon.*

After verbs of wanting or wishing a noun appears with the -(*t*)*a* suffix.

onko teillä huonetta?	have you any rooms?
kaksi sisarta on naimisissa	two sisters are married

Note that the words with -(*t*)*a* are often translated into English by a word in the plural ('room*s*', 'sister*s*') and that the Finnish verb (for instance, *on*) is translated by a plural verb ('are'). Don't let this translation mislead you. The -(*t*)*a* suffix is in the singular in Finnish, and hence the verb, too, must be in the singular.

antakaa minulle vettä	give me some water

Note that the -(*t*)*a* is often translated by using 'some' (or 'any') in English. The reason is that the *essential meaning* of -(*t*)*a* is 'a part or fraction of' or 'a multiple of'. This suffix *never* means 'a whole' or 'a unity'. The name by which this -(*t*)*a* is known is therefore *partitive suffix.*

The partitive suffix is used regularly as stated above, as well as in certain other cases, some of which will be illustrated elsewhere (unit 14, pages 236-7—the negative verbs.)

Comment Two—Verb Stems (Type II)

tilata	to order	*arvata*	to guess
haluta	to want		

Verbs having their free forms in *-ta*, as these three, belong to stem type II, and have a vowel stem and a consonant stem variety. The vowel stem of the words above is *tilaa-* (*tilaan* 'I order'), *arvaa-* (*arvaa* 'he guesses'), *halua-* (*haluamme* 'we want'). The consonant stems end in *-t* (*tilat-*, *arvat-*, *halut-*).

mennä	to go

Verbs having their free forms in *-na*, as the above, belong to stem type II. The vowel stem of *mennä* is *mene-* (*menette* 'you go'), the consonant stem is *men-*.

tulla	to come	*suositella*	to recommend

suosittele- (*suoittelet* 'you recommend'), and their consonant stem is *tul-*, *suositel-*.

Note that the *-ta*, *-na*, *-la* endings are really all the same. Taking *-ta* as the basic form, we can say that after *n*, the *t* of *-ta* is replaced by *n* (hence *-na*), and after *l*, the *t* of *-ta* is replaced by *l* (hence *-la*); you will find verbs ending in *-ra*, belonging to type II, when the *t* of *-ta* is replaced by *r* (hence *-ra*) after an *r*. The *-ta*, as such, occurs after vowels and consonants other than *n*, *l*, *r*, therefore.

The formation of vowel stems and consonant stems in type II from the free form will be discussed in unit 11, page 203.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. What Woul[illegible]

I. This is an exercise on [illegible] of the partitive suffix discussed in this unit. How would you say these sentences in Finnish? Be sure to say them aloud rather than to write them down.

1. Many boys go to school, but only one works.
2. I'd like a glass of milk.
3. I'm looking for a vacant and large room.
4. Please give me a portion of chicken.
5. Would you like a cup of cold coffee?
6. Many thanks, I'll come gladly.
7. I want twenty-seven boxes of cigarettes.
8. I'd like some more meatballs and salad.
9. I want to ask Miss Sara for dinner.

II

Combinations. This exercise is like the one in unit 5, pages 95-6.

1. *Mitä voin tilata veljenne*
2. *Etsin suurta ja kaunista*
3. *Talossa asuu monta*
4. *Toisessa kerroksessa on*
5. *Koska haluatte*

a. *rauhallinen*
b. *odotan*
c. *puolesta*
d. *tilaamme*
e. *neitiä*

6. *Sisareni on kuusi vuotta*
7. *Hän on tervein*
8. *Aijotteko mennä*
9. *Haluan prässäyttää*
10. *Nyt juuri ulkona*
11. *Huoneeni on suuri ja*
12. *Junani lähtee kuuden*
13. *Annos perunoita vihannesten*

f. *kanssa*
g. *maatilaa*
h. *menemme*
i. *housuni*
j. *on*
k. *sisaristani*
l. *vailla*
m. *sataa*
n. *sitten*
o. *ulos*
p. *aikaan*
q. *muuttaa*
r. *saammeko*
s. *nuorempi*
t. *kylpyhuone*

III. The answers to these ten questions will easily be found in the *Basic Sentences* of this unit. Read the questions aloud and give the answers orally. Answer in as complete sentences as you can.

1. *Onko Esplanadinkadulla hyvää ravintolaa?*
2. *Mihin aikaan perheessä syödään aamiaista?*
3. *Onko ravintolan ruokalistassa kanaa?*
4. *Haluaako luutnantti Steward lasin viiniä?*
5. *Mitä on sipulipihvi?*
6. *Onko kuusikymmentä markkaa liian paljon?*
7. *Tahtooko neiti Laakso kahvia ja leivoksia?*
8. *Paljonko kuppi kahvia maksaa?*
9. *Tilaako luutnantti lihapullia vai kanaa?*
10. *Onko oikein mennä ravintolaan päivälliselle kello kahdeksan.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your response to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the Word Study as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

I. A Problem:

En tiedä, onko minun nähtävä Liisa Annankadulla tai Anna Liisankadulla.

II. Mr. Steward is having a conversation with Miss Mikkola at her home.

Herra Steward

Hyvää iltaa, neiti Mikkola.

Neiti Mikkola

Hyvää iltaa! Tervetuloa!

Herra Steward

Kiitos.
Haluaisin kysyä, tulisitteko kanssani toverini maatilalle ensi viikolla.

Neiti Mikkola

Kiitos mielelläni!
Ovatko rouva ja herra Toivonen siellä?

Herra Steward

Kyllä, he ovat olleet siellä jo viisi viikkoa.

Neiti Mikkola

Koska junanne lähtee Helsingistä vai aijotteko olla täällä enempi aikaa.

Herra Steward

Aijon lähteä tänään kello kaksitoista, ja junani saapuu maalle noin kello neljä.

Neiti Mikkola

Kuinka kaukana on toverinne maatila Helsingistä?

Herra Steward

Se on sataviisikymmentä kilometriä täältä.
Tulisitteko kanssani ravintolaan tänä iltana?

Neiti Mikkola

Kyllä, mutta odotan veljeäni.
Hän saapuu tänä iltana Turusta.
Laitan kahvia täällä.
Minulla on myöskin leivoksia.

Herra Steward

Hyvä on.
Mennäänkö kaikki myöhemmin ravintolaan?

Neiti Mikkola

Haluaisin mennä Grand ravintolaan.
Oletteko koskaan olleet siellä?

Herra Steward

Kyllä, olen ollut Grand ravintolassa monta kertaa.

Neiti Mikkola

Niinkö?
Te puhutte hyvin suomea.
Kuinka kauan olette olleet Suomessa?

Herra Steward

Noin kahdeksan kuukautta.

Neiti Mikkola

Pidättekö te Grand hotellista?

Herra Steward

Kyllä, Grand hotellissa ravintola on oikein hyvä ja kaunis.
Myöskin hyvin halpa.
Minulla oli hyvin hauskaa siellä.

Neiti Mikkola

Onko teillä sisaria tai veljiä Yhdysvalloissa?

Herra Steward

On kyllä.
Vanhin veljeni on armeijassa ja sisareni on hammaslääkäri.

Neiti Mikkola

Ovatko he naimisissa?

Herra Steward

Kyllä.
Veljeni vaimo on Suomesta, mutta sisareni ei ole naimisissa.

Neiti Mikkola

Veljeni on täällä.
Herra Steward, tämä on veljeni Väinö.

Herra Steward

Hyvää iltaa.
Hauska tutustua.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Conversation

1. Compare notes with a friend on the food you like and dislike.

2. You're sitting in the diner of a train and order a full meal. Afterwards you ask the waiter about the arrival of the train at the station in Helsinki and the departure of the night train from Helsinki. You ask the waiter to tell you how to find a barber, a tailor, a shoemaker, and a movie in Helsinki. The waiter says he's sorry but he doesn't know Helsinki: he comes from Turku.

3. There's a young lady sitting at the table. She tells you that Helsinki is her home and that she'll be glad to show you what you want to see. You and she exchange information about each other's family background. Then, having run out of conversation, you talk about the weather.

4. It seems that you and the young lady are now better acquainted: You find yourself sitting with her in the Grand Hotel's restaurant drinking a glass of wine. The two of you then order dinner. After the dinner you invite her to go to a movie near the hotel. She comes with you to the station and says goodbye to you rather tenderly.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up if necessary.

Review

Complete Check-Up

Finder List

annos	portion
ensin	first
entäs	how about
Esplanadin	of Esplanad
juomaraha	tip
jälkiruo	dessert
jäätelö	ice cream
kahteen	to two
kala	fish
kana	chicken
katu	street
kuin	as
kuppi	cup
kuuden	of six
laakso	valley
lasi	glass
lasku	bill
leivoksia	some pastries
lihaliemi	bouillon
lihapullia	some meat balls
loppu	the rest *or* end
luutnantti	lieutenant
myöhään	late
neljännes	a quarter
odottaa	to wait
perhe	family
pieni	small
pihvi	beefsteak

puoli	half
pöytä	table
ruokalista	menu
salaatti	salad
sama	same
siellä	there
sipuli	onion
suositella	to recommend
syödään	one eats
-(*t*)*a*	partitive suffix
tarjoilija	waiter
tilata	to order
vailla	to
vihannesten	of vegetables
viini	wine
voisitte	you could
yli	past

UNIT 10

SEEING THE SIGHTS

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Mr. Blake asks Herra Puro about the sights of Helsinki.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
Matti Puro	
ever	*koskaan*
Have you ever been in Helsinki?	*Oletteko koskaan olleet Helsingissä?*
Harry Blake	
Not yet.	*En vielä.*
heard	*kuullut*
I've heard that Helsinki is a beautiful city.	*Olen kuullut että Helsinki on kaunis kaupunki.*
Matti Puro	
head *or* chief	*pää*
white	*valkea*
Helsinki, our capital, is 'the White City of the North!'	*Helsinki, pääkaupunkimme on "Pohjolan Valkea Kaupunki!"*

	Harry Blake
I must see it.	*Minun on nahtävä se.*
can	*voida*
What can I go to see there first?	*Mitä voin ensin mennä katsomaan siellä?*
	Matti Puro
modern	*uudenaikainen*
Our station is modern.	*Asemamme on uudenaikainen.*
Saarinen's	*Saarisen*
art	*taide*
It is the work of Eliel Saarinen.[1]	*Se on Eliel Saarisen taidetta.*
	Harry Blake
known	*tunnettu*
He's well known in America.	*Hän on hyvin tunnettu Amerikassa.*
	Matti Puro
He's been living in the United States for many years.	*Hän on asunut monta vuotta Yhdysvalloissa.*
national	*kansallis-*
theatre	*teatteri*
The National Theatre is to the left of the station.	*Asemasta vasemmalle on Kansallisteatteri.*

---

[1] Born at Rantasalmi in 1873, now at Cranbrook Academy, Saarinen is one of the greatest architects of the world. His style is characterized by an effect of mass and proportion; plain monumentality with little ornamentation; grand originality but unassuming scale of color and form. See also unit 29.

opposite	*vastapäätä*
Atheneum	*Ateneumi*
And opposite that is the Atheneum.	*Ja sitä vastapäätä on Ateneumi.*
Harry Blake	
Diet *or* parliament	*eduskunta*
Where's your great and beautiful Parliament Building?	*Missä on suuri ja kaunis Eduskuntatalonne?*
Matti Puro	
station's	*aseman*
behind	*takana*
It's just behind the station.	*Se on juuri aseman takana.*
Harry Blake	
museum	*museo*
How far is the National Museum from the station?	*Kuinka kaukana on Kansallismuseo asemasta?*
Matti Puro	
It's straight ahead from the Parliament Building.	*Se on suoraan eteenpäin Eduskuntatalosta.*
conservatory	*Konservatorio*
The Conservatory is on the same street.	*Konservatorio on samalla kadulla.*
Harry Blake	
church	*kirkko*
I'd also like to see your churches.	*Haluaisin myöskin nähdä kirkkonne.*

Matti Puro	
There are many churches in the city of Helsinki.	*Helsingin kaupungissa on monta kirkkoa.*
Harry Blake	
Can you recommend a good and inexpensive hotel?	*Voitteko suositella hyvää ja halpaa hotellia?*
Matti Puro	
Of course.	*Tietysti.*
Do you intend to be in town for long?	*Aijotteko olla kauan kaupungissa?*
Harry Blake	
About two or three weeks.	*Noin pari, kolme viikkoa.*
Matti Puro	
at Mikkola's there is	*Mikkolalla on*
Mrs. Mikkola must certainly have vacant rooms.	*Rouva Mikkolalla on varmaan vapaita huoneita.*
Harry Blake	
rent	*vuokra*
of the room	*huoneen*
How much is the room rent a week?	*Paljonko on huoneen vuokra viikossa?*
Matti Puro	
About a hundred marks a week.	*Noin sata markkaa viikossa.*

	Harry Blake
It's not expensive.	*Se ei ole kallis.*
Shall we go for some coffee now?	*Mennäänkö nyt kahville?*
	Matti Puro
Let's go.	*Mennään.*
	Harry Blake
to call	*soittaa*
I must also call my friend.	*Minun täytyy myöskin soittaa toverilleni.*
telephone	*puhelin*
Could you tell me where's a telephone?	*Voitteko sanoa missä on puhelin?*
	Matti Puro
Here's a telephone.	*Täällä on puhelin.*
	Harry Blake
a call	*puhelu*
How much is a call?	*Kuinka paljon puhelu maksaa?*
	Matti Puro
Only fifty pennies.	*Vain viisikymmentä penniä.*
Is your friend in town?	*Onko toverinne kaupungissa?*

	Harry Blake
on the farm	*maatilalla*
No, he's at his farm, just outside town.	*Ei ole, hän on maatilallansa, juuri kuupungin ulkopuolella.*
	Matti Puro
country *or* earth *or* countryside	*maa*
A call to the country costs more.	*Puhelu maalle maksaa enempi.*
	Harry Blake
I could	*voisin*
telegram	*sähkösanoma*
Can I send a telegram?	*Voisinko lähettää sähkösanoman?*
	Matti Puro
You can send a telegram from the station.	*Sähkösanoman voitte lähettää asemalta.*
	Harry Blake
Would you come with me?	*Tulisitteko kanssani?*
	Matti Puro
Of course.	*Tietysti.*
newspaper	*sanomalehti*
I'd like to buy a newspaper at the same time.	*Haluan ostaa sanomalehden samalla.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

Combinations of three consonants:

If you will look once again at your table on page 119 f unit 7, you will see that combinations of three con-onants occur under the columns *m*, *n*, *r*, and *l* only. n the other hand, these combinations are found nly in the rows *p*, *t*, *k*, and *s*. In general, the pronun-iation is quite easy: the first two consonants will close ne syllable, and the third will begin the next one. hey are therefore divided *mp-p*, *rt-t*, *lk-k*, etc. Here re illustrations from among those combinations hich you've already had.

Group ntt: Pronounce this group similarly to the nglish combination *nt t* in *aunt teaches* (as con-rasted with *nt* in *antic*).

RACTICE 45

ecord 2B, beginning

konttori	office	*luutnantti*	lieutenant

Group nkk: Pronounce this group similarly to the nglish combination *nk c* in *pink cap* (as contrasted ith *nk* in *pinker*).

PRACTICE 46

Record 2B, after first spiral

pankki, pankki	bank

Group rkk: Pronounce this group similarly to the English combination *rk c* in *dark cat* (as contrasted with *rk* in *darker*).

PRACTICE 47

Record 2B, after second spiral

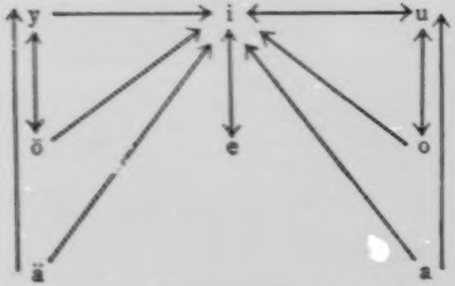
markka	mark	*kirkko*	church

There are also a few words containing these additional combinations: *mp-s*, *rt-s*, *rs-k*, *rs-m;* but they occur rarely and you had as yet no examples containing them.

Vowel Groups

Turn back again to page 159 of unit 9. Observe the Finnish vowel groups. All vowel combinations fall into one of three groups. The first group, double vowels, was discussed at length in the previous unit.

To the second group belong sixteen combinations, illustrated by the following diagram (the arrow points away from the first and to the second vowel of each combination):



Now note these facts about the pronunciation of these sixteen combinations:

Directly after a vowel, *i* is pronounced similarly to, but not quite like, a Finnish *j* (or English *y* of *yes*). The group *ei*, however, is sometimes pronounced almost as an *ee*.

PRACTICE 48

Record 2B, after third spiral

	ei	no	
neiti	miss	*oikein*	right
meillä on	we have	*milloin*	when
äiti	mother	*aina*	always
päivä	day	*tai*	or

Likewise, directly after a vowel, *u* is pronounced similarly to, but not quite like an English *w*.

PRACTICE 49

Record 2B, after fourth spiral

rouva	Mrs.	*kaupunki*	town
lounas	lunch	*kuukausi*	month

All sixteen combinations mentioned form a singl syllable: *päi-vä*, *lou-nas*. Note these additional exam ples:

PRACTICE 50

Record 2B, after fifth spiral

käy	he goes	*vielä*	yet
nuori	young	*yö*	night

The remaining twenty combinations differ inasmuc as the first part of the combination ends one syllabl and the second part begins the next: *kysy-ä* 'to ask *halu-an* 'I want'. Here are some illustrations:

PRACTICE 51

Record 2B, after sixth spiral

kysyä	to ask	*veljeä*	some brothe
henkilöä	some person	*valkea*	white
kilometriä	some kilometer	*museo*	museum
pian	soon	*oluelle*	for some be

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

Comment One—The Plural Marker -i-

The plural marker *-t* was discussed in unit 5, pages 2-3. This marker indicates the plural of a free noun orm. (It is also used to express the plural of the bject relationship, which is marked by *-n* in the ingular, as shown in unit 5, page 93.) Now note hese examples:

sisaria	some sisters	*veljiä*	some brothers
vapaita huoneita	some vacant rooms		
Yhdysvalloissa	in the United States		

In the first three illustrations observe that between he various stems (*sisar-*, etc.) and the *-(t)a* suffix here is an additional element *-i-*; also before the *-ssa* nd after *Yhdysvallo-* there is an *-i-*. This element narks the plural of a noun stem, *before a case suffix.*

Comment Two—The verb suffix -(s)i

nukutte	you are sleeping	*sanon*	I say
nukuitte	you slept	*sanoin*	I said

Note the contrast between each of the word pairs bove. The verbs in the first line are in the present tense (that is, consist of stem plus personal suffix), and the verbs in the second line are in the past tense: they consist of the stem, an element *-i-*, and the personal suffix. This element *-i-* is the marker of the past tense here.

huomaan	I notice	*huomasin*	I noticed

A stem ending in two vowels (such as *huomaa-*) will take *-si-* in the past, and the immediately preceding vowel will drop. Thus, *haluan* 'I want', stem *halua-*, *halusin* 'I wanted'.

Note: the present and the past are the only two simple tenses in Finnish. The personal suffixes are the same for both (see unit 7, pages 122-3), except in the third person singular, where there's no personal suffix in the past tense: *men-i* 'he went', *sano-i* 'he said', etc.

Comment Three—Automatic changes with -i-

1.

tukka	hair	*ostan*	I buy
tukissa	in the hairs	*ostin*	I bought

When a two syllable stem (noun or verb), having a *u* or an *o* in its first syllable (*tuk-ka-*, *os-ta-*) and ending in *-a* is followed by an *-i-* (that is, if a noun, is in the plural, if a verb, is in the past), the *-a* stem vowel disappears. The *u* or *o* of the first syllable may be in a vowel combination; thus in *soittaa* 'to call', stem *soitta-*, *soitin* 'I called'. (Note: the consonant changes *tt* to *t* in the forms of *soittaa* are examples of automatic consonant changes which will be taken up later.)

2.

kala	fish	*ajan*	I'm riding
kaloilta	from (outside) the fishes	*ajoin*	I rode

When a two syllable stem (noun or verb), having a vowel other than *u* or *o* (generally *a*) in its first syllable (*ka-la-*, a-*ja-*) and ending in *-a* is followed by an *-i-*, as in the above illustrations, the *-a* stem vowel is replaced by an *-o* (*kal-o-i-lta*, *aj-o-i-n*).

3.

pöytä	table	*pyydän*	I ask for
pöydille	to the tables	*pyysin*	I asked for

When a two syllable stem (noun or verb) ending in *-ä* is followed by an *-i-*, the *-ä* stem vowel disappears: stem *pöytä-*, *pöyd-i-lle*, stem *pyytä-*, *pyys-i-n*. (Note: the consonant changes *t* to *d* in the forms of *pöytä* and in *pyydän*, and the changes *t* to *s* in the forms [illegible]*tä* are again examples of automatic consona[illegible]s which will be taken up later.)

4.

nimessä	in a name	*lähden*	I leave
nimissä	in names	*lähdin*	I left

A stem vowel *-e* (*nime-*, *lähte-*) disappears before following *-i-* (*nim-i-ssä*, *lähd-i-n*).

5.

lasi	glass	*etsiä*	to seek
laseille	to the glasses	*etsi*	he sought

When a noun stem ends in *-i*, the stem vowel *-i* i replaced by *-e* before the plural suffix *-i-* (*lase-i-lle*) On the other hand, when a verb stem ends in *-i*, th stem vowel *-i* disappears before the past suffix -(*s*)*i* hence, present and past forms of such verbs can no be formally distinguished: *etsi-n* means 'I seek', bu *etsi-i-n* in the past is replaced by *ets-i-n*, meanin 'I sought', both pronounced (and written) *etsin*.

6.

maassa	in the land	*huoneesta*	from the room
maissa	in the lands	*huoneista*	from the room

When *-i-* comes to follow a stem ending in doubl vowels (other than *ii*), one of the double vowels drops the other vowel and the *-i-* fuse into a combinatio (that is, are pronounced in the same syllable: *mais-sa*, *hu-o-neis-ta*).

7.

kauniille	to the beautiful (. . . s)
kauneille	to the beautiful . . . s

When *-i-* comes to follow a stem ending in *-ii* (*kaunis* 'beautiful', vowel stem *kaunii-*), one of two things happens: *ii* + *i* may become either *ii* or *ei;* if the former, the singular and plural can not be distinguished.

8.

työssä	in work	*tuon*	I bring
töissä	in works	*toin*	I brought

The combination *yö* + *i* becomes *öi;* the combination *uo* + *i* becomes *oi*, (and, similarly, *ie* + *i* becomes *ei*. Note that in the diagram on page 178 of this unit there are only three combinations where the arrow points downward, and they are precisely *yö, ie, uo;* when followed by an *-i-*, each loses its first vowel and combines with the *-i-*.)

9.

poika	boy	*aika*	time
pojat	boys	*ajat*	times

When an *-i-* vowel, as a result of the addition of some suffix or another, comes to be between two vowels (*po-i-at, a-i-at*), it is written as *-j-*, and so pronounced.

10.

Three or more syllable stems change in a rather complex fashion before an *-i-*, and since these cases will not occur too frequently, it seems best to memorize each separately as it comes up. Note these two partitive plurals: *isäntiä* 'some landlords', *emäntiä* 'some landladies'.

Comment Four—The suffix -ksi

kuinka te sanotte tämän suomeksi?	how do you say this in Finnish?
tulee vanhaksi	he becomes old

These two sentences illustrate two common uses of the case suffix *-ksi*. The language *in* which something is said or written takes *-ksi: tämä on englanniksi* 'this is in English'. The other frequent use of this suffix is to indicate 'to, into' in such sentences as 'the house burnt *to* ashes', that is, the suffix is attached to the word expressing that *into* which a thing passes or which it becomes; it is often used in this way after the verb *tulla* 'to come, to become'; *hän tuli lapseksi* 'he became a child', *he tulivat lapsiksi* 'they became children'. The suffix *-ksi* has other uses as well. For example, to indicate place in numerical order: *ensiksi* 'in the first place', *toiseksi* 'in the second place', *kolmanneksi* 'in the third place'. There is also a temporal use, meaning 'time in which a thing is to be accomplished': *poika tuli maalle viikoksi* 'the boy came to the farm for a week'; *isä meni kaupunkiin kuukaudeksi* 'my father went to town for a month'. Note that *-ksi* is replaced by *-kse-* before a possessive suffix: *lounaakseni* 'for my lunch'.

Comment Five—Stem of puhelin

This word belongs to the *-n* noun stem group, *-in* sub-group (see unit 8, page 142, and has a vowel stem *puhelime-*, a consonant stem *puhelin-*. For example, *puhelimessa* 'in the telephone', *puhelinta* 'some telephone'.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the Word Study and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. What Would You Say?

I. Put these sentences, illustrating the use of *-i-* and *-(s)i*, into Finnish and say each sentence aloud; do not write anything down. (Note: keep in mind the automatic changes.)

1. I went to all your churches yesterday.
2. We told him that we were in the hotel till two o'clock.

3. They shaved in the bathroom.
4. I had my trousers pressed last week.
5. We came to see how you are.
6. I always ate a good dinner in the restaurants in Helsinki.
7. The telephones are to the left in the hotel.
8. I intended to go to the station, but it was raining.
9. They sent pastries to the soldiers.
10. He asked father for a thousand marks.
11. We waited for you much too long.
12. I recommended to the soldiers a cheaper hotel.
13. We brought you three pairs of socks and a pair of shoes.
14. I lived with my family in the city for ten years.
15. We talked on the telephone with our friends.

II. The following sentences involve the use of *-ksi*. Give the Finnish equivalents speaking each aloud; do not write anything down.

1. We ate onion beefsteak for dinner.
2. I rented beautiful rooms for that month.
3. He left with us to our farm but for only a day.
4. They had to be in the movies by eight o'clock.
5. I had milk and bread for lunch.
6. I ordered a newspaper for six months.
7. I recommended him our chicken and our meat balls for dinner.
8. We become old too soon.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

I. Harry Blake meets Liisa Puro on the street in Helsinki, and he invites her out to lunch and to the theatre.

Harry Blake

Päivää, neiti Puro.

Liisa Puro

Päivää, päivää herra Blake.
Kuinka kauan te olette olleet kaupungissa?

Harry Blake

Vain tämän päivän.

Liisa Puro

Mitä teidän sisarellenne Eevalle kuuluu?

Harry Blake

Kiitos, hyvää vain.
Mitä te teette tänä iltana?
Tulisitteko kanssani teatteriin?

Liisa Puro

Kiitos hyvin mielelläni.

Harry Blake

Tahdotteko mennä.
Kansallisteatteriin?

Liisa Puro

Kyllä, mennään vain.

Harry Blake

Mutta tulisitteko nyt lounaalle kanssani?
Voisimme syödä Kämp ravintolassa.

Liisa Puro

Kämpissä on hyvää ruokaa.
Ja se on aivan tässä.

Harry Blake

Niin on.
Mennäänkö sitten?

II. In the restaurant.

Harry Blake

Tarjoilija!
Pöytä kahdelle, olkaa hyvä.
Neiti Puro, haluatteko lasin viiniä ensin?

Neiti Puro

Kyllä kiitos.

Harry Blake

Kaksi lasia viiniä, olkaa hyvää.
Mitä hyvää teillä on tänään ruokalistassa?

Tarjoilija

Kanaa, sipulipihviä, lihapullia ja kalaa.

Liisa Puro

Saanko minä kanaa vihannesten kanssa.

Harry Blake

Ja minä haluan sipulipihviä ja perunoita.

Tarjoilija

Mitä haluatte jälkiruoaksi?

Liisa Puro

Jäätelöä minulle, olkaa hyvä.

Harry Blake

Minulle vain kahvia.

III. After leaving the restaurant they go sight seeing.

Liisa Puro

Tässä on Eduskuntatalomme.
Oletteko olleet siellä?

Harry Blake

Kyllä, olen ollut siellä.
Se on hyvin kaunis myöskin sisältä.

Liisa Puro

Niin on.
Pidämme hyvin paljon Eduskuntatalostamme.

Harry Blake

Haluaisin käydä kerran Kansallismuseossanne.
Voitteko tulla kanssani

Liisa Puro

Minun täytyy olla työssä kello kaksi.
Ehkä ensi viikolla

Harry Blake

Hyvä on.
Mennään ensi viikolla

Liisa Puro

Ateneumimme ei ole kaukana tästä.
Haluaisitteko nähdä sen?

Harry Blake

Menen käymään siellä nyt.
Ja mihin aikaan syömme päivällistä?

Liisa Puro

Tulen työstä kuudelta ja syömme päivällistä seitsemältä.
Tervetuloa meille päivälliselle.

Harry Blake

Kiitos oikein paljon.
Tulen mielelläni.
Näkemiin kello seitsemän.

Liisa Puro

Näkemiin ja tervetuloa.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Conversation

1. Describe the sights of your hometown as you would to a strange visitor.

2. You have just arrived at a small railroad station in the Finnish country side. You ask the trainman whether you have enough time to step out for a cup of coffee. He assures you that you have plenty of time. You step off and buy a newspaper, then you order a cup of coffee. You ask the waiter if you can send a telegram from the station. He tells you that you can and that you can also telephone. You finally ask him to point out the toilet. Afterwards you pay for the coffee, leave a tip, and return to the train.

3. You ring for the waiter in the hotel in Helsinki where you are registered. When he comes in, you order breakfast. You inquire for the nearest barber; you also want to know where to find a tailor and a shoemaker.

The waiter tells you that you can find them all in the same building, to the right of the National Theater opposite, that is, to the Atheneum. You tell him that they say Helsinki is a beautiful city. The enthusiastic waiter insists on describing it to you in detail.

4. You are in Turku with a Finnish friend of yours. You have plans to look at the churches and other famous buildings of Turku. However, it is raining outside and it is still very cold. You consequently decide to stay at home with a couple of beers. The conversation deals chiefly with the weather in various seasons. Later you tell your friend about the sights he must see when he comes to your hometown in the United States.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up if necessary.

Review

Complete check-up.

Finder List

aseman	of the station
Ateneumi	Atheneum
eduskunta	the Diet *or* parliament
huoneen	of the room
-i-	plural suffix
kansallis-	national
kirkko	church
Konservatorio	conservatory
koskaan	ever
-ksi	to, into
kuullut	heard
maa	land, country *or* countryside
maatilalla	on the farm
Mikkolalla on	Mikkola has
museo	museum
puhelin	telephone
puhelu	a telephone call
pää	head *or* chief

Saarisen	Saarinen's
sanomalehti	newspaper
-(*s*)*i*-	past suffix
soittaa	to call *or* play
sähkösanoma	telegram
taide	art
takana	in the back of *or* behind

teatteri	theatre
tunnettu	known
uudenaikainen	modern
valkea	white
vastapäätä	opposite
voida	can
voisin	I could
vuokra	rent

UNIT 11

SHOPPING

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Herra Cain and Herra Koivisto plan to go shopping and later go to a department store to make their purchases.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
Herra Cain	
shopping	*ostoksilla*
I must do some shopping.	*Minun täytyy käydä ostoksilla.*
I'd like to do all my shopping today,	*Haluaisin tehdä tänään kaikki ostokseni,*
because	*sillä*
week-end	*viikonloppu*
because I'm going to the country for the weekend.	*sillä menen maalle viikonlopuksi.*
Will you come to town with me?	*Tulisitteko kanssani kaupungille?*
Herra Koivisto	
I'll be glad to come.	*Tulen mielelläni.*
What time are you going?	*Mihin aikaan te menette?*

Herra Cain

About a quarter past eleven.	*Noin neljänneksen yli yksitoista.*
to the bank	*pankkiin*
I'm going to the bank first and shopping afterwards.	*Menen ensin pankkiin ja sitten ostoksille.*

Herra Koivisto

Very well.	*Hyvä on.*
by street-car	*raitiovaunulla*
Shall we go by street-car?	*Mennäänkö raitiovaunulla?*

Herra Cain

to walk	*kävellä*
I'd like to walk.	*Haluaisin kävellä.*
strange *or* guest	*vieras*
I'm still quite a stranger here.	*Olen vielä aivan vieras täällä.*
I want to see the city.	*Tahdon nähdä kaupunkia.*

Herra Koivisto

department store	*tavaratalo*
in the heart of the city	*keskikaupungilla*
The bank and the department store are in the heart of the city.	*Pankki ja tavaratalo ovat keskikaupungilla.*

Herra Cain

immediately	*heti*
Could you come with me at once?	*Voitteko tulla kanssani heti?*

Herra Koivisto

Yes, but I'd like to eat some breakfast first.	*Kyllä, mutta haluaisin ensin syödä aamiaista.*

Herra Cain

I'd like some breakfast too.	*Minä myöskin haluaisin aamiaista.*

In the Department Store

Herra Cain

present *or* gift	*lahja*
Toivonen's	*Toivosen*
I'd like to buy a couple of presents for the Toivonen family.	*Haluaisin ostaa pari lahjaa Toivosen perheelle.*

Herra Koivisto

sweets	*makeiset*
Do you want to buy sweets?	*Tahdotteko ostaa makeisia?*
chocolate	*suklaa*
candy	*karamelli*
In this store you can get good chocolates and candy.	*Täältä saa hyvää suklaata ja karamellejä.*

Herra Cain

I'll buy candies for the boy.	*Ostan karamellejä pojalle.*
pipe	*piippu*
tobacco	*tupakka*
A pipe and some tobacco for Mr. Toivonen.	*Piipun ja tupakkaa herra Toivoselle.*
But what can I buy for Mrs. Toivonen?	*Mutta mitä voin ostaa rouva Toivoselle?*

Herra Koivisto

flower	*kukka*
Would you like to send flowers to Mrs. Toivonen?	*Haluaisitteko lähettää kukkia rouva Toivoselle?*
shop *or* store	*kauppa*
block *or* street-corner	*kadunkulma*
The flower shop is four blocks from the department store.	*Kukkakauppa on neljä kadunkulmaa tavaratalosta.*

Herra Cain

Good.	*Hyvä on.*
I'll buy flowers for Mrs. Toivonen.	*Ostan kukkia rouva Toivoselle.*
to pay	*maksaa*
saleslady	*myyjätär*
Shall I pay the saleslady?	*Maksanko laskuni myyjättärelle?*

Herra Koivisto

cashier	*kassa*
No, you pay the cashier.	*Ei, te maksatte kassalle.*

	Herra Cain
I still have to buy socks and shoes.	*Minun täytyy vielä ostaa sukat ja kengät.*
them *or* those	*ne*
Do I get them here?	*Saanko ne täältä?*
	Herra Koivisto
Socks and shoes are on the third floor.	*Kolmannessa kerroksessa on sukkia ja kenkiä.*
by elevator	*hissillä*
Let's take the elevator.	*Mennään hissillä!*
It's to the right.	*Se on oikealla*
	Herra Cain
pharmacy	*apteekki*
I want to go to the pharmacy too.	*Haluan myöskin käydä apteekissa.*
medicine	*lääke*
I want to buy some medicine.	*Tahdon ostaa lääkettä.*
headache	*päänsärky*
My wife has a headache.	*Vaimollani on päänsärky.*
	Herra Koivisto
cough *or* cold	*yskä*
And I have a cold.	*Ja minulla on yskää.*
self	*itse*
I'll buy some cough medicine for myself at the same time.	*Ostan samalla itselleni yskänlääkettä.*

Herra Cain

Is the pharmacy far away?	*Onko apteekki kaukana?*

Herra Koivisto

No.	*Ei ole.*
It's only a couple of blocks from here.	*Se on vain pari kadunkulmaa täältä.*

Herra Cain

soap	*saippua*
razor's	*parranajokoneen*
blade	*terä*
Where can I buy soap and razor-blades?	*Mistä voin ostaa saippuaa ja parranajokoneen teriä?*

Herra Koivisto

drugstore	*rohdoskauppa*
You get those in the drugstore or the pharmacy.	*Niitä saatte rohdoskaupasta tai apteekista.*

Herra Cain

will be closed	*suljetaan*
At what time does the drugstore close?	*Mihin aikaan rohdoskauppa suljetaan?*

Herra Koivisto

to close	*sulkea*
We close all stores in Helsinki at six o'clock.	*Me suljemme kaikki liikkeet Helsingissä kello kuusi.*

	Herra Cain
Really?	*Niinkö?*
It's four o'clock now.	*Kello on nyt neljä.*
Then I still have plenty of time.	*Minulla on sitten vielä paljon aikaa.*

Some of the following expressions are in the form of fill-in-sentences. For example, you may find a sentence *nyt on tammikuu* 'this is January'. You should practice this sentence replacing the word for 'January' by the words for 'February, March,' and so forth.

NAMES OF THE MONTHS

He's going to the country in January.	*Hän menee maalle tammikuussa.*

Replace *tammikuu* by:

February	*helmikuu*
March	*maaliskuu*
April	*huhtikuu*
May	*toukokuu*
June	*kesäkuu*
July	*heinäkuu*
August	*elokuu*
September	*syyskuu*
October	*lokakuu*
November	*marraskuu*
December	*joulukuu*

DAYS OF THE WEEK

Thursday was a day of hard work.	*Torstai oli pitkä työpäivä.*

Replace *torstai* by:

Sunday	*sunnuntai*
Monday	*maanantai*
Tuesday	*tiistai*
Wednesday	*keskiviikko*
Friday	*perjantai*
Saturday	*lauantai*

EXAMINE THESE NUMBERS

Zero times zero is zero.	*Nolla kertaa nolla on nolla.*
The first boy to the left is my brother.	*Ensimäinen poika vasemmalta on veljeni.*

Replace *ensimäinen* by:

second	*toinen*
third	*kolmas*
eleventh	*yhdestoista*

I intend to visit your museum once more.	*Aijon käydä museossanne vielä kerran.*

Replace *kerran* by:

twice	*kaksi kertaa*
three times	*kolme kertaa*

He went to school to-day for the first time.	*Hän oli koulussa tänään ensi kertaa.*
Replace *ensi kertaa* by:	
for the second time	*toista kertaa*
for the third time	*kolmatta kertaa*
It's price is double.	*Sen hinta on kaksinkertainen.*
Replace *kaksinkertainen* by:	
triple	*kolminkertainen*
quadruple	*nelinkertainen*
I want them by twos.	*Haluan ne kaksittain.*
I have half a dozen socks.	*Minulla on puoli tusinaa sukkia.*
Two times two is four.	*Kaksi kertaa kaksi on neljä.*
½ + ¼ = ¾	*Puoli ja neljännes on kolme neljännestä.*
I want three fourths of the bread.	*Tahdon kolme neljättä osaa leivästä.*

EXAMINE THESE DATES

1918	*yhdeksäntoistasataakahdeksantoista*
1637	*kuusitoistasataakolmekymmentäseitsemän*
1944	*yhdeksäntoistasataaneljäkymmentäneljä*
On the 3rd of November, 1921.	*Marraskuun kolmantena päivänä, yhdeksäntoistasataakaksikymmentäyksi.*

or	*Marraskuun 3 p:nä 1921.*
or	*Marraskuun kolmas päivä yhdeksäntoistasataakaksikymmentäyksi.*
or	*Kolmas päivä marraskuuta yhdeksäntoistasataakaksikymmentäyksi.*
On Monday, at 6:15 PM.	*Maanantaina, kello kahdeksantoista, viisitoista.*
or	
On Monday, fifteen minutes past six.	*Maanantaina, viisitoista minuuttia yli kuusi.*
On Sunday, at 1:30 AM.	*Sunnuntaina, kello yksi, kolmekymmentä.*
or	
On Sunday at half past one.	*Sunnuntaina, puoli kaksi yöllä.*
Every Saturday afternoon.	*Joka lauantai-iltapäivä.*
March 15th.	*Maaliskuun viidestoista päivä.*
On July the fourth.	*Heinäkuun neljäntenä päivänä.*
On December sixth.	*Joulukuun kuudentena päivänä.*
At 3:20 AM.	*Kolme, kaksikymmentä.*
or	
Twenty minutes past three.	*Kaksikymmentä minuuttia yli kolme yöllä.*
At 11:40 AM.	*Yksitoista, neljäkymmentä.*
or	
Twenty minutes of twelve.	*Kaksikymmentä minuuttia vaille kaksitoista.*

Thursday morning at 9:15.	*Torstai aamuna kello yhdeksän viisitoista.*
or	
Thursday morning fifteen minutes past nine.	*Torstai aamuna viisitoista minuuttia yli yhdeksän.*
Daily at 10:45.	*Joka päivä kello kymmenen neljäkymmentäviisi.*
or	
Daily a quarter of eleven.	*Joka päivä viisitoista minuuttia vaille yksitoista.*

Hints on Pronunciation

At this stage you should have no trouble with your pronunciation. If you still do, go back over the *Hints* of the previous units, listen more attentively to your Guide (or the records) and imitate as nearly as you possibly can. Pay special attention henceforth to the pronunciation of entire sentences rather than of words in isolation and out of context.

The *Hints on Pronunciation* will hereafter be discontinued, although from time to time you may have an opportunity to *Check Your Pronunciation* on difficult points.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

(Individual Study)

1. Word Study

Comment One—More about numbers

1. Abbreviated forms: those numbers which end in *-si*, namely, *yksi, kaksi, viisi, kuusi,* often occur without the final *-i*, as spoken by many Finns. Thus you are apt to hear, *yks, kaks, viis, kuus*. These shortened forms enter even into combinations: *kakstoista* 'twelve', *viiskymmentä* 'fifty'.

2. Ordinal numbers

ensimäinen	first
toinen	second
kolmas	third

These numbers are known as ordinals. The suffix above *kolmas* is always *-s: kymmenes* 'tenth', *sadas* 'hundredth'. The stem forms are regularly *ensimäise-*, *toise-* (partitive *toista*), *kolmante-* (partitive *kolmatta*), and so forth. *Ensimäinen* and *toinen* have combining forms *yhdes* and *kahdes* respectively: *yhdestoista* 'eleventh', *kahdeskymmenes* 'twentieth'.

3. Multiplication: how to say 'times'.

(*yhden*) *kerran*	once	*kaksi kertaa* *kahdesti*	twice

Note the way to form numbers for multiplication: after 'twice' you add the partitive of *kerta* 'times' after the number you wish: *kaksikymmentäneljä kertaa* 'twenty-four times'; or you may add the suffix *-sti*(') to the stem: *kuudesti* 'six times'. In arithmetic, actual multiplication, you simply say: *kolme kertaa neljä* 'three times four'.

4. Fractions

puoli	half	*neljäsosa*	quarter

Fractions other than 'half' are formed by adding *osa* 'part' to give ordinal number: *kolmasosa* 'third', *kaksi kolmasosaa* 'two thirds'.

Comment Two—Time and dates

1.

kuusitoista, kolmekymmentäviisi	at 4:35 PM

The day in Finland, as in the United States, is divided into twenty-four hours; it is not, however, split into two twelves, AM and PM. Beginning with zero (at midnight), you count through to twelve (at noon), and go on to thirteen (at one PM), fourteen (at two PM), and so on to twenty-three hours and fifty-nine minutes (11:59 PM).

2.

puoli	half	*neljännes*	a quarter

Note how time is given in Finnish in halves and quarters: 'eight thirty' becomes 'half nine': *puoli yhdeksän.* With quarters you must use the words *yli* 'past', and *vailla* 'to': 'quarter past five' is *neljänneksen yli viisi;* 'quarter to eight' is *neljännsksen vailla kahdeksan. Neljännestä vailla kymmenen:* this illustrates another way of saying 'quarter'; in fact, many speakers prefer it to the other.

3.

kaksikymmenntä minuuttia yli kolme	twenty minutes past three
kaksikymmenntä minuuttia vaille kaksitoista	twenty minutes of twelve

These examples illustrate still another way of giving time in Finnish, involving the use of *minuutti* 'minute'.

4. Note this matter of spelling: dates, like '1944', are spelled in one word: *yhdeksäntoistasataaneljäkymmentäneljä*.

5. Note this abbreviation:

marraskuun 3 p:nä 1921	Nov. 3, 1921

P:nä stands for *päivänä* 'on a day'.

Comment Three—The suffix -lla

samalla kadulla	on the same street
ulkopuolella	outside
minulla on	I have (= by me there is)
hän on maatilallansa	he's at his farm
raitiovaunulla	by street car

The case suffix *-lla* indicates chiefly a place where an action takes place; it is therefore translated by various English prepositions, 'on', 'by', 'at', and so on. In the singular, the suffix is added to the vowel stem, in the plural to the stem followed by the usual *-i-*: *kirkko* 'church', stem *kirkko-*, *kirkolla* 'at the church', *kirkkoilla* 'at the churches'; *mies* 'man', vowel stem *miehe-*, *miehellä* 'by the man', *miehillä* 'by the men'.

päivällä	by day	*yöllä*	by night
kesällä	by summer		

Note the use of *-lla* in these expressions of time and that the period is not specified by a preceding number or any other word.

onko hänellä lapsia?	has she any children?
teillä on yksi sisar	you have one sister

Forms of the English verb 'to have' are translated into Finnish by adding *-lla* as above in *häne-llä* 'by him', *tei-llä* 'by you', and using forms of *olla* 'to be': *poika on meillä* 'the boy is with us' (literally, 'by us boy there is').

minä haluan laatikon kahdella markalla	I want the box for two marks

The *-lla* is often used to denote the 'price of something'.

mielelläni	with pleasure, gladly

The suffix appears in this expression as well. *Mieli* among other things, is the word for 'mind, taste, desire', and so the expression literally means 'at my taste, by my desire'.

Comment Four—Some automatic consonant changes

[illegible]pi	cup	*ottaa*	to take
kupit	cups	*otan*	I take
kukka	flower		
kukat	flowers		

Study these three pairs of words, and observe how the *pp* is replaced by *p* in the first, *tt* by *t* in the second, *kk* by *k* in the third. These replacements, as well as a whole series of others given below, are very simply explained. This is what happens.

A series of consonant groups (such as *pp*, *tt*, *kk*) or single consonants are replaced regularly by another series (such as *p*, *t*, *k*), under given circumstances. Suppose we label the first series of consonants (abbreviated C) Ca, and the second series Cb. We must now state the condition under which Cb replaces (abbreviated ~) Ca.

Note how the words in the illustrations above can be divided into syllables: *kup-pi*, *ot-taa*, *kuk-ka:* each syllable following a Ca (namely *-pi*, *-taa*, *-ka*) ends in a vowel (abbreviated V). On the other hand observe *ku-pit*, *o-tan*, *ku-kat:* each syllable following a Cb (namely, *-pit*, *-tan*, *-kat*) ends in a consonant.

We can now state the condition under which Ca ~ Cb. When the syllable following Ca, for whatever reason (due to the shape of a suffix added) comes to end in a consonant instead of a vowel, Ca ~ Cb. This process is covered by the formula CaV ~ CbVC.

You must now learn the various consonants belonging to each series, and see how one series corresponds to the other. This information is summarised in the following table.

		Examples	
Ca ~	Cb	CaV ~	CaVC
pp	*p*	*kuppi*	*kupissa*
tt	*t*	*tyttö*	*tytön*
kk	*k*	*nukkua* *pankki*	*nukuille* *pankilla*
nk	*ng*	*kaupunki*	*kaupungit*
nt	*nn*	*hinta*	*hinnat*
mp	*mm*	*vanhempi*	*vanhemman*
k	nothing	*poika* *nähdä* (stem *näke-*)	*pojat* *näen*
V *h* } + *t*	*V* *h* } + *d*	*pöytä* *pitää* *sanomalehti*	*pöydille* *pidän* *sanomalehdet*
lt	*ll*	*valta*	*valloissa*
rt	*rr*	*parta*	*parran*
V *l* *r* } + *p*	*V* *l* *r* } *v*	*kylpy*	*kylvyt*
p	*v*	....	....
t	*d*	....	....

Exceptions:

1.	*pitkä*	long	*ruokalista*	menu
	pitkät	long . . . s	*ruokalistan*	menu (object)

What happens in these examples might be thus summed up:

$$\begin{matrix} p & & p \\ t & + & t \\ k & & k \\ s & & \end{matrix}$$

is not replaced (that is, *pit-kä*, has a $t + k$, *ruokalis-ta* has an $s + t$; these consonants are not replaced, even when the next syllable ends in a consonant: *-kät*, *-tan*).

2. *poika*	boy	*valta*	power
poikansa	his boy	*valtanne*	your power
kylpy	bath		
kylpymme	our bath		

The formula CaV ~ CbVC is invalid when the syllable following Ca ends in a consonant because of the addition of any of the possessive suffixes (for which see unit 4, pages 72-3).

3. You may find a few other exceptions (for instance, some foreign words), but as a whole you'll find that the formula works throughout.

Comment Five—Verb Stems (Type II Cont.)

(Formation of stems)

1. Consonant stems.

Reread comment two in unit 9 (page 163).

Verbs like *haluta* 'to want', ending in *-ta* in the free form, and having a vowel just before the *-ta* (*-uta* in this case), have a consonant stem form in *-t-: halut-*, *tilat-* (from *tilata* 'to order'), *arvat-* (from arvata 'to guess'). All other verbs of type II ending in *-ta* have an *-s* just before the *-ta*, and have a consonant stem form in *-s-*.

Verbs like *mennä* 'to go', ending in *-na*, have stem forms in *-n-: men-*.

Verbs like *tulla* 'to come', ending in *-la*, have stem forms in *-l-: tul-*.

2. Vowel stems.

The formation of vowel stems from free forms of verbs in type II is impossible to state fully at this stage. The only way for you to know them is to learn each separately. A few observations will help, however.

Verbs like *mennä* have vowel stems in *-ne-: mene-*.

Verbs like *tulla* have vowel stems in *-le-: tule-*.

Verbs in *-ta* usually drop the *-ta* and add an *-a: haluta*. stem *halua-;* but many form their vowel stem in some other way.

Comment Six—Summary

This is what you've learned about Finnish up to this point:

1. Every Finnish noun and verb has a *free form* ('nominative', 'infinitive') and a *stem form*.

2. Stem forms are of two types. Type I includes stems that always end in a vowel; type II has two varieties, one ending in a vowel, the other in a consonant. You must know the stem form of a word before you can add a suffix.

3. A stem may undergo various alterations when a given suffix is added. Such changes depending on the addition of an element to the stem were called *automatic changes*. They are of two kinds, depending whether they involve vowels or consonants. You learned some of each kind, especially with *-i-*, and involving the formula CaV ~ CbVC.

4. You have learned three new case suffixes, the -(*t*)*a* (partitive), the *-lla*, and the *-ksi*, so that you know eight altogether.

5. You can form the plural of both free forms (with *-t*) and case forms (with *-i-*).

6. You can give all persons of a verb in the present and the past (with -(*s*)*i*).

7. You know a good deal about various operations with numbers, can give the time and various dates.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. What Would You Say?

I. Examine the word *Yhdysvalloissa* 'in the United States' (literally, 'inside the United Powers'), and answer the following questions:

a. how do you know, by inspection, that this word is a compound, and what are its component parts?
b. taking the second component of the compound, how many suffixes are there after the stem, and what are they?
c. what automatic consonant change must have taken place in the stem of the second component, and why?
d. what automatic vowel change must have taken place in the stem of the second component and why?
e. what is the free form of the second component?

II. Count by twos to twenty; by threes to thirty; by fours to forty, and so on. Count from a hundred back to zero.

III. Give these expressions in Finnish.

a. Tuesday, January 25th, 1887.
b. Forty-second street.
c. Once a day, every month this winter.
d. The second drugstore straight ahead.
e. For the first time next Wednesday.
f. At 2:15 PM, Monday afternoon.
g. At 9:12 AM, Friday morning.
h. I want half the razor blades next week.
i. The price is five times as much.
j. It's all right once or twice, but not three times.

IV. Give these dates in Finnish:

a. your birthday.
b. today, yesterday, and tomorrow.
c. Independence day.
d. Washington's birthday.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

I. Mr. Mikkola phones his home to say that he won't be in for dinner.

Herra Mikkola

Eeva, onko äitisi kotona?

Eeva

Ei, äiti on ostoksilla.

Herra Mikkola

Mihin aikaan hän tulee kotiin?

Eeva

En tiedä, ehkä noin neljän aikaan.
Tuletko kotiin päivälliselle?

Herra Mikkola

En, syön päivällistä ulkona.

Eeva

Mitä, isä?

Herra Mikkola

Sanoin, että menen ulos päivälliselle.
Toverini Bill Carter, New Yorkista, on täällä.
Menen hänen kanssansa ulos.

Eeva

Hyvä on isä.
Milloin tulet kotiin?

Herra Mikkola

Tulen kotiin yöjunalla.

Eeva

Näkemiin, isä.

II. Bill Carter commissions Harry Blake to do some shopping for them in Helsinki.

Bill Carter

Oletteko koskaan olleet Helsingissä?

Harry Blake

En, mutta menen käymään kaupungissa ensi viikolla.
Entäs te?

Bill Carter

Olen ollut siellä pari kertaa.

Harry Blake

Onko Helsinki hauska kaupunki?

Bill Carter

Oikein hauska.

Harry Blake

Koska menen kaupunkiin ensi viikolla, voinko käydä ostoksilla puolestanne.

Bill Carter

Minulla ei ole parranajokoneen teriä, ja niitä ei saa täältä.

Harry Blake

Hyvä on.
Kuinka paljon te haluatte?

Bill Carter

Tusinan.
Haluaisin myöskin sukkia ja pari paitaa.
Voitteko ostaa ne myöskin minulle?

Harry Blake

Mielelläni.
Sanokaa vain kuinka monta paria sukkia tahdotte.

Bill Carter

Kaikki sukkani ovat rikki.
Ehkä on parasta että ostatte kuusi paria.

Harry Blake

Hyvä.
Tuon teille kaikki mitä tahdotte.

Bill Carter

Kun kerran menette kaupunkiin, suosittelen että käytte samalla Kämp ravintolassa.
Siellä teillä on varmaan paljon hauskaa.
Ja sitten teidän on myöskin nähtävä Kansallismuseo ja Eduskuntatalo.

Harry Blake

Kiitos neuvostanne.
Menen käymään siellä.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Conversation

1. An American soldier inquires from a waiter and a barber where he can go shopping.

2. You discuss with a friend, a doctor, where to buy medicine for a cold. Describe the symptoms.

3. You go into a store to buy tobacco, a pipe, cigarettes and matches for a gift.

4. You go into a department store to buy yourself a couple of shirts, some socks, shorts, handkerchiefs.

5. You go around town with your girl. It's a fine Sunday morning. You go to church. Afterwards you buy her a box of candy, and some flowers. You go to a restaurant, order a Sunday dinner. After lunch you go to a movie, and in the evening you are invited to the girl's folks for supper. She introduces you to her family. You discuss with them cocupations of all sorts. They are interested in your job—and the amount you earn. Before you leave you make a date with the girl for later in the week.

6. Your little son is home from school and throws at you arithmetical exercises. You try and solve them.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Review

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

Finder List

aamuna	in the morning
apteekki	pharmacy
elokuu	August
heinäkuu	July
helmikuu	February
heti	at once *or* immediately
hissi	elevator
huhtikuu	April
itse	self
joka	every
joulukuu	December
kadunkulma	block *or* street-corner
kaksinkertainen	double
kaksittain	by twos
karamelli	candy
kassa	cashier
kauppa	shop *or* store
keskikaupunki	heart of the city
keskiviikko	Wednesday
kesäkuu	June
kolmantena	on the third
kolminkertainen	triple
kukka	flower
kuudentena	on the sixth
kävellä	to walk
lahja	present
lauantai	Saturday
-lla	on, by, at
lokakuu	October
lääke	medicine
maaliskuu	March
maanantai	Monday
maanantaina	on Monday
makeiset	sweets
maksaa	to pay
marraskuu	November
minuutti	minute
myyjätär	saleslady
ne	them *or* those
nelinkertainen	quadruple
neljäntenä	on the fourth
nolla	zero

osa	part
ostos	purchase
pankkiin	to the bank
parranajokoneen	razor's
perjantai	Friday
piippu	pipe
päivänä tai *p:nä*	on the day
päänsärky	headache
raitiovaunu	street-car
rohdoskauppa	drugstore
saippua	soap
sillä	because
suklaa	chocolate
suljetaan	will be closed
sulkea	to close
sunnuntai	Sunday
sunnuntaina	on Sunday
syyskuu	September
tammikuu	January
tavaratalo	department-store
terä	blade
tiistai	Tuesday
Toivosen	Toivonen's
torstai	Thursday
toukokuu	May
tupakka	tobacco
vaille	to *or* of
vieras	strange *or* guest
viikonloppu	week-end
yskä	cold *or* cough

UNIT 12

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN FINNISH?

This section, like the one in unit 6, consists of four parts. Part I is a true-and-false quiz (1-25). Part II is an exercise on numbers, time, and dates in the form of sentences to be completed (26-50); put down the one possible completion in each case, opposite the corresponding number. In part III, the Guide will make a statement (51-60), and each statement will be followed by three questions (a, b, c) to which the statement is the answer: write the right letter opposite the corresponding number of the statement. No. 51 is a practice item. You will hear, '*Huhtikuu*', followed by (a) '*Mikä on neljäs kuukausi?*', (b) '*Mikä on kuudes kuukausi?*', (c) '*Mikä on yhdeksäs kuukausi?*'. Since the statement means 'April', you must put down "a" opposite no. 51, since the first question calls for the 'fourth month', and the second and third call for the 'sixth month' and the 'eleventh month' respectively. Part IV is a brief story, followed by statements true or false in terms of the story (60-70).

After you finish the quiz, the Leader will read out the correct answers for each statement. Check your paper and give your score to the leader. He will figure out the average for your group. If your score is less than the average number of correct answers or less than 80% correct, you need more review of the previous units.

Spend the rest of the time going over the items on which you had difficulty.

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

(Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Finnish for each of the following sentences. Do not write anything down.

I

1. I'm quite a stranger around here.
2. Where's a candy store?
3. The flowers are in the water.
4. Must I walk or can I go by elevator?
5. Can I buy tobacco in a pharmacy?
6. My brother has a headache: is the medicine in the bathroom?
7. I give her a present every Sunday.
8. The train leaves on Wednesday, eleven minutes past five.

II

1. This is the most modern city in Finland.
2. The church is opposite the drugstore.
3. That big, white house is where he lives.
4. How much is the room rent over night?
5. I want to make a call: where's the telephone?
6. When does the telegraph office close?
7. What's the chief newspaper in town?
8. It's just behind the National Theatre.

III

1. The farm is in the valley.
2. I ordered a small glass of wine.
3. Give the girl a tip.
4. I don't like salad.
5. What'll you have for dessert?
6. I want ice cream and coffee.
7. Is chicken cheaper than fish?
8. The menu is on the small table.

IV

1. Guess what mother told me!
2. Certainly he's good.
3. My trousers are ripped; they are at the tailor.
4. I slept very well, thank you.
5. You can't eat and shave at the same time.

6. I noticed that your hair is too long.
7. I'm expecting the laundry at seven o'clock.
8. Three dozen or eighteen pairs.

V

1. Every farm has a steambath.
2. I'm an American lieutenant.
3. He intends to visit us.
4. The room on the third floor is larger, but it isn't free.
5. She'll prepare dinner by six thirty.
6. That doesn't include vegetables.
7. We'll stay here for perhaps a year.
8. This is the end.

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the sentences in Section B, asking various members of the group: *"Kuinka te sanotte suomeksi . . . ?"*

SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

(Individual Study)

Do the following exercises. Read all sentences aloud with correct solutions. Have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

I

In each of the following series one word is obviously out of place. Underline it, and put down the meaning. Be sure that you know what each of the other words means in every series.

1. *Perjantai, tai, keskiviikko, lauantai.*
2. *Makeinen, suklaa, tupakka, karamelli.*
3. *Maatila, maanviljelijä, maa, maaliskuu.*
4. *Kuusi, viis, kaks, yks.*
5. *Paras, sadas, toinen, ensimäinen.*
6. *Rohdoskauppa, tavaratalo, apteekki, hissi.*
7. *Museo, taide, asema, kirkko.*
8. *Sisällä, takana, vastapäätä, puoli.*

9. *Tukka, kenkä, takki, housut.*
10. *Kala, tilata, kana, liha.*

II

Take each Finnish word underlined in the previous exercise. Make up complete and meaningful sentences, each including one of the words. You may add suffixes freely if your sentence requires it. Read all sentences aloud; the Guide or other members of the class will criticise.

11. ....
12. ....
13. ....
14. ....
15. ....
16. ....
17. ....
18. ....
19. ....
19. ....
20. ....

III

Each of the following sentences describes an action happening right now. Imagine that each happened at some time in the past. Change the sentences to fit this new situation.

21. *Lapset alkavat koulunsa syksyllä.*
22. *Hän on pankissa johtajan kanssa.*
23. *Etsittekö te huonetta kaupungista?*
24. *He aikovat muuttaa tänään.*
25. *Nukun aina hyvin huoneessani, sillä se on rauhallinen.*
26. *Te puhutte hyvin suomea myöskin.*
27. *Hän sulkee liikkeensä aina kello juusi.*
28. *Ääntääkö hän englantia paremmin?*
29. *Sinä tiedät, että hän on luutnantti.*
30. *Saavatko he aamiaisen samaan.*

IV

Each of the following sentences tells about something or other happening to a person other than yourself. Imagine that all these things are happening to yourself. How would you change the sentences to describe this?

31. *Hän ajaa partansa joka aamu.*
32. *He lähtevät lauantai aamuna kello kuusi.*

33. *Te näette, että hän tulee kadulla.*
34. *Mitä sinä ostat äidillesi lahjaksi.*
35. *Sotilaat pitävät hyvin paljon elokuvista.*
36. *Sisareni saapuu kaupunkiin kolmeksi päiväksi.*
37. *Hän tekee sen mielellään.*
38. *Me haluamme kahvia lounaaksi.*
39. *Tuomme pyykkimme alas huoneestamme.*
40. *Hän lähettää vaimonsa maalle.*

V

Translate the English words in parentheses and fit them into their respective sentences.

41. (On the large table) *on paljon ruokaa.*
42. (For three marks) *saa kupin kahvia.*
43. *Hän menee* (by train) *kaupunkiin.*
44. *Onko* (he) *piippu?*
45. *Minä olen* (good mood).

SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in Section D. Keep your book closed. If you have a Guide, he will check on your pronunciation and the correctness of your Finnish; if not, other members of your group will criticize.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

Hold a series of conversations from one to two minutes each, on as many of the topics which have been developed in Units 1-12 as you can, combining and varying them as you wish. All members of the group should have a chance to take part. A few suggested topics:

1. Husband and wife look for an apartment.

   (Include: questions about prices, number of rooms, on which floor, what's the landlady like, is food included, how's the bathroom, is there always hot water, how is it located with respect to husband's place of work.)

2. An American dentist goes to see the sights of Helsinki.

(Include: call on friend, a pharmacist, who offers to take him around; discussion of weather; walk around town, passing by various churches, theatres, museums, hotels, the station; comments on each; destination is a famous restaurant, where they order a complete meal.)

3. Two soldiers go shopping.

(Include: argument about time to get started; one has a headache and goes to pharmacy first; meanwhile other goes to bank across the street; then together to department store; buy gifts for girls, their families at home, for themselves; leave store just when it closes.)

4. Tell a joke in Finnish.

5. Laying in supplies.

(Include: going into a store, buying shirts, socks, shorts, handkerchiefs, clothes—pants and coat, pair of shoes.)

6. Trying to find a relative.

(Include: arriving in a Finnish town, asking for directions to a certain street, getting the address, finding a phone and calling; while waiting at the station, reading a newspaper.)

7. Arithmetic.

(Include: son coming home from school and getting dinner; after dinner asks help of daddy in preparing home work; dad trying to take nap, but consents to help in arithmetic; boy gives problems in addition, multiplication, and dad gives answers.)

8. Going on a date.

(Include: calling on girl, meeting family; going to eat and ordering complete meals with drinks; talk over the dinner table about past occupation (now a soldier), love of farm life; making plans for next week in detail for each day; going to a movie finally.)

Book Two

CONTENTS

PART THREE

Unit **Page**

13. **TRAVELLING.** How to pronounce *ensimäinen*. The suffixes *-na*; *-isi-*; *-han* 217

14. **KEEPING WARM.** The negative verb. The suffix *-n* (genitive). How to say 'I, you, he, she, they. *Itse* 'self'. 231

15. **SPORTS AND ENTERTAINMENT.** The suffixes *-tar*; *-n* 'with, by'; *-hxn*, *-seen*. 245

Unit **Page**

16. **PAYING A VISIT.** How to pronounce *attashea* and *radio*. The suffixes *-nut*; *-pa*; *-kin*; *-(ka)an*; *-sti(')*. 260

17. **VISITING A FARM.** How to pronounce *bensiini*. Giving orders: the *-kaa* suffix. The suffixes *-(t)ta(')*, *-(h)xn*. Summary of comments in Units 1-17. 278

18. **REVIEW.** 293

PART FOUR

Unit **Page**

19. **POSTI.** The suffix *-ta(')* or how to build free forms from stems. The suffix *-ma*. 300

20. **PANKISSA.** How to pronounce *sekki*. Pronouns. 315

21. **SAIRAALASSA.** Negative orders. Negative expressions. 330

Unit **Page**

22. **KONTTORISSA.** Spelling of *ä* and *ö*. The suffix *-va*. Ways of expressing future time. 345

23. **ULKOILU.** The suffix *-tta*. Relationship terms. Summary of comments in Units 1-23. 359

24. **REVIEW.** 372

PART FIVE

Unit — Page

25. **SUOMEN HALLITUS.** The suffix -(*t*)*e*-. 377

26. **SUOMEN TEOLLISUUS.** The suffixes -*ne*; -*u*; -*inen*. Place names. 390

27. **KASVATUSJÄRJESTELMÄ.** The suffixes -*tta*-; -*u*-. Variations on a stem. 403

28. **ARMEIJASSA.** The suffixes -*la*; -*ue*('); -*kas*; -*llinen*; -*ton*; -*mus*; -*e*('); -*mo*; -*in*. 415

29. **KIRJALLISUUS JA TAIDE.** Kinship terms. Summary of comments. 428

30. **REVIEW.** 442

VOCABULARIES

A. **FINNISH-ENGLISH** 448

B. **ENGLISH-FINNISH** 468

PART THREE

UNIT 13

TRAVELLING

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

I. Joe Miller is at the information bureau of the station in Helsinki.

Joe Miller

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
vacation	*loma*
I'm going on my summer vacation today.	*Lähden kesälomalle tänään.*
place	*paikka*
I would go	*menisin*
Can you suggest some nice place for me to go?	*Voitteko suositella kaunista paikkaa mihin menisin?*

Neiti

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
long	*pitkä*
How long does your vacation last?	*Kuinka pitkä loma teillä on?*

Joe Miller

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
Two weeks.	*Kaksi viikkoa.*

	Neiti
to suggest	*ehdottaa*
ring	*rengas*
I suggest a tour: Helsinki-Jyväskylä-Kuopio-Oulu-Tampere-Helsinki.	*Ehdotan rengasmatkaa, Helsinki-Jyväskylä-Kuopio-Oulu-Tampere-Helsinki.*
	Joe Miller
Thank you.	*Kiitos.*
you could not	*te ette voisi*
Couldn't you come with me, miss?	*Ettekö te voisi tulla kanssani, neiti?*
	Neiti
ticket	*lippu*
booth *or* store	*myymälä*
The ticket office is to the right.	*Lippumyymälä on oikealle.*
impertinent	*nenäkäs*
You are very impertinent, sir!	*Te olette liian nenäkäs, herra!*
	Joe Miller
Thank you, miss!	*Kiitos paljon, neiti!*
typical	*tyypillinen*
girl	*tyttö*
Are you a typical Finnish girl?	*Oletteko te tyypillinen suomalainen tyttö?*
	Neiti
I said, the ticket office is to the right.	*Sanoin, että lippumyymälä on oikealle.*

Joe Miller

But . . .	*Mutta . . .*

II. Joe, disappointed, but not too much, is now at the ticket office.

Joe Miller

Jyväskylä's	*Jyväskylän*
via	*kautta*
to Oulu	*Ouluun*
back	*takaisin*
I want a round-trip tour ticket from Helsinki via Jyväskylä to Oulu.	*Haluan rengaslipun Helsingistä Jyväskylän kautta Ouluun ja takaisin.*
Ticket-seller	*Lipunmyyjä*
class	*luokka*
What class?	*Missä luokassa?*

Joe Miller

Second class, please.	*Toisessa luokassa, olkaa hyvä.*
The first class is too expensive.	*Ensimäinen luokka on liian kallis.*
How much is the ticket?	*Kuinka paljon lippu maksaa?*
And when does the train leave?	*Ja koska juna lähtee?*

Lipunmyyjä

Three hundred marks.	*Kolmesataa markkaa.*
Your train leaves at 8 P.M.	*Junanne lähtee kello kaksikymmentä.*

	Joe Miller
Thank you.	*Kiitos.*
porter	*kantaja*
Porter!	*Kantaja!*
	Porter
to help	*auttaa*
Can I help you?	*Kuinka voin auttaa teitä?*
	Joe Miller
belongings *or* goods	*tavara*
check-room	*säilytyshuone*
My luggage is in the check-room.	*Matkatavarani ovat säilytyshuoneessa.*
valise *or* bag	*laukku*
I have two suit-cases.	*Minulla on kaksi matkalaukkua.*
I still have an hour's time.	*Minulla on vielä tunti aikaa.*
I go to buy	*käyn ostamassa*
magazine	*kuvalehti*
I'll go buy some magazines and a newspaper,	*Käyn ostamassa kuvalehtiä ja sanomalehden,*
to drink	*juoda*
and I'll also drink a cup of coffee.	*sekä juon samalla kupin kahvia asemaravintolassa.*
number	*numero*
What's your number?	*Mikä on teidän numeronne?*

	Porter
Twenty-three.	*Kaksikymmentäkolme.*
to reserve	*varata*
car	*vaunu*
I'll reserve you a seat in the smoker.	*Varaan teille paikan tupakkavaunussa.*

III. Joe has indeed been fixed up with a nice seat on the train. He is sitting opposite a very pretty Finnish girl.

	Joe Miller
Thank you very much.	*Kiitoksia oikein paljon.*
Here's a tip!	*Tässä on juomarahaa!*
	Porter
Thank you, sir!	*Kiitos, herra!*
	Joe Miller
way *or* going	*meno*
Are you on a trip?	*Oletteko menossa matkalle?*
	Girl
stupid	*tyhmä*
question	*kysymys*
What a stupid question!	*Mikä tyhmä kysymys!*
you can see, can't you?	*näettehän*
to sit	*istua*
You can see I'm sitting on a train, can't you!	*Näettehän että istun junassa!*

	Joe Miller
My name's Joe Miller.	*Nimeni on Joe Miller.*
I'm an American soldier.	*Olen amerikkalainen sotilas.*
boat *or* steamer	*laiva*
to Jyväskylä	*Jyväskylään*
I'm going to travel by boat to Jyväskylä and from there by train to Oulu.	*Olen menossa laivalla Jyväskylään ja sieltä junalla Ouluun.*
	Girl
Really!	*Niinkö!*
Mine is Katri Penttilä.	*Minun on Katri Penttilä.*
certainly	*varmaankin*
We must be on the same tour.	*Varmaankin menemme samalle rengasmatkalle.*
fiancee	*sulhanen*
I'm going to see my fiancee.	*Menen katsomaan sulhastani.*
	Joe Miller
Really!	*Niinkö!*
	Katri
Yes!	*Kyllä!*

IV. Joe Miller is now on the boat with Katri Penttilä.

	Joe Miller
wonderful	*ihana*
Didn't we have a wonderful week in Kuopio?	*Eikö meillä ollut ihana viikko Kuopiossa?*

Katri

sweetheart *or* gold	*kulta*
Yes, sweetheart!	*Oli kultani!*
to be surprised	*hämmästyä*
Won't your family be surprised?	*Perheesi varmaan hämmästyy.*

Joe Miller

surely	*varmasti*
Yes, sure!	*Kyllä varmasti.*
to return	*palata*
I went on a pleasant vacation and I'm returning with a beautiful wife.	*Lähdin hauskalle lomalle ja palaan kauniin vaimon kanssa.*

CHECK YOUR PRONUNCIATION

How to pronounce 'ensimäinen': This word may be pronounced either with a single *m* or with a double *mm* (often so spelled: *ensimmäinen*).

Practice 52

ensimäinen *ensimmäinen*	first

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

Comment One—The Suffix -na

kaukana	far	*ulkona*	outside
takana	behind	*kotona*	at home

These expressions, indicating 'place where', have the element *-na* in common. This *-na* is a case suffix.

hän on luutnanttina armeijassa	he's in the Army as a lieutenant
hän on tarjoilijana ravintolassa	he's in the restaurant as a waiter

The suffix *-na* often denotes the state in which the actor ('lieutenant', 'waiter') of a sentence is, and is best translated by 'as'. Note the expression: *liikemiehenä olen* 'I'm acting in the capacity of (as) a businessman'.

tänä päivänä	today	*maanantaina*	on Monday
tänä iltana	tonight	*sunnuntaina*	on Sunday
huomenna	tomorrow		

These expressions, indicating 'period of time during which something happens', illustrate still another important use of *-na*.

vapaa	free	*vappaana* *vapaina*	as a free . . . as free . . .s
kallis	expensive	*kalliina* *kalleina*	as an expensive . . . as expensive . . .s

Note that this suffix is added in the singular to the vowel stem variety of nouns of type II (*kallis*, vowel stem *kallii-*), and in the plural to the stem followed by *-i-* (*vapa-i-na*, *kalle-i-na*, with appropriate automatic vowel changes here).

Comment Two—The Suffix -isi-

haluan	I want
haluaisin	I'd like

The second word contains, between the vowel stem *halua-* (of the verb *haluta* 'to want') and the first person suffix *-n* the suffix *-isi-*. This verb suffix means roughly 'would', 'should', or simply ''d' (as in 'she'd do it').

antaa	to give	*antaisimme*	we'd give
sulkea	to shut	*sulkisimme*	we'd shut
olla	to be	*olisimme*	we'd be

The *-isi-* suffix is added to the vowel stem variety of verbs of type II. When a stem ends in *-e* (as in *sulke-*, *ole-*) this disappears before the *-isi-* (as also a preceding *-i;* double vowels become single).

lähteä	to start	*lähtisi*	he'd start
mennä	to go	*menisi*	he'd go
auttaa	to help	*auttaisi*	he'd help

In the third person singular no personal suffix follows the *-isi-;* in all other persons you must add the personal verb suffixes (unit 7, pages 122-3).

ottaa	to take	*ottaisin*	I'd take
pitää	to keep	*pitäisin*	I'd keep

Note that the final *-a-*, *-ä-* of the stems *otta-*, *pitä-* remain before *-isi-*. If, however, the *-a-*, *-ä-* of a stem is preceded by another vowel, (especially *-e-*, *-o-*, *-ö-*), the *-a-*, *-ä-* might drop out, and the vowels will fuse with the following *-i*(*si-*) into *-eisi-*, *-oisi-*, *öisi-*.

käydä	to go	*kävisin*	I'd go

Note the irregular stem formation in this word.

Comment Three—The Suffix -han

näettehän	you see, don't you

The suffix *-han* is used for emphasis and affirmation: ***näe-*** 'see' (stem), *näette* 'you see', *näettehän* 'you see, don't you'. Note these examples: ***minullahan on viisi paria sukkia*** 'I've five pairs of socks, don't I?', ***hänhän on*** 'he is, isn't he?', ***pojathan ovat kotona*** 'the boys are at home, aren't they?'.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. What Would You Say?

I. Change the following sentences by adding the suffix *-isi* to the verbs wherever possible; that is, for 'he does,' and so forth, substitute 'he'd do,' and so forth.

1. *Kaikki lapset menevät pohjoiseen ja aikovat olla siellä kesän.*
2. *Ostan kukkia äidilleni ja lähetän ne hänelle tänään.*
3. *Anteeksi, mutta saanko kysyä, jos herra Vainio asuu täällä.*
4. *Kantaja ottaa minun matkalaukkuni säilytyshuoneesta ja annan hänelle juomarahaa.*
5. *Soitan asemalle ja kysyn: "Mihin aikaan juna lähtee Ouluun?"*
6. *Paljon sotilaita syö ravintolassa ja heillä on hauskaa.*
7. *Hän menee katsomaan, jos hän saa kupin kahvia.*
8. *Voitteko suositella hyvää hotellia, sillä menen kaupunkiin.*
9. *Varaan itselleni paikan yöjunassa.*
10. *Tuotteko minun pyykkini tänään, se on huoneessani.*
11. *Haluan ostaa pari lahjaa, sillä menen maalle huomenna.*
12. *Lähden lomalle tänään.*
13. *Kyllä hän tulee, jos hänellä on aikaa.*
14. *Isäni haluaa juoda lasin konjakkia.*
15. *Saavun Ouluun maanantai aamuna.*

II. Translate the English expressions in parentheses and fit them into their respective sentences; speak each complete sentence aloud.

1. *Hän saapuu lomalle* (March fourth).
2. *Veljeni on* (manager of a bank) *Oulussa*.
3. *Isäntä asuu talossansa* (a healthy man).
4. *Aijon käydä Suomessa* (this year).
5. (For a beautiful house) *se ei ole kallis*.
6. *Olen ollut* (a clerk) *kuusi vuotta*.
7. *Haluan olla* (a shoemaker and a barber) *yhtaikaa*.
8. *Hän oli talossa* (a guest) *liian kauan*.
9. (A typical Finnish girl) *hän on kaunis*.
10. (A museum) *se on uudenaikainen*.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your responses to the previous exercise as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

I. Joe and Katri, now married, arrive at the Penttilä home.

Katri

Äiti, isä, oletteko te kotona?

Äiti

Mitä nyt, mitä nyt?
Kotonahan minä olen.
Isäsi tulee pian, hän on vain ulkona.
Missä on Eero?
Ja onko tämä sotilas amerikkalainen?

Katri

Arvatkaahan!
Hän on amerikkalainen
ja myöskin minun mieheni.

Äiti

Aivan varmastiko?
Mutta sinähän lähdit Jyväskylään katsomaan sulhastasi
Odotimme että tulisit Eeron kanssa.

Katri

Mutta äiti, minä pidän Joesta enempi kuin Eerosta.
Minun nimeni on nyt Katri Miller.
Ja Joe on oikein hyvä mies.

Äiti

Terveluloa, Joe.
Haluan että pidät kodistamme.
Kyllä mieheni nyt varmaan hämmästyy.

Joe

Kiitoksia, rouva Penttilä.
Teillä on hyvä ja kaunis tytär.
Pidän hänestä enempi kuin voin sanoa.

Äiti

Minä olen nyt sinun äitisi.
Ja meidän kotimme on myöskin sinun kotisi.
Katri ja sinä saatte asua toisessa kerroksessa.

Joe

Kiitoksia oikein paljon—äiti.
Teillä on niin kaunis koti.
Sanoin jo Katrille, että haluaisin nähdä sen.

(*Mr. Penttilä arrives and hears the big news*)

Isä

Joko nyt olet kotona, tyttöni?
Hauska nähdä sinut terveenä.
Onko tämä sotilas uusi sulhasesi?

Katri

Ei isä, tämä on minun—arvatkaa—uusi mieheni.
Mitä pidät hänestä?

Isä

Siinähän se menee.
Nyt lasi vanhaa, hyvää viiniä kaikille.
Haluan, että olette Suomessa kauan ja asutte meidän kanssamme.

II. Nuori vaimo ostoksilla.

Mies

Kulta, liikkeeni lähettää minut pariksi viikoksi Helsinkiin.

Vaimo

Minä tulen kanssasi.

Mies

Ei tällä kertaa.

Vaimo

Kyllä minä tulen, sillä haluan käydä ostoksilla.

Mies

Mutta kulta, minä voin palata parissa päivässä ja toiseksi, sinähän voit ostaa kaikki mitä haluat tästä kaupungista.

Vaimo

Kiitoksia oikein paljon!
Sitä minä juuri haluan.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences **in the** *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Conversation

1. At a railroad station, you ask where the tickets are sold; the price of the various classes, whether the train carries dining car, the time of departure, etc.
2. You meet a friend at a station, you tell him where you are going, the interesting points of your sightseeing trip. He tells you he is going to see his relatives in the country.
3. You discuss with a friend the things you saw and the people you met on recent trips.
4. On the train you meet a gentleman, and join him in going to the dining room, where you order a meal.
5. When you arrive at your destination, you call a porter because you have lots of baggage. He takes you to a car, and you inquire about the hotels, and your driver takes you there. You book a room, and inquire about various facilities in the hotel.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up if necessary.

Review

Complete Check-up.

Finder List

auttaa	to help
ehdottaa	to suggest
-han	emphatic suffix
hämmästyä	to be surprised
ihana	wonderful
-isi	conditional suffix
istua	to sit

juoda	to drink
Jyväskylän	of Jyväskylä
Jyväskylään	to Jyväskylä
kantaja	porter
kautta	via
kulta	sweetheart *or* gold
kuvalehti	magazine
kysymys	question
käyn ostamassa	I go to buy
laiva	boat *or* steamer
laukku	valise *or* bag
lippu	ticket
lipunmyyjä	ticketseller
loma	vacation
luokka	class
meno	way *or* going
myymälä	booth *or* store
-na	as, etc.
nenäkäs	impertinent
numero	number
Ouluun	to Oulu
paikka	place
palata	to return
pitkä	long
rengas	ring
sulhanen	fiancee
säilytyshuone	check-room
takaisin	back
avara	belongings *or* goods
te ette voisi	you could not
tyhmä	stupid
tyttö	girl
tyypillinen	typical
varata	to reserve
varmaankin	certainly
varmasti	surely
vaunu	car

UNIT 14

KEEPING WARM

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Larry Baker visits the family of Mr. Vuoristo, a hotel owner in Rovaniemi, a small town in northern Finland. He enters just before dinner.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
	Larry Baker
It's plenty cold today!	*Miten kylmä siellä on tänään.*
hard *or* severe	*kova*
cold *or* frost	*pakkanen*
It certainly is a severe cold.	*On varmaan kova pakkanen.*
	Rouva Vuoristo
degree *or* grade	*aste*
About an hour ago it was twenty-one degrees.	*Noin tunti sitten oli kaksikymmentäyksi astetta.*
you have done	*olet tehnyt*
What did you do today?	*Mitä sinä olet tehnyt tänä päivänä?*
	Larry Baker
skiing	*hiihtämässä*
I went skiing.	*Olin hiihtämässä.*

	Kaisu Vuoristo
skiing (conditions)	*hiihtokeli*
Was it good skiing?	*Oliko siellä hyvä hiihtokeli?*
	Larry Baker
snow	*lumi*
The snow was too hard.	*Lumi oli liian kovaa.*
to break	*katkaista*
ski	*suksi*
I broke my good skis.	*Katkaisin hyvät sukseni.*
	Kaisu Vuoristo
you didn't hurt	*et loukannut*
You didn't hurt yourself?	*Etkö loukannut itseäsi?*
	Larry Baker
No, but I'm very cold.	*En, mutta minulla on hyvin kylmä.*
north	*pohjoinen*
How do you keep yourselves warm here in the north?	*Kuinka te pidätte itsenne lämpiminä täällä pohjoisessa?*
	Herra Vuoristo
I'll tell you how I keep myself warm.	*Minä sanon sinulle kuinka minä pidän itseni lämpimänä.*
cognac *or* brandy	*konjakki*
A couple of glasses of cognac help a good deal.	*Pari lasia konjakkia auttaa paljon.*
Would you like to have a small one?	*Haluaisitko ottaa yhden pienen?*

	Larry Baker
What do you have?	*Mitä teillä on?*
	Herra Vuoristo
liquor	*viina*
whiskey	*wiski*
rum	*rommi*
I've brandy, table liquor, whiskey and rum.	*Minulla on konjakkia, pöytäviinaa, wiskiä ja rommia.*
	Larry Baker
Thank you, perhaps I'll drink a glass of brandy.	*Kiitos, ehkä juon lasin konjakkia.*
	Herra Vuoristo
I'll also have a glass.	*Minä myöskin otan lasin sitä.*
	Rouva Vuoristo
again	*taas*
Again?	*Taasko?*
you haven't drunk	*et ole juonut*
enough *or* need	*tarve*
Haven't you drunk enough today?	*Etkö ole jo juonut tarpeeksi tänä päivänä?*
	Herra Vuoristo
I must keep myself warm, mustn't I?	*Minunhan täytyy pitää itseni lämpimänä?*
	Rouva Vuoristo
way *or* habit	*tapa*
Not that way!	*Ei sillä tavalla.*

put on	*pane päälle*
woollen	*villainen*
If you are cold put on woollen underwear.	*Jos sinulla on kylmä, pane päällesi villaiset alushousut.*

Kaisu Vuoristo

take	*ota*
away *or* off	*pois*
foot	*jalka*
Larry, take your ski shoes off your feet.	*Larry, otahan pois hiihtokengät jaloistasi.*

Larry Baker

O.K., I will.	*Otan kyllä.*
to put	*panna*
boot	*saapas*
But I'll put boots on, because I'm going out after dinner.	*Mutta panen saappaat jalkaani, sillä menen ulos päivällisen jälkeen.*

Rouva Vuoristo

Don't just sit there!	*Siinä te vain istutte.*
put	*pankaa*
wood	*puu*
fire-place	*pesä*
Put some more wood in the fireplace.	*Pankaa lisää puita pesään.*

Herra Vuoristo

All right, all right.	*Hyvä on, hyvä on.*

give	*anna*
peace	*rauha*
Leave me alone!	*Anna minun nyt jo olla rauhassa.*
	Larry Baker
I'll help you.	*Minä autan teitä.*
owner	*omistaja*
My father was a hotel owner in America.	*Minun isäni oli hotellinomistaja Amerikassa.*
central heat	*keskuslämmitys*
But we of course had central heating.	*Mutta meillä tietysti oli keskuslämmitys.*
	Kaisu Vuoristo
Larry, where are you going tonight?	*Larry, mihin sinä menet tänä iltana?*
to hope *or* wish	*toivoa*
I hope that you'll stay in; you might catch cold.	*Toivon, että olet sisällä, saat vielä yskää.*
	Larry Baker
I'm going out for a little while.	*Menen ulos vain pieneksi ajaksi.*
to keep warm *or* to heat	*lämmittää*
You can keep me warm when I come back.	*Sinä voit lämmittää minua kun tulen takaisin.*
	Kaisu Vuoristo
to mean	*tarkoittaa*
What do you mean?	*Mitä sinä tarkoitat?*
	Larry Baker
You know what I mean.	*Sinä tiedät mitä tarkoitan.*

Kaisu Vuoristo	
I know.	*Kyllä tiedän.*
south	*etelä*
If you speak like that you may as well leave for the south.	*Voit mennä etelään jos puhut tuolla tavalla.*
to pack	*pakata*
And you can start packing right away.	*Ja saat alkaa pakata heti paikalla.*
Larry Baker	
before than	*ennenkuin*
spring	*kevät*
Not before spring.	*Ei ennenkuin keväällä.*
bride	*morsian*
And perhaps you'll go with me then as my bride.	*Ja ehkä silloin sinä tulet kanssani morsiamenani.*

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

Comment One—The Negative Verb

(Present Tense)

en	not I	*emme*	not we
et	not you (familiar)	*ette*	not you (formal)
ei	not he, she, it	*eivät*	not they

To express negation of an action, certain forms of the verb (which describes the action) are combined with certain forms of the negative verb, the present forms of which appear above for each person in the singular and the plural. Thus, if the action is 'to give' *antaa* (stem *anta-*), the negative forms in the present will be:

en anna(')	I don't give
et anna(')	you don't give
ei anna(')	he (etc.) doesn't give
emme anna(')	we don't give
ette anna(')	you don't give
eivät anna(')	they don't give

Note that in the present negative the verb appears in its vowel stem form (*anta-*) followed by the consonant', as a result of which *Ca* ∼ *Cb* (here, *nt* replaced by *nn*).

Comment Two—The Suffix -n

sen	it's	*pankin*	bank's
tunnin	hour's	*aseman*	station's
minun	my		

In unit 5, page 93, you'll find a discussion of *-n*, the suffix of the object relation. The suffix *-n* to be taken up now, and illustrated by the above examples, is an entirely different suffix. Although identical in form, it differs both in distribution and usage. By 'distribution' we mean here that the suffix of the object relation disappears in the plural; but the *-n* here discussed, as you'll see, occurs in the plural as well. By 'usage' we mean here that the *-n* here discussed doesn't mean 'object relation' at all; the above examples illustrate its true meaning: 'of' or '. . .'s' (genitive).

The suffix *-n*, in the singular, is added to the vowel stem of nouns.

minä haluan savukkeen	I want a cigarette
minä en halua savuketta	I don't want a cigarette

Study carefully these sentences. In the first sentence, the object (*savukkeen*) of the action (*haluan*) bears the suffix *-n* (for a discussion of the object relation and this suffix, see unit 5, page 93. In the second sentence, the object (*savuketta*) of the negative action (*en halua*) bears the suffix *-(t)a* (see unit 9, pages 161-3). In Finnish, the object of a negative action will always have the partitive suffix, no matter what the object of the positive action has as its suffix.

vuosien	of years (partitive plural *vuosia*)
lasien	of glasses (partitive plural *lasia*)
maiden	of lands (partitive plural *maita*)
vapaiden	of the free . . .s (partitive plural *vapaita*)

Formation of the genitive plural seems difficult, but is really quite simple, provided you follow this rule:

first build the partitive plural of the noun in question;[1] if the partitive plural ends in *-i-a*, the genitive plural will end in *-i-en;* if the partitive plural ends in *-i-ta*, the genitive plural will end in *-i-den* (or *-i-tten*, which may be freely substituted).

lasten	of children (partitive singular *lasta*)

The *-ta* of *lasta* (*lapsi* 'child', stem *las-*) is replaced by *-ten;* sometimes therefore, the genitive plural is built on the partitive singular. In general, however, you will be safe if you follow the first rule.

Comment Three—How to Say 'I, You, He, She, They'

minä	I	*me*	we
sinä	you	*te*	you
hän	he, she	*he*	they

You've had these words meaning, 'I, you, he, she, they'. You can add all case suffixes to their appropriate stem forms. You may run across a series of poetic and dialectal forms, which seem to occur quite commonly. Your Guide may use any one or several of these variant forms (such as *ma*, or *mä*, or *mie* for *minä*, etc.). Use whichever ones he prefers.

Note these stem forms:

Free Form	Stem form	Suffixed forms—e.g.
minä	*minu-*	*minua, minun*
me	*mei-*	*meidän, meitä*
sinä	*sinu-*	*sinun, sinua*
te	*tei-*	*teidän, teitä*
hän	*häne-, hän-*	*hänellä, häntä*
he	*hei-*	*heidän, heitä*

The object relation is indicated by a *-t* suffix in singular and plural throughout: *minut* 'me', *heidät* 'them', etc.

Comment Four—Itse

ostan samalla itselleni yskänlääkettä	I'll buy some cough medicine for myself at the same time
minä pidän itseni lämpimänä	I keep myself warm

---

[1] That is, a stem ending in a double vowel (*maa-*), followed by *-i* (*mai-* by automatic change—see unit 10, pages 180-1, no. 6) will take *-ta;* or when the nominative singular ends in two vowels, the ending will be *-ta: konservatorioita*, *museoita;* or when the nominative singular ends in *-t: oluita*. Otherwise the partitive plural will end in *-a* (*-i-a;* when there's a vowel before the *-i-* it is replaced by *-j-*—see unit 10, page 181, no. 9).

Note how the word *itse* 'self' takes the possessive and the case suffixes, just like any other noun: *itseni* 'myself', *itsensä* 'himself', and so on; or *itse-lle-ni*, *itse-ä-si* with the case suffixes preceding. *Itse* is always in the singular. In general, when *itse* comes before a noun it does not take suffixes, but stands as a free form; on the other hand, after a noun it follows with the appropriate suffixes: *itse lapselle* 'to the child itself'—or *lapselle itselleen* (*itsellensä*); *itse lapsille* 'to the children themselves'—or *lapsille itselleen*. Note that *itse*, like *kolme*, has only one stem form (belongs to type I.)

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. What Would You Say?

The free forms in parentheses, to fit in the sentences they are in, require the *-n* suffix.

I.

1. (*Morsian*) *veli on* (*hotellinomistaja*) *poika.*
2. (*Kaikki hyvä koti*) *lapset ovat koulussa.*
3. (*Juna*) *vaunut ovat pitkät.*
4. (*Amerikkalainen sotilas*) *kengät ovat hyvät.*
5. (*Vieras henkilö*) *matkalaukut ovat säilytyshuoneessa.*
6. (*Sulhanen*) *perhe on Amerikassa.*
7. (*Vanha mies*) *päässä ei ole paljon tukkaa.*
8. (*Tunnettu suomalainen sanomalehti*) *nimi on* (*Helsinki*) *Sanomat.*
9. (*Halpa hotelli*) *huoneet ovat suuria ja rauhallisia.*
10. (*Talvi*) *kauniit päivät ovat kylmät.*

II. Change these sentences into negatives.

1. *Hän syö päivällisensä aina kuuden aikaan.*
2. *Talon isäntä vuokraa vapaan huoneen.*
3. *Hänen veljensä menee maalle aina toisessa luokassa.*
4. *Sotilas ostaa kauniin lahjan morsiamellensa.*
5. *Pankinjohtaja asuu kaupungissa kesällä.*
6. *Sisareni saa sukset ensi talveksi.*
7. *Haluan kolme lasia viiniä tänään.*
8. *Näetkö tuon kauniin talon, se on minun.*
9. *Pyytäisittekö häntä meillä käymään.*
10. *Syksyllä sataa joka päivä.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your responses to the previous exercise as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

I

Eeva—Olen kuullut että Liisa on naimisissa Laurin kanssa?
Anna—Laurin kanssako? Eihän?
—Laurihan oli hänen sulhasensa.

II

Tyttö—Mennäänkö ulos torstaina?
Poika—Tietysti! Mutta jos sataa?
Tyttö—Mennään sitten keskiviikkona.

III

Maanviljelijä tulee asemalle vaimonsa kanssa. Hän kysyy lipunmyyjältä:

—Sanokaa, herra, joko 15.10 juna on täällä?
—Kyllä, ja lähtee noin viidessä minuutiss[illegible]
—Ja kuinka pian kello neljän juna saapuu?
—Se ei tule tänään, sillä nyt on sunnuntai.
—Saapuuko tänne henkilöjunia tänään.
—Ei
—Eikä myöskään tavarajunia?
—Ei.
—Tänne ei tule junia nyt?

—Ei.
—Varmasti ei tule junia.
—Tietysti, varmasti ei tule junia.

Maanviljelijä sanoo vaimollensa:
—Sitten Eeva me voimme rauhassa mennä rautatien yli.

IV

A mother goes to a department-store to buy sport equipment for her son.

Äiti

Hyvää päivää, neiti.
Haluan ostaa pojalleni lämpöiset hiihtohousut.
Hänellä on kahden viikon loma ja hän haluaisi käydä hiihtämässä.

Neiti

Meillä on hyviä hiihtohousuja ja takkeja.

Äiti

Ovatko ne hyvin kalliita?

Neiti

Eivät ole.
Te voitte saada hyvät hiihtohousut seitsemälläkymmenelläviidellä markalla.
Mutta meillä on myöskin sadanviidenkymmenen markan hiihtohousuja.

Äiti

Kuinka kalliita.

Neiti

Tehän tiedätte että on parempi ostaa kalliimmat sillä ne ovat niin paljon paremmat.

Äiti

Olette aivan oikeassa, neiti.
Minä otan sadanviidenkymmenen markan housut.
Entäs hiihtotakit?
Minkä hintaisia teillä on?

Neiti

Tämä takki on lämmin ja kaunis.
Se maksaa vain satakahdeksankymmentä markkaa.
Minä pidän, että tämä on paras ostos, minkä voitte tehdä.

Äiti

Hyvä on.
Otan tämän takin.
Se on hyvin kaunis myöskin.

Neiti

Kiitos.
Onko pojallanne jo hiihtokengät?
Meillä on oikein hyviä ja halpoja.

Äiti

Ei ole, mutta hän saa itse ostaa kengät itsellensä.

Neiti

Milloin poikanne aikoo lähteä lomallensa ja aikooko hän käydä hyvin pohjoisessa?

Äiti

Hän lähtee ensi perjantaina Pallastunturille.

Neiti

Niinkö!
Tiedättekö rouva että minä myöskin aijon käydä Pallastunturilla ensi viikolla, tyttötoverini kanssa.

Äiti

Sehän hauskaa!
Varmasti näette poikani siellä.
Hänen nimensä on Jorma Setälä.
Toivon, että teillä on oikein hauska loma ja hyvä hiihtokeli.
Tulisin mielelläni kanssanne mutta olen jo aivan liian vanha.

Neiti

Mitä te puhutte?
Vanhako?
Minun äitini on varmasti vanhempi ja hänkin vielä hiihtää.
Eilen hän juuri osti sukset itsellensä.

Äiti

Kyllä minun nyt täytyy lähteä tästä kotiin.
Hyvästi sitten ja hauskaa matkaa ja hyvää hiihtokeliä.

Neiti

Hyvästi rouva Setälä ja paljon kiitoksia.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Conversation

1. Plan to go out with a friend. The weather is cold. You want to go skiing, the friend wants to walk around. Settle the difference one way or another. Decide where you will meet, whether you will go by street-car or train.

2. Continue your plans for the excursion. Ask your mother to put up hot coffee and cold chicken, some candy and cigarettes. Your friend remarks that these preparations are pointless because there's a restaurant on the way, where you can buy excellent food, warm drinks and also brandy or whiskey.

3. You meet a gentleman in the diner of a train. Discuss the weather with him. It's very cold outside. You ask the waiter to tell you the temperature. You order a meal. While eating, you discuss train accommodations, hotel facilities in the town where you're both going. The gentleman invites you for a drink. You become friends and make plans to spend your vacation together.

4. Invite a girl to a movie. You say the evening is hot and the movie cool. She says the church is cool too but you weren't there Sunday morning. You tell her that your mother had a severe headache and you had to stay with your family. She says she'll go to the movie with you tonight if you'll come to church with her another Sunday.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Review

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

Finder List

anna	give
aste	degree *or* grade
ennenkuin	before
etelä	south
et loukannut	you didn't hurt
et ole juonut	you haven't drunk

hiihtokeli	skiing (condition)
hiihtämässä	skiing
jalka	foot
katkaista	to break
keskuslämmitys	central heat
kevät	spring
konjakki	cognac *or* brandy
kova	hard *or* severe
lumi	snow
lämmittää	to keep warm *or* to heat
morsian	bride
-n	genitive suffix
omistaja	owner
olet tehnyt	you have done
ota	take
pakata	to pack
pakkanen	cold *or* frost
pane päälle	put on
pankaa	put
panna	to put
pesä	fire-place
pohjoinen	north
pois	away *or* off
puu	wood
rauha	peace
rommi	rum
saapas	boat
suksi	ski
taas	again
tapa	way
tarkoittaa	to mean
tarve	enough *or* need
toivoa	to hope *or* wish
viina	liquor
villainen	woollen
wiski	whiskey

UNIT 15

SPORTS AND ENTERTAINMENT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Members of the Tuomi family sit around the breakfast table and discuss sports and entertainment.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
	Isä
hunger	*nälkä*
I'm hungry.	*Minulla on nälkä.*
Are we going to eat breakfast soon?	*Joko pian syödään aamiaista?*
	Äiti
What do you want for breakfast?	*Mitä sinä tahdot aamiaiseksi?*
	Isä
I want a good breakfast, since this is Sunday morning.	*Koska nyt on sunnuntaiaamu, haluan hyvän aamiaisen.*
	Äiti
oatmeal	*kaurapuuro*
egg	*muna*
Do you want oatmeal or eggs?	*Haluatko kaurapuuroa tai munia?*

	Isä
both	*molemmat*
I want both, and coffee too.	*Haluan molempia ja myöskin kahvia.*
	Äiti
ready	*valmis*
Breakfast is ready.	*Aamiainen on valmis.*
for once	*kerrankin*
I hope that for once we'll all eat at the same time.	*Toivon, että kerrankin syömme kaikki yhtaikaa.*
	Isä
up	*ylös*
Tuulikki! Kalervo! Up!	*Tuulikki! Kalervo! Ylös!*
Breakfast is on the table.	*Aamiainen on pöydässä.*
	Tuulikki
All right, Father.	*Hyvä on, isä.*
We'll come right down.	*Tulemme heti alas.*

At the Breakfast Table

	Isä
who	*kuka*
to the races *or* to the contests	*kilpailuihin*
to Munkkiniemi	*Munkkiniemeen*
Who wants to come to the ski races at Munkkiniemi with me?	*Kuka haluaa tulla kanssani hiihtokilpailuihin Munkkiniemeen?*

Kalervo

I'll be glad to come.	*Minä tulen mielelläni.*
fresh	*raitis*
air *or* weather	*ilma*
I want some fresh air.	*Haluan saada raitista ilmaa.*
on foot	*jalkaisin*
Shall we go on foot?	*Mennäänkö jalkaisin?*

Tuulikki

to a concert	*konserttiin*
I'd rather go to a concert.	*Minä menen mieluimmin konserttiin.*
besides	*sitäpaitsi*
dancing	*tanssimaan*
Besides, I'm going to a dance with Sven tonight.	*Sitäpaitsi menen Svenin kanssa tanssimaan tänä iltana.*

Kalervo

Swedish	*ruotsalainen*
officer	*upseeri*
to own	*omistaa*
horse	*hevonen*
Is he that Swedish officer who owns so many horses?	*Onko hän se ruotsalainen upseeri, joka omistaa niin paljon hevosia?*

Tuulikki

Yes.	*On kyllä.*

on his farm	*maatilallaan*
Sweden	*Ruotsi*
dog	*koira*
He has many horses and dogs on his estate in Sweden.	*Hänellä on maatilallaan Ruotsissa monta hevosta ja paljon koiria.*

Kalervo

Russian	*venäläinen*
admirer	*ihailija*
I like him more than that Russian admirer of yours.	*Pidän hänestä enemmän kuin siitä venäläisestä ihailijastasi.*

Äiti

I don't like that Russian either.	*Minä myöskään en pidä tuosta venäläisestä.*
rowing	*soutelemaan*
He always wants to go rowing with you.	*Hän aina tahtoo mennä kanssasi soutelemaan.*

Tuulikki

with him	*hänen kanssaan*
swimming	*uimassa*
last	*viime*
I went swimming with him only once last summer.	*Kävin hänen kanssaan uimassa vain kerran viime kesänä.*

Isä

human being *or* person	*ihminen*
Well, kids, what do you intend to do this afternoon?	*Mutta ihmiset, mitä te aijotte tehdä tänä iltapäivänä.*

what kind	*millainen*
What kind of concert is there today?	*Millainen konsertti siellä on tänään?*

Tuulikki

university	*yliopisto*
auditorium	*juhlasali*
a (certain)	*eräs*
Norwegian	*norjalainen*
singer (woman)	*laulajatar*
There's a Norwegian singer giving a concert in the University Auditorium.	*Yliopiston juhlasalissa on erään norjalaisen laulajattaren konsertti.*

Kalervo

I don't like concerts.	*Minä en pidä konserteista.*
to movies	*elokuviin*
I'd much rather go to the movies.	*Menen paljon mieluimmin elokuviin.*
German	*saksalainen*
film	*filmi*
There's a good German movie at the Kino Palatsi.	*Kino Palatsissa on hyvä saksalainen filmi tänään.*

Äiti

language *or* tongue	*kieli*
You know that I don't understand German.	*Sinä tiedät, etten ymmärrä saksankieltä.*

Kalervo

translation	*käännös*
But there are Finnish titles.	*Mutta siinähän on suomalainen käännös.*

	Isä
to think	*luulla*
to decide	*päättää*
I thought that we men decided to go to the ski races.	*Minä luulin, että me miehet päätimme mennä hiihtokilpailuihin.*
woman	*nainen*
to need	*tarvita*
If you women don't want to come with us, you don't have to.	*Jos te naiset ette halua tulla kanssamme, ei teidän tarvitse.*
by the way	*kesken kaiken*
to the theatre	*teatteriin*
By the way, I bought four tickets to the National Theatre for next Sunday evening.	*Kesken kaiken, minä ostin neljä lippua Kansallisteatteriin ensi sunnuntai-illaksi.*
	Tuulikki
for	*varten*
I hope that we can get one more ticket for Sven.	*Toivon, että voimme saada vielä yhden lipun lisää Sveniä varten.*
	Isä
Sure.	*Varmasti.*
I didn't know	*en tiennyt*
play	*näytelmä*
I didn't know that he likes the theatre.	*En tiennyt, että hän pitää näytelmistä.*
horse races	*kilpa-ajot*
I thought he cared only for horse races.	*Luulin, että hän pitää vain kilpa-ajoista.*

	Tuulikki
truth	*tosi*
It isn't true.	*Se ei ole totta.*
	Kalervo
He also likes my sister.	*Hänhän pitää myöskin sisarestani.*
Where're you going to dance tonight?	*Mihin te menette tanssimaan tänä iltana?*
	Tuulikki
to the Adlon	*Adloniin*
We're going to the Adlon maybe.	*Ehkä menemme Adloniin.*
dance	*tanssi*
There is the best dance band in town.	*Siellä on kaupungin paras tanssiorkesteri.*
	Äiti
those	*nuo*
I don't like those night clubs.	*Minä en pidä noista tanssiravintoloista.*
that you didn't	*ettette* (=*että te ette*)
I hope you won't stay out very late tonight.	*Toivon, ettette ole hyvin myöhään tänä iltana.*

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

Comment One—The Suffix -tar

laulaja	singer	*laulajatar*	singer (woman)
myyjä	salesman	*myyjätär*	saleslady

The suffix *-tar* designates people of feminine sex. Further examples: *tarjoilijatar* 'waitress,' *johtajatar* 'manageress'.

Comment Two—The Suffix -n

jalkaisin	on foot

In addition to the two *-n* suffixes which you've already learned (see unit 14, pages 237-8), there's also a third one, meaning roughly 'with' or 'by', usually with reference to a part of the body. This *-n* suffix is generally added after the stem plus the *-i-* plural sign, as illustrated above, but with a singular meaning. *Jalkaisin* is actually a variant form for *jaloin*, singular *jalan*. Note *omin päin* '(using) your own head (or judgment).' Note also the presence of this same suffix in these words:

hyvin	'very'	(from *hyvä* 'good')
kuin	'as'	(from *ku-*)
liian	'too'	(from *liika* 'too much')
niin, näin	'so'	
pian	'soon'	(from *pika* 'shortly, soon')
sadoin	'by hundreds'	(from *sata* 'hundred')
takaisin	'back'	(from *takaise-*)
yksin	'alone'	(from *yksi* 'one')

Comment Three—The Suffixes -hxn, -seen

maahan	to the land	*työhön*	to work
maihin	to the lands	*töihin*	to works

The above stems bear the suffix we write *-hxn;* note that both *maa-* and *työ-* are single syllable stems. The letter *-x-* in *-hxn* stands for any vowel; the vowel which will actually occur is identical with the immediately preceding vowel (or last vowel of the single syllable stem), that is: *-a* in *maa-* (hence *-han*), *-ö* in *työ-* (hence *-hön*). In the plural, the suffix vowel *-x-* will always be *-i-* (*-hin*), for the immediately preceding vowel will always be the *-i-* plural suffix. (For the regular automatic changes in *maihin* and *töihin*, see unit 10, pages 179-81.

vapaaseen	to the free	*kevääseen*	to spring
vapaisiin *vapaihin*	to the free . . .s	*keväisiin* *keväihin*	to springs

The above stems bear the suffix *-seen* in the singular; note that both *vapaa-* and *kevää-* are two-syllable stems ending in a long vowel (*-aa-* and *-ää-* in the above examples). Two or more syllable stems ending in a long vowel will add *-seen* to the stem in the singular in general, though you may hear your Guide add simply *-hxn: vapaahan, keväähän*. In the plural, the suffix may be either *-siin* or *-hin*, added to the stem plus *-i-*.

kalaan	to the fish	*kaupunkiin*	to the town
kaloihin	to the fishes	*kaupunkeihin*	to the towns
parempaan	to better		
parempiin	to better . . .s		

Two or more syllable stems other than those discussed above simply take *-n* in the singular, but double their preceding stem vowels (thus *kala-* becomes *kalaa-*, *kaupunki-* becomes *kaupunkii-*, *parempa-* from *parempi* becomes *parempaa-*). In the plural, the stem plus *-i-* takes *-hin*, but *-ihin* is contracted almost always to *-iin*, as illustrated above.

The general meaning of the above case suffixes is 'motion to'—*mennä kouluun* 'to go to school.' Sometimes you must translate as 'till, until, to'—*vieläkö talveen on pitkä aika?* 'is it long till winter?'

hänen kanssaan	with him	*maatilallaan*	on his farm

According to what you've learned about the possessive suffix *-nsa* (unit 4, page 73), the above expressions should be *hänen kanssansa* and *maatilallansa*, as they indeed may be. On the other hand, you may often hear your Guide substitute *-n* for *-nsa*. This will happen only when there is a case suffix just preceding, and this case suffix ends in a single vowel. This single vowel then doubles before the *-n: kirkko* 'church', *kirkkonsa* 'his church' (no case suffix here); *kirkkoa* (partitive), *kirkkoansa* or *kirkkoaan* (but *kalaa*, partitive of *kala* 'fish' could only be *kalaansa*, because of the already double vowel).

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. What Would You Say?

I. The brief story that follows is in the present, and is told in the first person. Imagine that it happened to you in the past and retell it. Do not write anything down.

Tänä aamuna alkaa kesälomani ja lähden matkalle. Menen asemalle raitiovaunulla. Ostan kolmannen luokan lipun Kuopioon, ja vien matkalaukkuni junaan. Koska minulla on vielä paljon aikaa, käyn ostamassa makeisia ja sanomalehtiä. Palaan takaisin junaan ja istun vastapäätä kaunista nuorta tyttöä. Puhun hänen kanssaan, ja meistä tulee hyvät toverit. Pyydän häntä kanssani lounaalle ravintolavaunuun. Tilaan ensiksi viiniä meille molemmille.

II. The fifteen sentences that follow contain free forms in parentheses. To make these fit into the sentences as a whole, you must add the required suffixes. In some cases you must build both singular and plural forms.

1. (*Millainen työ*) *te aijotte mennä?*
2. *Ostin liput* (*kaikki*) *kaupunginorkesterin* (*kevätkonsertti*).
3. *Menen tänä iltana morsiameni kanssa* (*norjalainen ravintola*) *syömään.*
4. (*Hyvä päivällinen*) *kuuluu jälkiruoka ja kahvi.*
5. *Eilen illalla tansseissa tutustuin* (*hauska ruotsalainen upseeri*).
6. *Menemmekö* (*molemmat museot*) *tänään?*
7. (*Paras hotelli*) *on kaksi kadunkulmaa tästä.*
8. (*Kaunis kesäyö*) *on vielä pitkä aika.*
9. *Tulisitteko kanssani yliopiston* (*juhlasali tanssi*)*?*
10. *Lähdemme* (*raitis ilma*) *kävelemään.*
11. *Haluan mennä sunnuntaina* (*venäläinen kirkko*).
12. *Sain uuden puhelimen* (*tämä huone*) *eilen.*
13. *Poikani lähti viime viikolla* (*Yhdysvallat*).
14. *Haluaisitteko mennä työhön* (*asetehdas*)*?*
15. (*Toinen kerros*) *voitte mennä hissillä.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

I

Väinö—Minulla on kova hammassärky.

Eero—Minä menisin hammaslääkäriin ja antaisin ottaa sen pois jos se olisi minun hampaani.

Väinö—Minä myöskin, jos se olisi sinun.

II Tansseissa

Poika—Toivon, että tanssit kanssani tänä iltana.

Tyttö—Varmasti, ethän luule, että tulin tänne, että minulla olisi hauskaa.

III

Pieni Eeva—Äiti, näetkö tuota miestä? Hänellä ei ole tukkaa!

Äiti—Sh, lapseni, hän voi kuulla.

Pieni Eeva—Eikö hän tiedä sitä sitten?

IV Ravintolassa

Tarjoilija—Toinko minä jo teille ruokalistan?

Herra—Jos te toitte, minä varmasti söin sen.

V Junassa

Herra A—Oletteko koskaan olleet Tampereella?

Herra B—Kyllä, käyn siellä noin pari kertaa vuodessa.

Herra A—Mitä hotellia suosittelisitte minulle.

Herra B—Suosittelen hotelli Laaksoa.

Herra A—Asutteko te itse aina siellä kun käytte Tampereella?

Herra B—En. Mutta olen asunut kaikissa toisissa.

VI

Maanviljelijä meni kaupunkiin ja vuokrasi huoneen

hotellista. Samalla hän kysyi hotellinomistajalta mihin aikaan hotellissa syödään.

"Aamiainen on kello seitsämästä yhteentoista, lounas kello kahdestatoista kolmeen ja päivällinen kello kuudesta kahdeksaan."

"Mutta mihin aikaan minä sitten voin mennä kaupungille?"

VII

Tuulikki

Tulen juuri hiihtokilpailuista.

Kyllä Munkkiniemessä oli paljon ihmisiä, ja hiihtokeli oli paras mitä meillä on ollut tänä talvena.

Kalervo

Nyt sinä sen sanot.

Tahdoin tulla kanssasi ki[illegible].

Olen ollut kotona kello kolmes[illegible].

Tuulikki

Luuletko, että noin vain annan sinun tulla kanssamme.

Svenillä on nuori hevonen ja kun me olemme yhdessä sinä olet liikaa.

Kalervo

Vai niin.

Olit siellä Svenin kanssa.

Kyllä minä yskän ymmärrän.

Tahdot olla vain kahden hänen kanssaan.

Tuulikki

Niin tahdon.

Ethän sinä anna minun tulla sinun ja Eevan kanssa ku te menette ulos.

Olen ollut kotona monta sunnuntai-iltaa.

Kalervo

Niin mutta Eeva on morsiameni ja tiedät aivan hyvi että menemme ensi kuussa naimisiin.

Tuulikki

Sitten teillä on paljon aikaa olla yhdessä.

Ja luuletko sinä, että minä en voi mennä naimisiin Svenin kanssa jos vain tahdon.

Kalervo

Jos sinä tahdot, tarkoitat, jos Sven tahtoo.

Tietysti, menet mielelläsi, jos hän vain pyytää sinua.

Tuulikki

Pyytää minua!
Hän jo pyysi pari kertaa.
Mutta minä myöskin voin sanoa ei.
Äiti sanoo että olen liian nuori.
Olenhan vain kahdeksantoista.

Kalervo

Koska hän pyysi?
Sanohan!

Tuulikki

Kuka haluaa tietää?
Sinäkö?
Ja mitä sinä sitten ymmärrät naimisiin menosta.

Kalervo

Minä tietysti!
Sillä jos menet Svenin kanssa naimisiin odotan, että hän antaa minulle hevosen.

Tuulikki

Ei kyllä anna, jos minä voin sen auttaa.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Conversation

1. You're on the train with your wife, going towards Helsinki. You're sitting in the diner. You're both hungry and order a breakfast including cereal, milk, eggs, coffee and bread. Your wife's brother is a Swedish ski champion. He's in the races at Munkiniemi later that day. You don't like the idea of going out there, and make some derogatory remarks about him. Your wife insists, however, and points out that a walk in the fresh air would do you

good. You feebly protest that you'd prefer to go to a concert, but it's no use. You ask your wife for the newspaper, and settle back to read quietly for the rest of the trip.

2. Tell a joke in Finnish.
3. You go rowing with a fellow soldier on a picnic. You're both interested in horses and dogs, and while you're munching the food you brought with you and having a smoke, you talk about the horses and dogs at home on your farms.
4. Talk about American sports, comparing them with German, Swedish, Finnish and Norwegian sports.
5. Discuss recent concerts you've heard, mentioning the nationalities of the performers.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Review

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences.*

Finder List

Adlon	Adlon
en tiennyt	I didn't know
eräs	a (certain)
ettette	that you didn't
filmi	film
hevonen	horse
ihailija	admirer
ihminen	human being *or* person
ilma	air *or* weather
juhlasali	auditorium
kaurapuuro	oatmeal
kerrankin	for once
kesken kaiken	by the way
kieli	language *or* tongue
kilpa-ajot	horse races
kilpailu	race *or* contest
koira	dog

konsertti	concert
kuka	who
käännös	translation
laulaja	singer
luulla	to think *or* to believe
millainen	what kind
molemmat	both
muna	egg
Munkkiniemi	Munkkiniemi
nainen	woman
norjalainen	Norwegian
nuo	those
nälkä	hunger
näytelmä	play
omistaa	to own
päättää	to decide
raitis	fresh
ruotsalainen	Swedish
Ruotsi	Sweden
saksalainen	German
sitäpaitsi	besides
soutelemaan	rowing
tanssi	dance
tanssimaan	dancing
tarvita	to need
teatteriin	to the theatre
tosi	truth
uimassa	swimming
upseeri	officer
valmis	ready
varten	for
venäläinen	Russian
viime	last
yliopisto	university
ylös	up

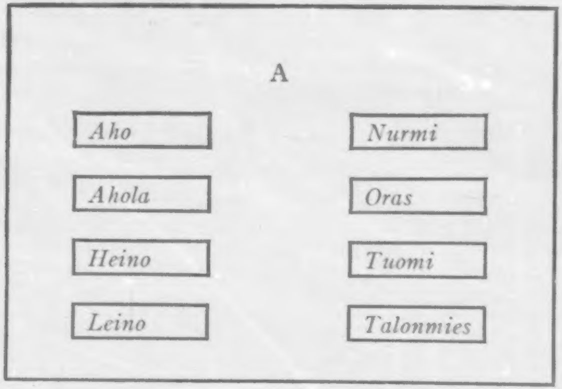
UNIT 16

PAYING A VISIT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

I drop in unexpectedly on my friend in his apartment at Helsinki; I haven't seen him in years.

I


A
Aho
Ahola
Heino
Leino
Nurmi
Oras
Tuomi
Talonmies

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
	Minä
probably *or* perhaps	*kai*
janitor	*talonmies*
consequently	*siis*
"*Talonmies.*" I guess that's the man I want.	*"Talonmies." Tässä siis asuu talonmies.*
I'll ask indeed	*kysynpä*
I'll ask him first.	*Kysynpä häneltä ensin.*
	Talonmies
What do you want?	*Mitä te tahdotte?*
	Minä
Master of Arts	*filosofian maisteri*
(M. A.)	*(Fil. Maist.)*
I'm looking for Mr. Korpi.	*Etsin Filosofian maisteri Korpea.*
	Talonmies
teacher	*opettaja*
You mean Korpi the teacher?	*Tarkoitatte opettaja Korpea?*
	Minä
Right.	*Aivan.*
	Talonmies
apartment	*huoneusto*
stairway *or* stair	*porras*
He has an apartment in the D entrance.	*Hänellä on huoneusto D-portaassa.*

On the seventh floor.	*Seitsemännessä keeroksessa.*
door	*ovi*
Door number twenty-six.	*Oven numero on kaksikymmentäkuusi.*
	Minä
Thank you	*Kiitos.*
trouble *or* bother	*vaiva*
Here's something for your trouble.	*Tässä vaivastanne.*
	Talonmies
Thanks very much.	*Kiitoksia paljon.*
to mutter	*mutista*
	(*Mutisee:*)
straightforward *or* honest	*reilu*
He's a regular guy.	*Reilu mies.*
	II
	Minä
Here's the elevator.	*Tässä on hissi.*
to be hoped for	*toivottavasti*
to work	*toimia*
I hope it works!	*Toivottavasti se toimii!*

oh	*voi*
darn it! *or* nuisance	*pahus*
Darn it!	*Voi pahus!*
Now I must walk.	*Nyt minun täytyy kävellä.*

III

Minä

plate *or* sign	*kilpi*
even	*edes*
They don't even have numbers on the doors, only name-plates.	*Eihän täällä ole edes numeroita ovissa, vain nimikilvet.*
these	*nämä*
lights	*valotkin*
bad	*huono*
And these lights are so bad that you can't even see here.	*Ja nämä valotkin ovat niin huonot, että ei täällä edes näe.*
I guess I'll ring	*soitanpahan*
I think I'll ring this doorbell.	*Soitanpahan tätä ovikelloa.*

Nainen

What do you want?	*Mitä te haluatte?*
If—.	*Jos—.*

Minä

allow *or* grant	*suokaa*
Excuse me!	*Suokaa anteeksi.*
I—.	*Minä—.*

	Nainen
matter *or* thing	*asia*
absolutely *or* positively	*kerrassaan*
nothing	*mitään*
If you're a salesman, I don't care for a thing.	*Jos te olette asiamies, en halua kerrassaan mitään.*
	Minä
neighbor	*naapuri*
I guess I must ask the neighbor.	*Minun kai täytyy kysyä tästä naapurista.*
	Herra
like this *or* so *or* thus	*näin*
I'm glad you came so soon.	*Hyvä että tulitte näin pian.*
to cook	*keittää*
gas (stove)	*kaasu*
is repaired	*on korjattu*
We can't cook until our (gas) stove is repaired.	*Emme voi keittää ennenkuin kaasumme on korjattu.*
	Minä
make a mistake *or* be mistaken	*erehtyä*
Excuse me, you are mistaken.	*Anteeksi, te erehdytte.*
I'm looking for Mr. Korpi and—.	*Etsin maisteri Korpea ja—.*
	Herra
stove	*hella*
even his	*hänenkin*
Is his gas stove also out of order?	*Onko hänenkin kaasuhellansa rikki?*

	Minä
It is not.	*Ei ole.*
to try	*koettaa*
I am trying to say I'm looking for Mr. Korpi's apartment.	*Koetin sanoa, että etsin maisteri Korven huoneustoa.*
	Herra
well	*no*
you didn't say	*te ette sanoneet*
Well, why didn't you say so?	*No miksi te ette heti sitä sanoneet?*
He lives right opposite.	*Hän asuu tuossa vastapäätä.*
	Minä
Thank you very much.	*Kiitos oikein paljon.*
heaven	*taivas*
as *or* when	*kun*
Heavens, people are stupid.	*Voi taivas kun ihmiset ovat tyhmiä.*
I believe this is it.	*Tamä kai se nyt sitten on.*
	Hän
for goodness sake	*hyvänen aika*
For goodness sake!	*Hyvänen aika.*
When did you arrive?	*Milloin sinä saavuit?*
Welcome, welcome!	*Tervetuloa, tervetuloa!*
	Minä
friend	*ystävä*
drink	*ryyppy*
Can you give your old friend a drink?	*Voitko antaa vanhalle ystävällesi ryypyn?*

	Hän
Of course, what do you want?	*Tietysti, mitä tahdot?*
	Minä
Whiskey.	*Wiskiä.*
honestly	*totisesti*
And I honestly need a drink.	*Ja totisesti tarvitsen ryypyn.*
	Hän
to trouble	*vaivata*
What's the matter with you?	*Mikä sinua vaivaa?*
	Minä
I tell you, I had to look for this place!	*Kyllä minä sen sanon että sain etsiä tätä paikka*
	Hän
Where have you been all these years?	*Missä sinä olet ollut kaikki nämä vuodet?*
	Minä
Germany	*Saksa*
I just returned from Germany.	*Palasin juuri Saksasta.*
consulate	*konsulaatti*
I worked in the consulate.	*Olin työssä konsulaatissa.*
	Hän
Really!	*Niinkö!*
What did you do there?	*Mitä sinä teit siellä?*

	Minä
attaché	*attashea*
I was military attaché.	*Olin sotilasattashea.*
	Hän
consul	*konsuli*
Who was consul?	*Kuka oli konsulina?*
ice	*jää*
Do you want ice in your drink?	*Haluatko jäätä juomaasi?*
	Minä
No, thanks	*Ei kiitos.*
to be moved	*muuttua*
We changed consuls every third month.	*Meillä muuttuivat konsulit joka kolmas kuukausi.*
was moved *or* was transferred	*siirrettiin*
legation *or* embassy	*lähetystö*
ambassador	*suurlähettiläs*
Japan	*Japani*
Our consul was transferred to the embassy when the Ambassador went to Japan.	*Konsulimme siirrettiin Lähetystöön kun Suurlähettiläämme meni Japaniin.*
Are you still a teacher?	*Oletko sinä vielä opettajana?*
	Hän
high school	*lyseo*
Yes, in the high school	*Kyllä, lyseossa.*

	Minä
to teach	*opettaa*
What do you teach?	*Mitä sinä opetat?*
	Hän
Languages.	*Kieliä.*
to listen to	*kuunnella*
radio	*radio*
Do you want to listen to the radio?	*Haluatko kuunnella radiota?*
piece of news	*uutinen*
The news should come soon.	*Uutisten pitäisi tulla pian.*
	Minä
Good.	*Hyvä on.*
I haven't heard the news for a long time.	*En ole kuullut uutisia pitkään aikaan.*
	Hän
There are cigarettes and matches on the table.	*Pöydällä on savukkeita ja tulitikkuja.*
to smoke	*polttaa*
If you smoke a pipe, over there's some tobacco.	*Jos poltat piippua, tuolla on piipputupakkaa.*
	Minä
I don't smoke.	*En polta.*
My wife doesn't like it.	*Vaimoni ei pidä siitä.*

Hän

Are you married?	*Oletko naimisissa?*
who	*ken*
To whom?	*Kenen kanssa?*

Minä

French	*ranskalainen*
A French girl, but she speaks Finnish well.	*Ranskalaisen tytön, mutta hän puhuu suomea hyvin.*
France	*Ranska*
Her father was in the French embassy, here in Helsinki, for many years.	*Hänen isänsä oli Ranskan Lähetystössä, täällä Helsingissä, monta vuotta.*

Check Your Pronunciation

How to pronounce the word spelled 'attashea': Note the sound spelled *sh* in the word *attashea*. This is a foreign word to the Finn, and the *sh* represents a sound foreign to him. Educated speakers will know this sound as similar to the English *sh* of *she;* but less educated Guides might substitute an *s* as in *sea*. Always follow your Guide and

Practice 52

attashea	attaché

How to pronounce the word spelled 'radio': Note the sound spelled *a* in the word *radio*. This is also a foreign word to the Finn. Educated speakers will pronounce *a* double, as if it were written *raadio*, but others might say the short, single *a*. Follow your Guide and

Practice 53

radio	radio

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

Comment one—The Suffix -nut

sinä olet tehnyt	you've done
et ole juonut	you haven't drunk

Note the suffix *-nut* added to the stem form of *juoda* 'to drink' (*juo-*), and note that it is added to the consonant stem of verbs belonging to type II, as *tehdä* 'to do' (*tek-*, with automatic replacement of *k* by *h* before *n*, *t*, *d*, and *k*).

ollut	been	*loukannut*	hurt

Recall that *l* + *n* is replaced by *ll*, *t* + *n* by *nn*. The above examples illustrate this: *ol* + *nut* becomes *ollut* (from *olla* 'to be'), *loukat* + *nut* becomes *loukannut* (from *loukata* 'to hurt').

olen sanonut	I've said

When a verb with the suffix *-nut* is accompanied by a form of *olla* 'to be' in the present tense, the meaning is 'I've done (this or that)'.

meillä ei ollut	we didn't have
etkö loukannut itseäsi?	didn't you hurt yourself?

These sentences illustrate the negation of an action in the past. The forms of the negative verb are the same as in the present (*en*, and so forth; see unit 14, pages 236-7), but the verb describing the action has the suffix *-nut*.

ettekö te voisi tulla kanssani?	couldn't you come with me?

This sentence indicates the way to say 'wouldn't' or 'couldn't.' The forms of the negative verb are again the same as in the present, but the verb describing the action has the suffix *-isi* (see unit 13, pages 224-5).

et ole juonut	you haven't drunk

Compound tenses of this type are expressed in the negative this way: present forms of the negative verb are followed by *ole*, which is followed by the verb of action, which bears the *-nut* suffix, with the meaning 'haven't done,' etc.

To say 'wouldn't have' or 'couldn't have', you use the same forms as above, but add *-isi* to *ole*. Thus, *et olisi juonut* 'you wouldn't have drunk.'

tulin syöneeksi liian paljon	I happened to eat too much

tulimme pitäneeksi nämä kengät	we happened to keep these shoes
tuli olleeksi siellä kolme kuukautta	he happened to be there for three months

To the verb forms with *-nut* it is possible to add some case suffixes. Before most of these, *-nut* will take the stem form *-nee*, as in *tehnee-*, *juonee-*, *tullee-*, *loukannee-*. The case suffix you're most likely to find following verb forms and *-nee-* is *-ksi* (see unit 10, pages 181-2). Note that a verb form with *-nee-* followed by *-ksi* and accompanied by a form of the verb *tulla* 'to come' means 'to happen to'.

Comment Two—The Suffix -pa

kysynpä häneltä ensin	I'll ask him first

The suffix *-pa* (as in *kysynpä*) is used generally for emphasis—or in some cases just the opposite—(compare unit 13, page 225, discussion of *-han*) of the word to which it is added. Note these expressions: *samaanpa* 'the very same', *jospa hän tulisi* 'if he'd only come', *kylläpä ulkona on lämmin* 'it certainly is warm outside.' Sometimes *-pa* and *-han* can be combined as *-pahan*: *sanoinpahan vain* 'I was only saying'.

Comment Three—The Suffix -kin

valotkin ovat huonot	even the lights are bad
hänenkin kaasuhellansa	his gas stove also

The suffix *-kin* is also an emphatic suffix. You already know *myöskin* 'also', and note these further examples: *minullakin on hyvät sukset* 'I too have good skis', *meidänkin talossamme on* 'in our house, too, there's an elevator'.

Comment Four—The Suffix -(ka)an

kerrassaan mitään	absolutely nothing

The suffix *-(ka)an* is used for emphasis in negative sentences; after an *-a* in the stem, the *-ka* of this suffix disappears, as in the above examples. Note further: *milloin* 'when', *en milloinkaan* 'never (in all my life)', *hän ei tule koskaan* 'he never comes', *minäkään en polta* 'I don't smoke either'.

Comment Five—The Suffix -sti(')

totisesti	honestly	*tietysti*	certainly
varmasti	surely	*hyvästi*	(fare)well

Note the suffix *-sti(')*, one of a dozen or so corresponding roughly to the English suffix '*-ly*'. This suffix is especially important because it is also used in Finnish with numbers, to be translated into English generally as 'times'. Thus ***kolmesti*** or ***kolmasti*** 'three times' (also ***kolme kertaa***—see unit 11, page 200), ***kahdesti*** 'twice' (also ***kaksi kertaa***).

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. What Would You Say?

I. Change these sentences into negatives:

1. *Maisteri Korpi muutti viime viikolla.*
2. *Kysyin neuvoa ystävältäni.*
3. *Soitin pari kertaa ennenkuin hän kuuli.*
4. *Olisin keittänyt kahvia jos hellani olisi ollut kunnossa.*
5. *Jos olisin lähtenyt täältä kello kymmenen junalla olisin ollut siellä huomen aamulla.*
6. *Olisin mennyt myöskin ostoksille jos minulla olisi ollut tarpeeksi aikaa.*
7. *Olen kuunnellut radiota joka illa.*
8. *Isäkin on tullut paljon vanhemmaksi.*
9. *Hän on asunut Saksassa monta vuotta.*
10. *Sinä halusit ostaa suuren kauniin koiran.*

II. Fill in the appropriate words from the list below in the blanks.

1. ______________ *häntä päivälliselle tänään.*
2. ______________ *ollut siellä, niin kaikki olisi nyt paremmin.*
3. ______________ *tulee lomalle kotiin.*
4. ______________ *vain katsomaan, mitä te teette.*
5. *Ulkona sataa* ______________.
6. *Ei ollut* ______________, *että sanoitte niin.*
7. ______________ *mennä sinne junalla.*
8. ______________ *ei ole liian paljon.*
9. ______________ *eivät voineet tulla, sillä satoi niin kovasti.*
10. ______________ *oli paljon koulupoikia.*
11. ______________ *siellä käymään, jos siellä olisi hauskaa.*
12. ______________ *en pane ulos tässä kovassa pakkasessa.*
13. ______________ *odotimme häntä monta tuntia.*
14. *Konserttiin voivat* ______________ *mennä.*
15. ______________ *sisaresi ostaa sinulle lahjan.*
16. ______________ *äitinne voi hyvin.*

a. *lapsetkin*
b. *hänhän*
c. *kauniisti*
d. *koiraanikaan*
e. *konsertissahan*
f. *kovasti*
g. *menisihän*
h. *mekin*
i. *olisinpa*
j. *pyydänpä*
k. *sekään*
l. *sotilaatkaan*
m. *tietysti*
n. *toivottavasti*
o. *tulinpa*
p. *voittehan*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the [illegible] for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* [illegible] Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

I. The following letter is written by an American visitor, Bill, to his mother in the States.

Oulu, huhtikuun 3 p:nä, 1945

Äiti kulta!

Saavuin tänne jo maaliskuussa.
Kaikki oli vielä jäässä ja paljon lunta maassa.
Olin Helsingissä noin pari viikkoa.
Kyllä kaikki on totta, mitä olen kuullut tästä "Pohjolan Valkeasta Kaupungista."
Talot eivät kyllä ole suuria kuten siellä, mutta kauniita ja valkoisia.
Ensin tietysti näimme aseman, joka on Eliel Saarisen taidetta.
Olethan kuullut hänestä Amerikassa, sillä hän on hyvin tunnettu myöskin siellä.
Sunnuntai-aamuna menimme kirkkoon.
Olin hyvin hämmästynyt, sillä kirkko oli niin kaunis ja lämmin sisältä.
Meillä oli sitten pari viikkoa aikaa katsoa kaupunkia.
Pidin hyvin paljon Eduskuntatalosta ja Konservatoriosta.
Ne ovat hyvin uudenaikaiset ja kauniit niin ulkoa kuin sisältä.
Kävin myöskin tavaratalossa.
Se on aivan keskikaupungilla ja se on vain noin pari kadunkulmaa minun hotellistani.
Ostin sinulle ja isälle sieltä lahjat.
En sano, mitä ostin, mutta varmaan hämmästyt, sillä ne ovat niin suomalaiset.
Lähetin ne teille pari päivää sitten.
Myyjätär, joka auttoi minua ostoksissani, oli tyypillinen suomalainen tyttö, ja hyvin kaunis myöskin.
Hän sanoi, että jos ensi sunnuntaina on hyvä hiihtokeli hän lähtee hiihtomatkalle Munkkiniemeen.
Hän kysyi, jos minä haluaisin lähteä hänen kanssansa.
Tietysti minä halusin.
Sinä tiedät millainen on poikasi.
Sunnuntai-aamuna kello kahdeksan näin hänet hotellini ravintolassa.
Söimme hyvän aamiaisen, kaurapuuroa, munia ja kahvia.
Kyllä suomalaiset keittävät hyvää kahvia.
Sitten hiihdimme Munkkiniemeen ja takaisin.
Se oli ihanin hiihtomatka, minkä minä olen koskaan tehnyt.
Tuulikilla oli myöskin hauskaa.
Tuulikki on hänen nimensä, ja hän pyysi, että sanoisin häntä vain Tuuliksi.
Englanniksi se tarkoittaa 'wind.'
Eikö ole ihana nimi?
Nyt tietysti sanot isälle, että Bill on taas etsinyt itselleen toisen tytön.

Ja tottahan se on taas tällä kertaa. Näethän, että en ole Helsingissä.

Tulin tänne Ouluun pari paivää sitten.

Minulla oli hyvin hauska matka Tampereen, Jyväskylän ja Kuopion kautta tänne.

Oulu on paljon pienempi kaupunki kuin Helsinki, mutta hauska.

Luulen, että menen pian Helsingissä käymään, sillä junalippu sinne on hyvin halpa.

Lipulla, joka maksaa vain neljäsataa markkaa voi tehdä matkan ympäri Suomen.

Toivon, että isä ja sinä voitte oikein hyvin.

Teidän poikanne
Bill.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Conversation

1. Call on a friend's friend whom you have been asked to look up when you get to Helsinki. Telephone him for an appointment. He invites you to his home for dinner. You ask for directions to his home and are told the location. You have some difficulty in locating the right entry and confer with the janitor. You finally find the door, ring the bell. You introduce yourself, are invited to enter. He takes your coat, offers you cigarettes and matches, and asks you what kind of drink you'd like. You ask for a glass of whiskey. Then you both settle down to talk about your common friend.
2. You tell about your friend: he's back in the States on his farm with his family. Describe the various members of his family—what their ages are, their occupations, and so forth.
3. Then tell about yourself: back home you used to be a teacher of languages in a small college. Now you are working with the American Consulate in

Helsinki. You arrived only recently and haven't met many Finns. You spent most of your time with consular officials of various nations (which you list.) You would like, however, to see the town.

4. You discuss the various sights, and your friend's friend offers to introduce you to some Finns and to take you around to the various entertainment spots, which he describes. You tell him that you're interested in sports of various kinds, and he offers to take you to various races and meets, as well as on a hiking tour next spring.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Review

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences.*

Finder List

asia	matter *or* thing
attashea	attaché
edes	even
erehtyä	make a mistake *or* be mistaken
Filosofian Maisteri	Master of Arts
hella	stove
huoneusto	apartment
huono	bad
hyvänen aika	for goodness sake
Japani	Japan
jää	ice
-(ka)an	emphatic negative suffix
kaasu	gas
kai	probably *or* perhaps
keittää	to cook
ken	who
kerrassaan	absolutely *or* positively
kilpi	plate *or* sign
-kin	emphatic suffix
koettaa	to try
konsulaatti	consulate

konsuli	consul
korjattu	repaired
kun	as *or* when
kuunnella	to listen to
lyseo	high school
lähetystö	legation *or* embassy
mutista	to mutter
muuttua	to be moved
naapuri	neighbor
no	well
-nut	suffix
näin	like this *or* so *or* thus
nämä	these
opettaa	to teach
opettaja	teacher
ovi	door
-pa	emphatic suffix
pahus	darn it *or* nuisance
polttaa	to smoke
porras	stairway *or* stair
radio	radio
Ranska	France
ranskalainen	French
reilu	straightforward *or* honest
ryyppy	drink
Saksa	Germany
siirrettiin	was moved *or* was transferred
siis	consequently
soittaa	to ring
suokaa	allow *or* grant
-sti(')	-ly
suurlähettiläs	ambassador
taivas	heaven
talonmies	janitor
toimia	to work
toivottava	to be hoped for
totisesti	honestly
uutinen	piece of news
vaiva	trouble *or* bother
vaivata	to trouble
valo	light
voi	oh!
ystävä	friend

UNIT 17

VISITING A FARM

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

An American, for the first time in Finland, is in Vaasa with his wife, a Finnish girl. They plan a visit to her family's farm.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	FINNISH
	I. Planning
	Joe Edwards
exactly	*tarkalleen*
Where exactly is your father's farm?	*Aivan tarkalleen, missä on isäsi maatila?*
	Anna Edwards
It's fifty kilometers east of Vaasa.	*Se on viisikymmentä kilometriä itään Vaasasta.*
	Joe Edwards
map	*kartta*
show	*näytä*
Show me on the map.	*Näytä minulle, missä se on kartalla.*
mark	*merkki*
Put a mark there.	*Pane merkki siihen.*

Anna Edwards

Here it is!	*Tässä se on!*
to draw	*piirtää*
circle	*ympyrä*
red	*punainen*
pencil	*kynä*
I'll draw a circle with a red pencil.	*Piirrän ympyrän punaisella kynällä.*

Joe Edwards

road	*tie*
Do you know if the roads are any good?	*Tiedätkö, jos tiet ovat hyvät?*

Anna Edwards

Of course!	*Tietysti!*
condition	*kunto*
government *or* state	*valtio*
care	*huoli*
The roads are in very good condition because the government takes good care of them.	*Tiet ovat hyvässä kunnossa, sillä valtio pitää hyvän huolen niistä.*

Joe Edwards

to take	*ottamaan*
gasoline	*bensiini*
car	*auto*
I'll go get the car filled with gas.	*Menen ottamaan bensiiniä autoon.*
early	*aikaisin*
We can start early tomorrow morning.	*Me voimme lähteä aikaisin huomen aamulla.*

Anna Edwards

before	*ennen*
rooster	*kukko*
song	*laulu*
Everything will be ready before the rooster crows.	*Ennen kukon laulua kaikki on valmiina.*

II. Arriving at the farm

Penttilän isäntä welcomes his daughter and his son-in-law at the foot of the steps.

Isäntä Penttilä

to get tired	*väsyä*
You must be tired after your long trip.	*Varmaan olette väsyneitä pitkästä matkasta.*
come	*tulkaa*
Come in and have some coffee.	*Tulkaa sisään kahville.*
after	*jälkeen*
field	*pelto*
After coffee we'll go and see my fields.	*Kahvin jälkeen menemme katsomaan peltojani.*

III. Inspecting the farm

Penttilän isäntä and Joe Edwards step out of the main building.

Penttilä

building	*rakennus*
new	*uusi*
barn	*navetta*
That building over there is our new barn.	*Tuo rakennus tuolla on uusi navettamme.*

cow	*lehmä*
It's for twenty-five cows.	*Se on kahdellekymmenelleviidelle lehmälle.*

Joe Edwards

is milked	*lypsetään*
hand	*käsi*
electricity	*sähkö*
Do you milk them by hand or by electricity, as we do in the United States?	*Lypsetäänkö teillä käsin vai sähköllä, kuten meillä Yhdysvalloissa?*

Penttilä

By hand.	*Käsin.*
Electricity is pretty expensive, and we have only twenty cows right now.	*Sähkö on kallista, ja meillä on vain kaksikymmentä lehmää tällä kertaa.*

Joe Edwards

dairy *or* creamery	*meijeri*
Do you have your own creamery?	*Onko teillä oma meijeri?*

Penttilä

No.	*Ei.*
co-operative	*osuus-*
We send the milk to the co-operative dairy every morning.	*Maidon lähetämme joka aamu osuusmeijeriin.*

Joe Edwards

idea *or* thought	*ajatus*
That's a good idea.	*Se on hyvä ajatus.*

stable	*talli*
This is a nice stable.	*Tämähän on kaunis talli.*
For six horses, too!	*Ja kuudelle hevoselle.*
	Penttilä
at present	*nykyään*
We have only five horses at present.	*Meillä on vain viisi hevosta nykyään.*
to die	*kuolla*
Polle	*Polle*
Polle died last winter.	*Polle kuoli viime talvena.*
favorite	*lempi-*
He was Anna's favorite horse.	*Se oli Annan lempi-hevonen.*
	Joe Edwards
chickenhouse	*kanala*
What a modern chickenhouse!	*Mikä uudenaikainen kanala!*
	Penttilä
We have a hundred chickens.	*Meillä on sata kanaa.*
Eggs are expensive and the chickens don't eat much.	*Munat ovat kalliita ja kanat eivät syö paljoa.*
pig	*sika*
We keep pigs only for our own needs.	*Sikoja meillä on vain omaksi tarpeeksi.*

Joe Edwards

grain	*vilja*
sort	*laji*
to cultivate	*viljellä*
What sort of grain can you cultivate this far north?	*Mitä viljalajeja te voitte näin pohjoisessa viljellä?*

Penttilä

rye	*ruis*
barley	*ohra*
wheat	*vehnä*
Rye, oats, barley and wheat.	*Ruista, kauraa, ohraa ja vehnää.*

Joe Edwards

Just as we do in America.	*Samoja mitä mekin viljelemme Amerikassa.*

Penttilä

forest	*metsä*
Next week we'll go to see our forest.	*Ensi viikolla lähdemme katsomaan metsäämme.*
It's about ten kilometers from here.	*Se on noin kymmenen kilometriä täältä.*
pride	*ylpeys*
It's the pride of this house.	*Se on tämän talon ylpeys.*

Check Your Pronunciation

How to pronounce the word spelled 'bensiini': For the pronunciation of the letter *b*, see unit 7, page 118. Better educated Guides will pronounce the word as it is spelled, *bensiini* (note that the *s* is spoken as in *so*, not as in *has*); others will say it as if it were written *pentsiini*. Follow your Guide always and

Practice 54

bensiini	gasoline

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

Comment One—Giving Orders: the -kaa Suffix

näytä(')	*show*	*pane(')*	put

Notice these two forms: the free form of the word to the left is *näyttää*, its stem form *näyttä-;* the free form of the word to the right is *panna*, its stem form *pane-*. If you want to give an order in Finnish to a single person, you must add ' to the stem form though this is not necessarily written. This 'catch' may not always be audible to you, but its presence is shown in two ways. In the first place Ca ∼ Cb (see unit 11, comment 4) just as if any other consonant were following the Cb: hence the replacement of *tt* in *näyttä-* by *t* in *näytä(')*, and hence the forms *tee(')* from *tehdä* 'to do', stem *teke-*, or *ala(')* from *alkaa* 'to begin', stem *alka-*. In the second place, if the word following your order begins with a consonant, that consonant will be pronounced double: *pane(') päälle* 'put on' is pronounced *paneppäälle; mene(') matkaasi* 'go on your way' is pronounced *menemmatkaasi;* and so forth. (Note: when the word following your order begins with a vowel, the ' will generally be dropped. In some sections of Finland, however, it will then be pronounced as a 'catch'. Imitate your particular Guide always.)

antakaa minulle	give me
sanokaa minulle	tell me

Besides giving an order to a single person, you may want to give an order to a number of people ('you all'). In such a case you must add the suffix *-kaa* to the stem (the consonant stem of verbs belonging to the second class). Very rarely the personal suffix for the plural second person, *-tte*, may follow the *-kaa-*, but it's almost always omitted in actual speech: *antaa* 'to give', *anta-*, *antakaa(tte)* 'give'; *viljelkää* 'cultivate', *ostakaa* 'buy', and so on.

You may also want to give an order to a number of people including yourself ('let's'). There are two ways of doing this. Rather more rarely, you add *-kaa* to the stem, followed by the personal suffix *-mme*, as in *menkäämme* 'let's go', *piirtäkäämme* 'let's draw'. In actual usage, however, you may expect your Guide to employ quite another form with this meaning, as explained below in comment two.

Comment Two—The Suffixes -(t)ta('), -(h)xn

lähdetään nyt	let's start now
joko pian syödään?	are we going to eat soon?

lypsetään käsin	let's milk by hand
mennään jalan	let's go on foot

Study the composition of the form *lähdetään* from the free form *lähteä* 'to start'. The stem form is *lähte-*. To this is added a suffix *-ta*(') (here *-tä*(')). This is followed by *-an*. The stem consonant *-t-* is replaced by a *-d-*. This is the story:

1. The suffix -(*t*)*ta*(') is added to stems before the -(*h*)*xn* suffix, the use of which is explained in the next paragraph below. Here we'll take up its form only. This suffix, after a short stem vowel, such as *anta-* (from *antaa* 'to give'), will be *-tta*('), before which *-a-* and *-ä-* are automatically replaced by *-e-*. The 'catch' will act as a consonant always, and *Ca* will be replaced by *Cb*. Hence *annetta-* (*nt* replaced by *nn*). After two vowels, or after consonant stems in the second group, the suffix will be simply *-ta*('): *saada* 'to get', *saa-*, *saata-; tehdä* 'to do', *teh-*, *tehtä-*. Taking the verbs from the illustrations above, *lähteä* 'to start', *lähte-*, *lähdetä-; syödä* 'to eat', *sy*[illegible]*yödä-; lypsää* 'to milk', *lypsä-*, *lypsetä-;* and *men*[illegible]o go', *men-*, *mennä-*. Note especially the automa[illegible]changes in each case. The ' is omitted, however, in the spelling.

2. The suffix -(*h*)*xn* is a personal verb suffix, always following the stem plus -(*t*)*ta*('). The two suffixes combined give a so-called passive meaning to the verb they are attached to, and are usually translated as 'one does' or 'you do' or 'is being done'. The *-h-* of the suffix almost always drops in acrual usage and the value of *-x-* is equal to the vowel that immediately precedes. Hence *lähdetä-* plus -(*h*)*xn* will become *lähdetähän*, *lähdetään; syödä-* plus -(*h*)*xn* will become *syödähän*, *syödään; lypsä-* plus -(*h*)*xn* will become *lypsetähän*, *lypsetään;* and *mennä-* plus -(*h*)*xn* will become *mennähän* or *mennään*. This construction is then also used to give an order to several people when you're one of that group. Hence the meaning 'let's go', *mennään*, and so forth. The latter usage is much preferred to that discussed at the end of comment two above.

konsulimme siirrettiin	our consul was transferred

Note the verb in this expression. It is a past passive form. The free form of this verb is *siirtää* 'to transfer'. First you add the passive suffix -(*t*)*ta*(') to the stem *siirtä-*. Due to the ' , the *rt* will be replaced by *rr*. Hence *siirrettä-* (with the automatic change of *-ä-* to *-e-*). The present form would be *siirretähän*, *siirretään*. Add to this the sign of the past *-i-*, and the stem vowel *-ä-* will automatically drop before it: hence *siirretti-*. Now finally add -(*h*)*xn*, and drop the *-h-*, getting *siirrettiin*. Thus, also *keitettiin* 'it was cooked', *mentiin* 'one went', and so on.

Instead of *me menemme* 'we're going' or *me menimme* 'we went', you may hear your Guide say *me mennään* or *me mentiin*, and so forth, with the same meaning. If your Guide uses these forms, imitate him, and don't be impressed by protests that this form 'isn't literary'.

Comment Three—Summary

1. You have learned four new case suffixes, the *-na*, the *-hxn*, *-seen*, the two *-n* suffixes (one the genitive). You now know twelve altogether.

2. You have learned a number of verb suffixes: *-isi*, *-nut*, *-(t)ta(')(h)xn* and the suffixes for the order giving forms. You also know how to give the negative of a verb in the present and in the past and of an *-isi* form, though you don't know how to give a negative order yet.

3. You have learned two types of *pronouns:* the personal (*minä* 'I', *sinä* 'you', and so on), and the pronoun *itse* 'self'. Pronouns behave exactly like nouns, and can not be distinguished in form.

4. Among the other new suffixes you have met are *-tar* (feminine suffix), *-sti(')*, and four emphatic suffixes: *-han*, *-pa*, *-kin*, and its negative, *-(ka)an*.

2. Covering the English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. What Would You Say?

I. Complete the following statements with one of the three solutions offered and then read the complete statement aloud:

1. *Jos tänään on lauantai*
   a. *huomenna on maanantai.*
   b. *eilen oli perjantai.*
   c. *ensi torstaihin on neljä päivää.*
2. *Kun olen väsynyt tahdon*
   a. *nukkua.*
   b. *tanssia.*
   c. *kävellä.*
3. *Kun minulla on päänsärkyä*
   a. *menen ostoksille.*
   b. *käyn hammaslääkärissä.*
   c. *otan päänsärkylääkettä.*
4. *Seitsemän kertaa kuusikymmentäyksi on*
   a. *neljäsataakaksikymmentäseitsemän.*
   b. *kolmesataakahdeksankymmentäkuusi.*
   c. *satayhdeksänkymmentäviisi.*
5. *Jos sisällä on kylmä*
   a. *panen lisää puita pesään.*
   b. *otan saappaat pois jaloistani.*
   c. *minulla on hyvin lämmin.*
6. *Jos minulla olisi talo*
   a. *menisin sinne kesälomakseni.*
   b. *lähettäisin kenkäni suutariin.*
   c. *tulisin kanssasi elokuviin*
7. *Kun talossa on nyt viiniä.*
   a. *lähetän pyykkini ulos.*
   b. *siellä sataa.*
   c. *otan ryypyn.*
8. *Veljeni hotellissa on*
   a. *kilpa-ajot.*
   b. *keskuslämmitys.*
   c. *hiihtokilpailut.*
9. *Hän menisi tanssimaan*
   a. *mutta hänellä ei ole kenkiä.*
   b. *jos hänellä olisi hyvät sukset.*
   c. *jos konsulaatti olisi kaukana asemasta.*
10. *Lähtisin laivalla maalle*
    a. *jos minulla olisi lomaa.*
    b. *jos rohdoskaupasta saisi tupakkaa.*
    c. *mutta minulla on yskää.*

II. The words enclosed in parentheses are to be transposed in the order giving form. In some cases there is more than one solution possible without changing the rest of the sentence. Read the sentences aloud in each case.

1. (*Tulla*) *katsomaan meidän uutta navettaamme!*
2. (*Päättää*) *pian tuletko kanssamme konserttiin vai etkö!*

3. *Jos olet kotona (soittaa) minulle ensi keskiviikkona!*
4. *Koska meille tulee vieraita tänä iltana (keittää) hyvää kahvia ja tarpeeksi.*
5. *(Opettaa) minuakin tanssimaan!*
6. *(Kuunnella) sinä uutiset ja (sanoa) sitten minulle mitä kuulit!*
7. *(Olla) hyvä ja (sulkea) radio, sillä tahdon puhua puhelimessa!*
8. *Samalla kun menet kaupungille (ostaa) minulle partasaippuaa ja parranajokoneen teriä.*
9. *(Lähettää) äidille sähkösanoma että tulemme kotiin lomalle pariksi päiväksi ensi viikolla!*
10. *(Etsiä) meille kaunis kolmen huoneen huoneusto.*
11. *(Mennä) ja (tuoda) lehmät pellolta.*
12. *Pidän siitä laulusta niin paljon, että (soittaa) se minulle vielä kerran.*

III. Fit the forms in parentheses into the sentence and read the completed statement aloud.

1. *Yliopiston Apteekki (sulkea) kello kahdeksantoista.*
2. *Kun kuolemme (soittaa) meille kirkonkelloja.*
3. *Meille (sanoa) että oli aika lähteä kotiin.*
4. *Huomaan, että naapurissa (keittää) lihalientä.*
5. *Ruotsalaisissa kouluissa (opettaa) kieliä.*
6. *Tavaramme (pakata) tänä aamuna.*
7. *Amerikassa (olla) uudenaikaisia.*
8. *(Mennä) katsomaan tuota rakennusta.*
9. *Maatilalla (viljellä) ruista, kauraa, ohraa ja vehnää.*
10. *Heiltä (kysyä) mitä kieliä Saksassa (puhua).*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

The following story is told by an American who has just returned from a visit to a Finnish farm.

Lauantaipäivä suomalaisella maatilalla

Olin ollut Suomessa vain pari kuukautta kun suomalainen sotilastoverini pyysi minut kanssaan isänsä maatilalle Keski-Suomeen.

Koska en ollut koskaan ennemmin ollut suomalaisella maatilalla sanoin että tulen mielelläni.

Niinpä eräänä kesäpäivänä lähdimme ystäväni kanssa autolla Tampereelta itäänpäin.

Matkamme päänä oli toverini koti noin sata kilometriä Tampereelta.

Puoli matkassa automme meni rikki.

Se oli pian korjattu ja taas olimme menossa.

Saavuimme Pohjolan tilalle perjantai-iltana.

Päärakennus oli kaunis valkoinen talo, ulkorakennukset punaisia.

Olimme väsyneitä matkasta ja nukuimme hyvin ensimäisen yömme.

Lauantai-aamulla aikaisin kuulin kun kukko lauloi.

Emäntä toi minulle hyvän aamiaisen huoneeseeni.

Kun olin syönyt tuli toverini katsomaan olinko jo valmis

Yhdessä sitten menimme ulos.

Aamu oli lämmin ja rauhallinen.

Ensiksi halusin nähdä navetan ja tallin.

Navetassa juuri navettatytöt lypsivät lehmiä.

Sanoin toverilleni, että Amerikassa aina miehet lypsävät ja hän oli hyvin hämmästynyt.

Kysyin montako kertaa päivässä Suomessa lypsetään.

Toverini sanoi, että joko kaksi tai kolme kertaa.

Kesällä lehmät ovat pellolla päivällä ja yöllä.

Talvella niiden täytyy olla navetassa aina, sillä ulkona on liian kylmä.

Tallissa oli neljä hevosta.

Ne eivät olleet niin kauniita, mutta hyviä työhevosia.

Yksi hevosista oli ollut hyvä kilpahevonen nuorempana.

Tallista menimme katsomaan sikoja ja kanoja.

Kysyin mitä he tekevät kaikilla kananmunilla.

Toverini sanoi, että osuuskauppa ostaa munia ja lähettää ne kaupunkeihin.

Pian kello olikin jo kaksitoista ja emäntä pyysi meidät päivälliselle.

Sen jälkeen lähdimme katsomaan viljapeltoja.

En ollut koskaan nähnyt niin hyvää ruista ja ohraa.

Näin että sinä kesänä viljapellot olivat Pohjolan isännän ylpeys.

Iltapäivällä palasimme takaisin taloon.

Emäntä sanoi, että sauna on pian lämmin, nythän oli lauantaiilta.

Kun miehet palasivat työstä pelloilta, menimme kaikki saunaan yhtaikaa.

Saunan jälkeen kävimme uimassa ja olimme kuin uusia ihmisiä.

Kaiken tämän jälkeen söin kuin hevonen.

Olinhan ollut raittiissa ilmassa monta tuntia.

Kuulin että kilometrin päässä oli tanssit.

Tietysti halusin mennä sinnekin.

Niissä tansseissa näin ensi kerran Katrin. Kaksi vuotta myöhemmin hänestä tuli vaimoni.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Conversation

1. You discuss with a friend the prices of movies, theatres and opera on various days of the week. Each of you tells an anecdote (pretend it was an incident in one of the pictures; for example, I saw a good movie the day before yesterday . . . etc. In one place . . . etc.).

2. You're discussing with a friend what each of you would do if he could change his occupation. Your friend says that his ambition has always been to run a hotel. He tells you in great detail what sort of rooms there would be, lighting, heating, elevators, shops, restaurant, how the prices would run, and so forth. Then you tell him what you've always wanted was a farm; describe in detail what you would have in the way of produce and stock if you owned a farm.

3. You're driving along the highway somewhere in Finland. You stop the car and ask an elderly farmer for directions to a certain town. You hand him a pencil and ask him to point out the place on a map. He puts a mark, and tells you how far it is. You inquire about the condition of the road straight ahead and are assured that it's in fine condition. Finally you ask him for the whereabouts of a filling station and are told that there's one about five kilometers to the right.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION *(Cont.)*

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Review

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

Finder List

aikaisin	early
ajatus	idea *or* thought
auto	car
bensiini	gasoline
ennen	before
huoli	care
-(*h*)*xn*	passive personal suffix
jälkeen	after
-kaa	order giving suffix
kanala	chickenhouse
kartta	map
kukko	rooster
kunto	condition
kuolla	to die
kynä	pencil
käsi	hand
laji	sort
laulu	song
lehmä	cow

lempi-	favorite
lypsää	to milk
meijeri	dairy *or* creamery
merkki	mark
metsä	forest
navetta	barn
nykyään	to present
näyttää	to show
ohra	barley
osuus-	co-operative
ottamaan	to take
pelto	field
piirtää	to draw
Polle	Polle
punainen	red
rakennus	building

ruis	rye
sika	pig
sähkö	electricity
talli	stable
tarkalleen	exactly
tie	road
-(*t*)*ta*(')	passive suffix
uusi	new
valtio	government *or* state
vehnä	wheat
vilja	gain
viljellä	to cultivate
väsyä	to get tired
ylpeys	pride
ympyrä	circle
-'	order giving suffix

UNIT 18

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN FINNISH?

To the Group Leader: Like units 6 and 12, this unit is a review of all the work done up to date. In general, the procedure will be the same as in those units.

In Section A of this unit are anecdotes followed by a series of statements. The statements which are based on the anecdotes, are to be used like the T-F statements of earlier review units. The Guide is to read the anecdotes and the statements to the group. If you have no Guide, choose, or have the group choose, one of the students to do the reading. The anecdotes and statements will be found in Guide's *Manual*. Each statement is to be read twice and the number of each statement is to be called out so that the members of the group can mark *T* or *F* the corresponding numbers in their books.

After the reading of the anecdote, explain that the first statement will be read as an example. The statement: "*Hotellinjohtajan vaimo oli kuollut,*" means: "The hotel manager's wife was dead" and should be marked as *F*, since the story definitely indicates that his wife is alive.

After the quiz is over, correct it with the group as in units 6 and 12.

This unit is another review of the work done up to this point. For the most part, it is like units 6 and 12. The first section will be a true-false quiz. A number of anecdotes in Finnish will be read to you by the Guide or by a member of the group. Listen carefully because after each anecdote there will be read a number of statements about the story you have heard. You will mark these statements as either *T* or *F*, according to what you have understood about the anecdote. After the first anecdote has been read, the first statement will be given you as a sample.

When all the anecdotes have been read and you have had a chance to mark all the statements, the Guide or Leader will go over the answers with you.

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

(Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Finnish for each of the following sentences. Do not write anything down.

I

1. He's a typical Finnish businessman.
2. Porter, can you help me?
3. I wouldn't be surprised if it had already left.
4. He sat in a smoker.
5. Reserve me a table at the restaurant.
6. Give me that fifth magazine to the left.
7. The suit cases are in the checkroom.
8. I suggest you go by first class.

II

1. Do you mean that he got impertinent?
2. This is January; spring will be here in two months.
3. I hope you didn't break your skiis.
4. If it were five degrees warmer, it would help a good deal.
5. I prefer whiskey, but I've drunk enough for today.
6. Put the boots on your feet.
7. Walk south.
8. I knew exactly what the teacher meant.

III

1. He was Swedish consul in Japan.
2. There are many Russians in France.
3. There's a Norwegian play in the theatre on Thursday.
4. He cares only for horse races and night clubs.
5. There's a German dance band at the movie theatre.
6. By the way, is there a translation?
7. Can we go rowing or do we need a ticket?
8. Salesmen are so stupid!

IV

1. Isn't there a janitor in this building?
2. There are many regular guys in the army.
3. The elevator is out of order.
4. What are those things in your hand?
5. For goodness sake, tell me what troubles you.

6. The second man to the right is the military attaché.
7. What's your telephone number?
8. I have a bad cold and a headache.

V

1. That's a map of France.
2. I see that the government takes good care of your roads.
3. Bring me a box of pencils.
4. I'll mark the road in red for you.
5. Oh, mother, the cow drank the gasoline.
6. The soldiers were in a circle on the field.
7. I'm tired of all these people.
8. The rooster crows at six thirty.

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the sentences in Section B, asking various members of the group: *„Kuinka te sanotte suomeksi...?"*

SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

(Individual Study)

Do the following exercises. Read all sentences aloud with correct solutions. Have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

I

Here is a list of ten verbs. Put each in an order giving form and make up a complete sentence using each order.

a. *Syödä*
b. *Koettaa*
c. *Toivoa*
d. *Ostaa*
e. *Lähteä*

f. *Tehdä*
g. *Ymmärtää*
h. *Katkaista*
i. *Käydä*
j. *Kuulla*

1. ______________________________
2. ______________________________
3. ______________________________
4. ______________________________
5. ______________________________
6. ______________________________
7. ______________________________
8. ______________________________
9. ______________________________
10. ______________________________

II

Change each of the following sentences from the negative to the positive.

11. *En mene kesälomalle tänä vuonna.*
12. *Hän ei voinut tulla kanssamme tänä iltana.*
13. *Lippu ei ollut liian kallis.*
14. *Ette voi saada laivaa Jyväskylään täältä.*
15. *Minäkään en pidä pöytäviinasta.*
16. *Hän ei ole voinut loukata jalkaansa.*
17. *Isäni huoneustossa ei ollut keskuslämmitystä.*
18. *Tässä huoneessa ei ole raitista ilmaa.*
19. *Suomalaiset eivät syö hevosenlihaa.*
20. *Hän koetti keittää naapurin hellalla.*
21. *Tässä autossa ei ollut bensiiniä.*
22. *Valtio ei tee uusia teitä.*
23. *Puhelimet eivät tarvitse sähköä.*
24. *Tämä konjakki ei ole hintansa arvoista kullassa.*
25. *Upseerilla ei voisi olla koiraa.*

III

Here are two lists of words. By adding the genitive suffix (singular or plural, as the case may be) to each word in the column to the left you can relate it to the corresponding word in the series to the right. Take each of the ten combinations so gained and use them in complete sentences.

a. *emäntä*
b. *hevonen*
c. *housut*
d. *tarjoilijatar*
e. *vihannekset*
f. *huoneustot*
g. *rauhallinen*
h. *sika*
i. *sotilaat*
j. *myymälät*

a. *tytär*
b. *nimi*
c. *hinta*
d. *juomaraha*
e. *kanssa*
f. *vuokrat*
g. *talo*
h. *liha*
i. *morsiamet*
j. *johtaja*

Sentences:

26. ____

27. ____

28. ____

29. ____

30. ____

31. ____

32. ____

33. ____

34. ____

35. ____

IV

The following sentences contain English words in parentheses, which should be translated and fitted into their respective contexts.

36. *Tein tämän takin aivan* (with my own hands).
37. *Olin* (saleslady) *tavaratalossa Helsingissä.*
38. *Tutustuin Saksan* (ambassador) *Japanissa.*
39. *Haluaisin muuttaa* (to this modern building).
40. *Hän pyysi minua* (to the phone).
41. (During a cold summer) *vija ei tule hyvää.*
42. *Äiti sai kellon* (as a gift) *isältä.*
43. *Voimmeko mennä* (to the third floor) *hissillä.*
44. *Mistä voin saada uusia teriä* (for my razor).
45. *Mennäänkö* (to the stores) *ensin ja sitten* (to the theatre)?
46. (On the sixth day) *alkoi sataa lunta.*
47. *Tulin tähän maahan* (last spring).
48. (Being typical Finnish girls) *emme pidä nenäkkäistä herroista.*
49. (Does the price of the ticket include) *myös laivamatka?*
50. *Varmaankaan et palaa Renon matkalta hänen* (wife).

SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in Section *D*. Keep your book closed. If you have a Guide, he will check on pronunciation and the correctness of your Finnish; if not, other members of your group will criticize.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

The members of the group will carry on short conversations lasting from two to five minutes. Everyone should take part as often as possible. Remember to begin and end conversations with the proper greeting. By this time you have more words to use and more subjects to talk about. The group will be given one hundred minutes and you should be able to talk longer on one topic. Don't be afraid to bring in other things that you can think of and talk about besides those suggested here. Let the talk be as natural as possible, try to answer what is asked you and to keep the conversation moving by asking questions in turn.

Suggested Topics:

1. Going for a ride in a car.

   (Include: talk about the scenery, farms, towns, churches, etc. Stopping to ask directions at a filling station; buying gas, or a drink, or ice cream, and drive on. The weather worries you, and finally it starts to rain, so you return home.)

2. Discuss the sports of various nations.

   (Include: skiing, rowing, swimming, walking, horse-races, dancing, as done in America, Finland, Sweden, Germany, France, Japan.)

3. Visiting.

   (Include: courtesy call at your consul's home; old friend of your father's; exchanges of polite greeting, offer and acceptance of smokes and drinks; talk of languages you speak with possible view to a job at the consulate; mention various nations, but getting evasive answers; appointment for next week to the ambassador at his office.)

4. At a railroad station.

(Include: buying tickets, asking for places on a map, talking to the porter, getting reservations, buying magazines and candy.)

5. Going rowing.

(Include: preparations, hiring a boat, going on lake, resting, swimming, eating food brought along, having drinks.)

6. On a farm.

(Include: farmer showing you around; seeing the barns and stables, the sauna, the fields, the animals, the dairy, talk about the various grains and the influence of the seasons and the weather.)

7. Skiing.

(Include: getting dressed warmly, talking about the snow and other skiing conditions, coming back and sitting around the fire talking about different things.)

8. Meeting a girl on the train.

(Include: offering a cigarette, candy, or magazines; introductions; talking about your home town, your relatives, the weather, countries you've been to; asking for her address and phone number and promise to look her up.)

9. Trying to find someone.

(Include: asking for directions, finding house and getting information from the janitor; walking around to right entrance, but having trouble finding right door.)

NELJÄS JAKSO[1]

LUKU[2] 19

POSTI

OSA[3] A—PERUSLAUSEET[4]

Herra ja rouva Alanne keskustelevat[5] poikansa ulkomaan[6] matkasta ja hänen postinsa lähettämisestä.[7]

ENGLANNIKSI	SUOMEKSI
Rouva Alanne	
When did you say George arrives in Sweden?	*Mihin aikaan sinä sanoit, että Yrjö saapuu Ruotsiin?*
Herra Alanne	
to reach one's destination	*olla perillä*
He ought to be there around seven-thirty tonight.	*Hänen pitäisi olla perillä noin puoli kahdeksan tänä iltana.*

---

[1] Starting with this unit, more and more headings and directions will be given regularly in Finnish. You will find the meanings of the new words in footnotes running consecutively through each unit and again in the Finder List. Forms that were previously explained will be given in their free form, others in the form in which they occur in the text. *Jakso* 'part'.

[2] *Luku* 'chapter'.

[3] *Osa* 'section'.

[4] Compound word; *perus* 'basis', *lause* 'sentence'.

[5] *Keskustella* 'to converse'.

[6] Compound word; *ulkomaa* 'foreign country' or 'abroad'.

[7] *Lähettäminen* 'sending'.

Rouva Alanne

case	*tapaus*
to cross	*ylittää*
border	*raja*
In that case he has crossed the Finnish border long ago.	*Siinä tapauksessa hän on ylittänyt Suomen rajan jo kauan sitten.*

Herra Alanne

clear	*selvä*
Stockholm	*Tukholma*
Well, obviously, from our border it's still many an hour's trip to Stockholm.	*Sehän on selvä asia, rajaltammehan on vielä monen tunnin matka Tukholmaan.*
But what'll we do with his mail?	*Mutta mitä me teemme hänen postinsa kanssa.*

Rouva Alanne

letter	*kirje*
cover	*kuori*
to forward *or* to turn *or* to translate	*kääntää*
Put it in an envelope and forward it to George today.	*Pane ne kirjekuoreen ja käännä ne tänä päivänä Yrjölle.*

Herra Alanne

air mail	*lentoposti*
But don't you think it's better to send his mail by air,	*Etkö luule, että on parasta lähettää hänen kirjeensä lentopostissa,*
to continue	*jatkaa*
so he'll receive it before he continues his trip?	*niin hän saa ne ennenkuin hän jatkaa matkaansa?*

Rouva Alanne

Denmark	*Tanska*
If I were you, I'd send his letters to Denmark.	*Minä sinuna lähettäisin hänen kirjeensä Tanskaan.*
address	*osoite*
You have his address, don't you, and they'd be there before him.	*Sinullahan on hänen osoitteensa ja ne olisivat siellä ennen häntä.*
registered	*sisäänkirjoitettu*
Besides, I'd send his letters registered.	*Sitäpaitsi lähettäisin hänen kirjeensä sisäänkirjoitettuna kirjeenä.*

Herra Alanne

How much do you think it costs?	*Kuinka paljon sinä luulet että se maksaa?*
to collect	*koota*
stamp	*postimerkki*
different	*eri*
worth	*arvoinen*
George is quite a stamp collector and I'd like to put different denominations on his envelope.	*Yrjöhän kokoaa postimerkkejä ja haluaisin panna eriarvoisia merkkejä hänen kirjekuoreensa.*
yellow	*keltainen*
blue	*sininen*
He asked for yellow and blue stamps, didn't he?	*Hänhän pyysi keltaisia ja sinisiä merkkejä?*

Rouva Alanne

That's your business!	*Se on sinun asiasi!*

package	*paketti*
to take	*viedä*
office	*toimisto*
as well as	*niin . . . kuin*
I've a package for him ready and I'd like you to take the letters along with the package to the Post Office.	*Minulla on hänelle paketti valmiina ja tahtoisin että veisit niin kirjeet kuin pakettinkin tänään postitoimistoon.*

Herra Alanne

Very well.	*Hyvä on.*
clerk	*virkailija*
to help	*auttamaan*
I'll take your package and ask the postal clerk to help me.	*Vien pakettisi ja pyydän postivirkailijaa auttamaan minua.*
anyway	*kuitenkin*
to fill out	*täyttää*
form *or* blank	*kaavake*
with all	*kaikkine*
with particulars	*yksityiskohtineen*
Anyway, I'll have to fill out a blank package form with all the particulars,	*Minun täytyy kuitenkin täyttää postipakettikaavake kaikkine yksityiskohtineen,*
sender	*lähettäjä*
receiver	*vastaanottaja*
contents	*sisältö*
and so on	*ja niin edespäin*[8]
such as the sender's and receiver's name, the contents of the package, and so on.	*kuten lähettäjän ja vastaanottajan nimen, paketin sisällön, j.n.e.*

Abbreviated as *j.n.e.* 'etc.'

Rouva Alanne

value	*arvo*
I think that when one sends a package abroad, they want to know its value.	*Minä luulen, että kun lähettää paketin ulkomaille, he tahtovat tietää paketin arvon.*
to insure *or* to assure	*vakuuttaa*
And, by the way, it's best to insure it, too.	*Ja kesken kaiken parasta on, että vakuutat sen myöskin.*

Herra Alanne

Well, then I'll call up the Post Office first and find out about all these things. What was their telephone number?'	*Sitten minä soitankin ensin postitoimistoon ja otan selvän kaikista näistä asioista. Mikä heidän puhelinnumeronsa olikaan?*

Rouva Alanne

directory	*luettelo*
I don't know; look in the phone directory, you'll find it there.	*En minä tiedä; katso puhelinluettelosta, siinähän se on.*

Herra Alanne

That boy is sure a lot of trouble.	*Kyllä siitä pojasta on vaivaa.*
to wire	*sähköttää*
perhaps	*kylläkai*
I suppose it's best to wire him so the boy knows we are sending him mail to Denmark.	*Kylläkai meidän on parasta sähköttää hänelle, että poika tietää, että lähetämme hänelle postia Tanskaan.*

Rouva Alanne

What are you muttering about there all by yourself?	*Mitä sinä mutiset siellä yksinäsi?*

Herra Alanne

to think	*ajatella*
I was just thinking that I'll wire George so he can expect his mail.	*Ajattelin tässä vain, että lähetän sähkösanoman Yrjölle, niin hän voi odottaa postiansa.*

Rouva Alanne

Do that!	*Tee se!*

Monta tuntia myöhemmin

Herra Alanne

Oh, I'm tired.	*Voi kun minä olen väsynyt.*
I had to wait at the Post Office an hour and a half, but I got everything cleared up.	*Minun täytyi odottaa postitoimistossa puolitoista tuntia, mutta sainpa kuin sainkin kaiken selväksi.*

Rouva Alanne

That's good.	*Sepä hyvä.*
I have coffee for you on the stove.	*Minulla on sinulle kahvia hellalla.*
to tell	*kertoa*
Now, tell me how everything went and why you were out so long.	*Kerro nyt minulle miten kaikki meni ja miksi olit niin kauan.*

Herra Alanne

First, of course, I went to the Post Office.	*Menin tietysti ensin postitoimistoon.*
I filled out all the forms and that took time.	*Täytin kaikki kaavakkeet ja siinä meni aikaa.*

And I'll tell you, it certainly is expensive to send letters by air mail.	*Ja sen minä sanon, että se tulee hyvin kalliiksi lähettää kirjeitä lentopostissa.*
especially	*varsin*
Especially when there are a great many of them.	*Varsinkin kun niitä on paljon.*

Rouva Alanne

Did you insure the package?	*Vakuutitko sinä sen paketin?*

Herra Alanne

Sure.	*Vakuutin.*
at the latest	*viimeistään*
And the postal clerk said George would get the letters and the package on Thursday, at the latest.	*Ja postivirkailija sanoi, että Yrjö saa kirjeet ja paketin viimeistään torstaina.*

Rouva Alanne

happy *or* glad	*iloinen*
I'm glad you went to the Post Office.	*Kyllä minä olen iloinen, että kävit postitoimistossa.*
near	*lähellä*
If you'd taken those letters to the nearest mail box, I'm sure that he wouldn't have gotten them before next week.	*Jos olisit vienyt ne kirjeet tuohon lähimpään postilaatikkoon, olen varma, että hän ei olisi saanut niitä ennenkuin ensi viikolla.*

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

Comment One—The Suffix -ta(')

or

How to Build Free Forms from Stems

Reread in this connection the discussion of verb stems in unit 8 and thereafter.

mutista	to mutter	*korjata*	to repair
tarvita	to need	*varata*	to reserve

The suffix *-ta*('), meaning 'to do' and so forth, is added to the consonant stem of two syllable stems: *mutise-, mutis-, mutista;* because of the ', consonant stems ending in *-t* drop their ending: *korjat-ta*(') is replaced by *korja-ta, tarvit-ta*(') is replaced by *tarvi-ta, varat-ta*(') is replaced by *vara-ta*, and so forth.

viljellä	to cultivate	*panna*	to put

The *-t-* of the suffix *-ta*(') is replaced by *-l-* after stems ending in *-l*, by *-n-* after stems ending in *-n* (and by *-r-* after stems ending in *-r*).

jatkaa	to continue	*toimia*	to work
erehtyä	to make a mistake	*toivoa*	to hope

After a short, unstressed vowel (that is, in a syllable other than the first), the *-t-* of the *-ta*(') suffix drops out: *jatka-ta*(') is replaced by *jatkaa, toimi-ta*(') is replaced by *toimia, erehty-tä*(') is replaced by *erehtyä, toivo-ta*(') is replaced by *toivoa*.

tuoda	to bring	*saada*	to get
syödä	to eat	*viedä*	to take

After a stem of a single syllable, the *-t-* of the suffix *-ta*(') is replaced by *-d-: tuo-ta*(') is replaced by *tuoda, saa-ta*(') is replaced by *saada, syö-tä*(') is replaced by *syödä, vie-tä*(') is replaced by *viedä*. Note that this same replacement of *-t-* by *-d-* takes place after any stem ending in *-oi-*. Recall also these two verbs: *nähdä* 'to see' and *tehdä* 'to do'.

minun tietääkseni olet oikeassa	to my knowledge you're right

Study this sentence carefully. Note the construction of the form *tietääkseni: tietä-tä*('), *tietää* 'to know'; this is followed by the case suffix *-ksi;* this, in turn, must be followed by a personal suffix (here *-ni*, before which the *-i-* of *-ksi* is replaced always by *-e-*). Note that the speaker of this sentence (or, its 'subject') is *minä*, stem *minu-;* the subject of a sentence containing a form of the *tietääkseni* type bears the genitive suffix (see unit 14, pages 237-8). Now examine these further examples:

(minun) luullakseni hän on kaupungissa
in my opinion he's in town

niin sanoakseni hän on sika
he's a pig, so to speak

kirjoittaakseni sinulle, sinun täytyy kirjoittaa minulle ensin
if you want me to write you, you'd better write me first

ollakseni hyvä, teen sen
to be good, I'll do it

Learn especially the forms *luullakseni* 'in my opinion', and *sanoakseni* 'so to speak'. Other verbs are generally used with the meaning 'that I', as in *kirjoittaakseni* 'that I write', *ollakseni* 'that I be', *viedäkseni* 'that I take', and so on.

Comment Two—The Suffix -ma

käyn ostamassa	I'm going to buy
olin hiihtämässä	I went to ski *or* I was skiing

Note the forms *ostamassa* 'to buy' and *hiihtämässä* 'to ski'. The suffix *-ma* follows always the vowel stem, *osta-* (from *ostaa* 'to buy'), *hiihtä-* (from *hiihtää* 'to ski'). When it is followed by the case suffix *-ssa* (see unit 3, page 55), the general meaning is simply 'action you're engaged in'. Further examples: *kävin pyytämässä häneltä makeisia* 'I went to ask him for some sweets', *olin tanssimassa eilen* 'I went dancing yesterday' (or 'I went to dance . . .').

lähdetään katsomaan	let's go to see
menen tassimaan	I'm going to dance
tahtoo mennä soutelemaan	he wants to go rowing

Note the forms *katsomaan* 'to see', *tanssimaan* 'to dance', *soutelemaan* 'rowing' or 'to row'. The suffix *-ma* follows, as always, the vowel stem, *katso-* (from *katsoa* 'to look at'), *tanssi-* (from *tanssia* 'to dance'), *soutele-* (from *soudella* 'to be rowing'). When it is followed by the case suffix -(*h*)*xn* (see unit 15, pages 252-3), the general meaning is literally or figuratively motion to perform an action, or 'with the purpose of . . .-ing'. Note these further examples:

menen kertomaan siitä hänelle	I'm going to tell him about it
pyysin häntä minua auttamaan	I asked him to help me

menisin korjaamaan hänen hellansa, jos . . .	I'd go to repair his stove, if . . .

Certain other case suffixes, such as *-sta*, *-lla*, *-lta* will also occur following the *-ma* suffix, but you have as yet no examples of these.

kuolema	death

The suffix *-ma*, when added to certain verbs, such as *kuolla* 'to die' (*kuole-*), will turn the verb into a noun. Thus, *sanoa* 'to tell', *sanoma* 'report' or 'speaking'.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all English. This is individual study.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. What Would You Say?

I. With the vocabulary that you have, you should be able to answer questions on a general subject without expecting to find the exact answer in the *Basic Sentences*. The Guide or the group as a whole should check to determine whether or not your answer makes sense. Prepare *orally* answers to the following:

1. *Monesko päivä on tänään?*
2. *Tiedättekö te onko Suomessa talvella paljon lunta?*
3. *Kuunteletteko te radiota joka ilta?*
4. *Pidättekö te näytelmistä tai konserteista?*
5. *Onko Amerikassa vuokratalojen ovissa nimikilvet tai ovinumerot?*
6. *Tiedättekö te kuinka monta sotilasta on amerikkalaisessa armeijassa?*

7. *Minä on teidän lempi-toimenne?*
8. *Osaatteko te tarkalleen sanoa, missä kotinne on kartalla?*
9. *pitääkö valtio teistä huolen Amerikassa?*
10. *Mitä viljalajeja, Amerikassa, viljellään?*

II. Substitute the appropriate forms for the stem forms in parentheses below.

1. *Kävin eilen (katso-) kaupunkia.*
2. *Menimme myöhemmin ravintolaan (tanssi-).*
3. *Kun lähdimme ravintolasta menimme (syö-).*
4. *Tulin (kirjotta-) pitkän kirjeen.*
5. *He menivät (keskustel-, keskustele-) asiasta.*
6. *(Luul-, luule-) autoni on hyvässä kunnossa.*
7. *(Tek-, teke-) tämän oikein, sinun täytyy auttaa minua.*
8. *Hän tuli (esitele-, esitel-) minut tälle miehelle.*
9. *Tulin (pyytä-) liian paljon.*
10. *Tulin (saa-) paljon rahaa tuosta työstä.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

I. Postitoimistossa maalla.

Postineiti

No, hyvää päivää emäntä.

Mitä teille kuuluu?

Tehän saitte eilen kirjeen Amerikasta.

Mitä se teidän Yrjönne kertoo sieltä?

Emäntä

Yrjö sanoo, että hän on muuttanut asumaan Indianan valtioon.

Sen pitäisi olla keski-lännessä.

Postineiti

Joko Yrjöllä on perhettä?

Hänhän on ollut niin kauan naimisissa.

Emäntä

Tässä kirjeessä hän juuri kertoo, että hänellä on vuoden vanha poika.

He ovat antaneet sille suomalaisen nimenkin Lauri Kalervo.

Heillä on nyt oma maatilansa ja he tulevat toimeen oikein hyvin.

Postineiti

Aikooko Yrjö tulla pian kotona käymään?

Siitähän on pitkä aika kun hän viimeksi kävi Suomessa.

Emäntä

Kyllä Yrjö haluaisi tulla, mutta matka on pitkä ja kallis.

Minä tässä juuri haluaisin panna postiin hänelle kirjeen.

Kuinka paljon siihen menee postimerkkejä?

Postineiti

Tahdotteko lähettää hänen kirjeensä lentopostissa?

Se minisi sinne kahdeksassa päivässä.

Ja maksaa noin yksitoista markkaa.

Emäntä

No, pannaan se sitten lentopostissa.

Yrjö sanoi että hän on lähettänyt meille paketinkin, mutta se kai saapuu myöhemmin.

Postineiti

Kyllä minä soitan teille heti, kun se tulee perille.

Ja tässä on teidän tämän päivän postinne.

Emäntä

Kiitoksia paljon.

II. Johtaja Vuori keskustelee tohtori Heinon kanssa ulkomaan matkastaan.

Tohtori Heino

Sinähän olit ulkomailla viime kesänä!

Missä sinä kävit?

Johtaja Vuori

Minä kävin Ruotsissa, Tanskassa, Saksassa ja Ranskassa.

Tohtori Heino

Menitkö sinä laivalla?

Johtaja Vuori

Menin lentokoneella[9] *Tukholmaan ja sieltä laivalla Saksaan.*

Tohtori Heino

Kuinka pitkä on junamatka Ranskan rajalle?

Johtaja Vuori

Yhden yön ja päivän. Saavuin Parisiin aamulla.

Tohtori Heino

Ranskastako sinä ostit autosi?

Johtaja Vuori

Kyllä, ja ajoin koko matkan takaisin kotiin.

Se tuli hyvin halvaksi, sillä autoni ei syö paljoa bensiiniä.

Tohtori Heino

Arvasin sen.

Varmaankin pidit kotimatkastasi.

Johtaja Vuori

Olet aivan oikeassa.

Näin niin paljon enemmän näistä maista, kun tulin takaisin, kun matkallani sinne.

Tohtori Heino

Minäkin haluaisin kerran tehdä sen matkan.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish of the Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

---

[9] *Lentokone* 'airplane'; literally, *lento* 'flight', *kone* 'machine'.

3. Conversation

1. Two soldiers have just received a package in the mails. They open it and see it is from home, with a lot of food-stuffs inside, candy, tobacco, cigarettes, a pipe, and so forth. Beneath a bit of cloth they find—some whiskey.
2. A gentleman expects a phone call from his son, who is abroad, and discusses with a friend what his son is doing in the foreign country (he has entered the ski races on behalf of his own country). The father points out on a map the places his son has visited. Instead of a phone call, finally, a telegram comes, asking the father to meet him at the station tonight at quarter past seven by car, because he's bringing home a big package for his mother. The father decides to stop off on the way to the station to buy some tickets at the theatre.
3. *A* asks a stranger in the street to direct him to the post office. The other gives him the address, explaining its position in relation to some well known building. *A* finally finds the place, goes in, and buys a number of stamps. He also sends a telegram home, thanking his parents for a package he has just received.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Review

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

Finder List

ajatella	to think
arvo	value
arvoinen	worth
eri	different
iloinen	happy *or* glad
jakso	part
ja niin edespäin (j.n.e.)	and so forth (etc.)
jatkaa	to continue
kaavake	form *or* blank
kaikkine	with all
keltainen	yellow
kertoa	to tell

keskustella	to converse
kirje	letter
koota	to collect
kuitenkin	anyway
kuori	cover
kylläkai	perhaps
kääntää	to forward *or* to turn *or* to translate
lentokone	airplane
lentoposti	air mail
luettelo	directory
luku	chapter
lähellä	near
lähettäjä	sender
lähettäminen	sending
-ma	verb suffix
niin . . . kuin	as well as
olla perillä	to reach one's destination
osa	section
osoite	address
paketti	package
peruslause	basic sentence
postimerkki	stamp
raja	border
selvä	clear
sininen	blue
sisältö	contents
sisäänkirjoitettu	registered
sähköttää	to wire
Tanska	Denmark
tapaus	case
-ta(')	verb suffix
toimisto	office
Tukholma	Stockholm
täyttää	to fill out
ulkomaa	foreign country *or* abroad
vakuuttaa	to insure *or* to assure
varsin	especially
vastaanottaja	receiver
viedä	to take
viimeistään	at the latest
virkailija	clerk
yksityiskohtineen	with particulars
ylittää	to cross

LUKU 20

PANKISSA

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

Sotilas puhuu hotellinomistajan kanssa.

ENGLANNIKSI	SUOMEKSI
	Sotilas
Please give me my bill.	*Olkaa hyvä, antakaa minulle laskuni.*
	Hotellinomistaja
What's your name, please?	*Mikä on teidän nimenne?*
	Sotilas
Frank Miller.	*Frank Miller.*
My room number is thirty-nine.	*Huoneeni numero on kolmekymmentäyhdeksän.*
key	*avain*
Here's my key.	*Tässä on avaimeni.*
	Hotellinomistaja
to remember	*muistaa*
I remember now, you came two weeks ago.	*Nyt minä muistan, te tulitte kaksi viikkoa sitten.*

satisfied	*tyytyväinen*
service	*palvelus*
I hope you're satisfied with the service.	*Toivon että olette tyytyväinen palvelukseen.*
	Sotilas
Yes, I'm well satisfied.	*Kyllä, olen hyvin tyytyväinen.*
reasonable	*kohtuullinen*
Your prices are very reasonable.	*Hintanne ovat hyvin kohtuulliset.*
first class *or* first rate	*ensiluokkainen*
And your restaurant is first class.	*Ja ravintolanne ensiluokkainen.*
to regret *or* to be sorry	*olla pahoillansa*
with	*mukana*
I'm sorry I haven't enough money on me.	*Olen pahoillani, että minulla ei ole tarpeeksi rahaa mukanani.*
to accept	*hyväksyä*
check	*sekki*
Will you accept a check?	*Hyväksyttekö te sekin?*
	Hotellinomistaja
to be afraid	*peljätä*
impossible	*mahdoton*
I'm afraid that's impossible.	*Pelkään, että se on mahdotonta.*
I can't accept it because we don't know you.	*En voi hyväksyä sitä, sillä emme tunne teitä.*
	Sotilas
Well, where's the nearest bank?	*Missä on lähin pankki?*

	Hotellinomistaja
It's two blocks to the right from here.	*Se on kaksi kadunkulmaa oikealle tästä.*
Opposite that co-operative store.	*Vastapäätä tuota osuusliikettä.*
	Sotilas
I'll be back in a quarter of an hour.	*Palaan neljännestunnissa.*
servant	*palvelija*
Have the porter bring my suitcases down in the meantime.	*Antakaa palvelijan tuoda minun laukkuni alas sillä aikaa.*
	Kadulla
	Sotilas
Excuse me, I'm a stranger in town.	*Anteeksi, olen vieras kaupungissa.*
I'd like to know where the bank is.	*Haluaisin tietää, missä on pankki.*
to get lost	*eksyä*
I lost my way.	*Eksyin matkalla.*
to advise	*neuvoa*
Could you direct me?	*Voitteko te neuvoa minua?*
	Poliisi[1]
wrong	*väärä*
direction	*suunta*
You're walking in the wrong direction.	*Olette menossa väärään suuntaan.*

---

[1] *Poliisi* 'police' or 'policeman'.

to turn	*kääntyä*
Turn back and walk two blocks to the left and then two more to the right.	*Kääntykää takaisin ja kävelkää kaksi kadunkulmaa vasemmalle ja sitten toiset kaksi oikealle.*
	Sotilas
Thank you very much.	*Kiitoksia paljon.*
	Poliisi
You're welcome.	*Ei ansaitse.*
	Pankissa
	Sotilas
to change	*vaihtaa*
I'd like to cash this check.	*Haluaisin vaihtaa tämän sekin.*
	Kassaneiti
account	*tili*
Do you have an account with us?	*Onko teillä tili täällä?*
	Sotilas
No, I don't.	*Ei minulla ole.*
	Kassaneiti
to prove	*todistaa*
identification	*henkilöllisyys*
Can you identify yourself?	*Voitteko todistaa henkilöllisyytenne?*

	Sotilas
natural	*luonnollinen*
Naturally!	*Luonnollisesti!*
to address *or* to point	*osoittaa*
Here is a letter addressed to me.	*Tässä on minulle osoitettu kirje.*
cross	*risti*
It's from the American Red Cross.	*Se on Amerikan punaiselta ristiltä.*
	Kassaneiti
card	*kortti*
photograph	*valokuva*
We can only accept an identification card with a photo on it.	*Voimme vain hyväksyä henkilöllisyyskortin valokuvan kanssa.*
that kind	*sellainen*
Have you got one?	*Onko teillä sellaista?*
	Sotilas
I think so.	*Luulen, että minulla on.*
official	*virallinen*
company	*komppania*
commander	*päällikkö*
I have an official card from my company commander.	*Minulla on virallinen kortti komppaniani päälliköltä.*
	Kassaneiti
That's good.	*Se on hyvä.*

	Sotilas
to hurry	*kiiruhtaa*
I must hurry up; I see lots of people are waiting.	*Minun täytyy kiiruhtaa sillä näen paljon ihmisiä odottamassa.*
	Kassaneiti
hurry	*kiire*
Take your time, sir.	*Ei ole kiirettä, herra.*
	Sotilas
to find	*löytää*
I can't find it now.	*En löydä sitä nyt.*
ahead *or* before	*edellä*
Excuse me perhaps you'd care to step ahead.	*Anteeksi mutta ehkä te haluatte mennä edellä.*
	Rouva
polite	*kohtelias*
Thank you, young man, for being so polite to an old lady.	*Kiitos nuori mies, kun olette niin kohtelias vanhalle rouvalle.*
I notice you're with the U.S. Army.	*Huomaan, että kuulutte Yhdysvaltain armeijaan.*
branch	*osasto*
What branch are you with?	*Missä osastossa te olette?*
	Sotilas
infantry	*jalkaväki*
I'm in the infantry.	*Olen jalkaväessä.*

	Rouva
face	*kasvot*
Why's your face so red?	*Miksi teidän kasvonne ovat niin punaiset?*
Is there something wrong?	*Onko jotain väärin?*
	Sotilas
to lose	*hukata*
I've lost my identification card.	*Olen hukannut henkilöllisyyskorttini.*
Now I can't cash my check.	*Nyt en voi vaihtaa sekkiäni.*
If I don't get the money, I can't pay my hotel bill.	*Jos en saa rahaa en voi myöskään maksaa laskuani hotellissa.*
to report	*ilmoittautua*
barracks	*parakki*
I have to report at the barracks at five-thirty.	*Minun täytyy ilmoittautua kello puoli kuusi parakissa.*
	Rouva
How much is involved?	*Kuinka paljon on kysymyksessä?*
	Sotilas
Only three hundred marks.	*Vain kolmesataa markkaa.*
	Rouva
Give me the check.	*Antakaa minulle se sekki.*
to sign	*allekirjoittaa*
I'll be glad to sign it.	*Allekirjoitan sen mielelläni.*

I'm known here.	*Olen tunnettu täällä.*
Please cash it.	*Olkaa hyvä ja vaihtakaa.*
	Kassaneiti
Surely, madam.	*Kyllä, rouva.*
	Rouva
to forget	*unohtaa*
who *or* which	*joka*
I also have a son in the army who forgets everything.	*Minulla on myöskin poika armeijassa, joka aina unohtaa kaiken.*
	Takaisin hotellissa
	Sotilas
I've come back.	*Olen tullut takaisin.*
to owe	*olla velkaa*
How much do I owe you?	*Kuinka paljon olen velkaa?*
	Hotellinomistaja
Three hundred and fifty.	*Kolmesataaviisikymmentä markkaa.*
to write	*kirjoittaa*
receipt	*kuitti*
I'll write you a receipt.	*Kirjoitan teille kuitin.*

	Sotilas
No, you're mistaken.	*Ei, te erehdytte.*
only	*ainoastaan*
I pay for the room only.	*Maksan ainoastaan huoneesta.*
The U.S. Government will pay for the food.	*Yhdysvaltain valtio maksaa ruoan.*

Check Your Pronunciation

How to pronounce the word 'sekki': This word has two pronunciations, and you should use whichever your Guide uses. The alternative pronunciation is as if it were spelled *shekki*, the *sh* being similar to the *sh* of English *she.*

Practice 56

sekki	check

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

Review carefully the *Word Study* sections of units 2, 3, 4 and 5.

Comment One—Pronouns

A pronoun is the sort of word discussed in unit 14, pages 238-9 (*Comments Three* and *Four*). There are other sorts of pronouns in Finnish, as discussed below:

a. *toinen* 'the other'.

Pidättekö te toisistanne? *Pidättekö te toinen toisestanne?*	Do you like each other?
Me kysyimme toisiltamme neuvoa. *Me kysyimme toinen toiseltamme neuvoa.*	We asked each other's advice.

Luuletteko, että voitte auttaa toisianne? *Luuletteko, että voitte auttaa toinen toistanne?*	Do you think that you can help each other?

Note how you say 'each other' or 'one another' in Finnish. There are two ways actually, and your Guides will usually prefer one or the other way. The first sentence in each of the above groups has the pronoun ***toinen*** in the plural, with a case suffix and a possessive suffix: stems *toise-*, *tois-*, plus *-i-* plural sign—*toisi-*, followed by *-sta-*, *-lta-* or *-(t)a-*, followed by *-nne*, *-mme*, and so forth. The second sentence in each of the above groups has the pronoun *toinen* twice; the first is in its free form, *toinen*, the second is with a case suffix and a possessive suffix, but in the singular: note the absence of the *-i-* and the corresponding differences. Note this additional example: *he eivät ymmärrä toisiaan* 'they don't understand one another'; also *he eivät ymmärrä toinen toistaan*. The form *toistaan* is a common way of saying *toistansa* (that is, *tois-ta-nsa*); the corresponding plural is *toisiaan*, a common way of saying *toisiansa* (that is, *tois-i-(t)a-nsa*).

b. *tämä* 'this'; *tuo* 'that'; *se* 'it, that'.

Most case suffixes are added in the singular to the stems *tä-*, *tuo-*, and *si-* respectively, as *tätä*, *tuota*, *sitä*, and so forth, but you must learn the following exceptions.

The various *-n* suffixes form *tämän* and *sen*.

The suffix *-ssa* cannot be added to *se*. Instead you must use *siinä* 'inside it'.

The suffix *-sta* cannot be added to *se*. Instead you must use *siitä* 'from it'.

The suffix *-(h)xn* cannot be added to *se*. Instead you must use *siihen* 'into it'.

The plural forms of these pronouns are *nämä* or *nämät* 'these', *nuo* or *nuot* 'those', and *ne* 'they, those', respectively. All case suffixes are added in the plural to the stems *näi-*, *noi-*, *nii-*, as *näitä*, *noita*, *niitä*, and so forth.

c. *kuka*, *ken* 'who'; *mikä* 'what, which'.

Forms of but one syllable generally take the *-ka* suffix; thus, the case with the *-n* suffix of *mikä* (stem *mi-*) will be *minkä* 'what' or 'of what', and the plural of the free form will be *mitkä*.

In the speech of your Guides, the most frequent forms of *kuka* (stem *ku-*) 'who' are *kuka* 'who' in the singular, *kutka* 'who' (and 'whom') in the plural. Although other case suffixes may be added to the stem *ku-*, generally forms of *ken* (stem *kene-*) 'who' are substituted. Thus, *ketä* with the *-(t)a* suffix, *kenet* 'whom', *kenessä* 'inside whom', and so forth.

d. *joka* 'which, who'.

Forms of but one syllable take the *-ka* suffix; thus *jonka* 'of which', *joiden* or *joitten* 'of which' (plural), and so forth.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

Translate the words in parentheses into Finnish and fit them into their respective sentences.

1. *Onko täällä* (anybody who) *puhuu suomea?*
2. (This) *on* (that) *talo* (in which) *asun.*
3. (These) *ovat* (the) *pojat* (which) *olivat eilen elokuvissa.*
4. *Kaksi miestä meni ravintolaan* (of whom) *toinen tuli heti pois.*
5. (For whom) *sinä ostit* (that) *kellon lahjaksi.*
6. (Whom) *haluaisit tutustua?*
7. (For whom) *luulit minua?*
8. (Of whom) *kaikilta sinä kysyit neuvoa?*
9. (About whom) *te puhuitte nyt juuri?*
10. (Who) *aikovat mennä konserttiin Yliopiston juhlasaliin tänään?*
11. (That) *miehellä ei ole koskaan rahaa.*
12. (That) *nainen tietää mitä tahtoo.*

13. *En pidä yhtään* (that) *ajatuksesta.*
14. *Olen velkaa yhdeksänkymmentä markkaa* (to that) *miehelle* (whom) *näet tuolla.*
15. *Tulin luulleeksi sinua* (for that) *mieheksi.*
16. (That) *päivänä* (on which) *lomani alkoi lähdin ulkomaille.*
17. *Toverini* (whom) *näin viimeksi kolme vuotta sitten kuoli tiistaina.*
18. *Minäkin haluan* (that) *samaa lajia jos teillä vielä* on (it).
19. (Who) *kertoi sinulle* (about this) *asiasta?*
20. (Of these) *talojen hevoset ovat parhaita työhevosia.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Mitä te sanoitte?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercise as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

I. Mitä sinulla olisi jos et polttaisi.

Herra A—Kuinka monta laatikkoa savukkeita sinä poltat päivässä?

Herra B—Noin kolme laatikkoa päivässä.

Herra A—Kuinka paljon ne maksavat?

Herra B—Kahdeksan markkaa laatikko.

Herra A—Taivas, se on kaksikymmentäneljä markkaa päivässä. Kuinka kauan olet polttanut?

Herra B—Kolmekymmentä vuotta.

Herra A—Kaksikymmentäneljä markkaa päivässä kolmenkymmenen vuoden ajalla. Se on paljon rahaa.

Herra B—Kyllä hyvin paljon.

Herra A—Näetkö tuon suuren ja kauniin konttorirakennuksen tuolla kadunkulmassa?

Herra B—Kyllä, mitä sitten?

Herra A—Jos et polttaisi, niin nyt voisit olla tuon rakennuksen omistaja.

Herra B—Poltatko sinä?

Herra A—Ei, en ole koskaan polttanut.

Herra B—Oletko sinä tuon konttorirakennuksen omistaja?

Herra A—En ole.

Herra B—Mutta minäpä olen.

II. Pankissa.

Eräänä päivänä kaunis nuori rouva meni pankkiin ja sanoi pankkivirkailijalle:

—Haluan vihtaa tämän sekin.

—Kyllä rouva (sanoi apulainen) olkaa hyvä ja allekirjoittakaa se.

—Miksi, minun mieheni lähetti sen minulle, ja nyt hän on matkalla Helsinkiin.

—Mutta rouva, olkaa hyvä ja allekirjoittakaa se. Kirjoittakaa nimenne siihen, niin teidän miehenne tietää, että olemme antaneet teille rahan.

Rouva allekirjoitti sekin:

—Sinun lempivaimosi Sirkka.

III. Suuri Juomaraha.

Mies on ravintolassa toverinsa kanssa. Tarjoilijatar tuo hänen takkinsa ja hän antaa tarjoilijattarelle viisikymmentä markkaa juomarahaa. Hänen toverinsa huomaa tämän ja sanoo:

—Viisikymmentä markkaa on aivan liian paljon, neljä tai viisi markkaa olisi ollut tarpeeksi.

Hänen toverinsa vastaa[2]*:*

—Mutta katso tätä takkia. Se on sadan markan arvoinen.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

---

[2] *Vastata* 'to answer'.

3. Conversation

1. *A* and his wife discuss the hotel which they are about to leave. *A* says that he was not satisfied with the service, and Mrs. *A* feels that the bill is large enough for them to have received food in the restaurant. They decide to leave without giving tips to the servants.
2. *A* wants to cash a check in a strange town. He addresses *B*, asking for information, and gets full directions: the bank is to the right, about four streets away, opposite a big department store, right next to the post office. *A* goes there, but cannot have his check (which is drawn on a Swedish bank) cashed, unless a depositor countersigns. He identifies himself, but to no avail. *A* gets mad, says he's in a hurry: he must cash the check or miss his train; he threatens to call the police. The bank clerk is very courteous, but says she can't help him, and *A* finally leaves, somewhat pacified.
3. A father tells his son, who is about to go on a trip, what he must *not* do while travelling. For example, he must not leave hotels without paying his bills, he must not forget to write home his address or to put stamps on his letters, he must not make acquaintance with strangers, and so on. The son is getting tired of all these admonitions and tells his father not to always tell him what to do and what not to do.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Review

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

Finder List

alekirjoittaa	to sign
ainoastaan	only
avain	key
edellä	ahead *or* before
eksyä	to get lost
ensiluokkainen	first class *or* first rate

henkilöllisyys	identification
hukata	to lose
hyväksyä	to accept
ilmoittautua	to report
jalkaväki	infantry
okaj	which *or* who
kasvot	face
kiire	hurry
kiiruhtaa	to hurry
kirjoittaa	to write
kohtelias	polite
kohtuullinen	reasonable
komppania	company
kortti	card
kuitti	receipt
kääntyä	to turn
luonnollinen	natural
löytää	to find
mahdoton	impossible
muistaa	to remember
mukana	with
neuvoa	to advise
olla paheilla	to regret *or* to be sorry
olla valkaa	to owe
osaste	branch
osoittaa	to address *or* to point
palvelija	servant
palvelus	service
parakki	barracks
peljätä	to be afraid
poliisi	policeman
päällikkö	commander
risti	cross
sekki	check
sellainen	that kind
suunta	direction
tili	account
todistaa	to prove
tyytyväinen	satisfied
unohtaa	to forget
vaihtaa	to change
valokuva	photo
vastata	to answer
virallinen	official
väärä	wrong

LUKU 21

SAIRAALASSA[1]

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

Tohtori Lahti ja sairaanhoitajatar[2] Aino Joki ovat katsomassa potilaita[3] sotilassairaalassa ja menevät vuoteelta[4] vuoteelle.

ENGLANNIKSI	SUOMEKSI
Tohtori Lahti	
Miss Joki, what's the trouble with the patient here on the right?	*Neiti Joki, mikä tätä potilasta vaivaa tässä oikealla?*
Sairaanhoitajatar Joki	
leg	*sääri*
private first class	*korpraali*
He broke his leg in the army ski races; didn't you, Corporal Laine?	*Hän katkaisi säärensä armeijan hiihtokilpailuissa, eiko niin korpraali Laine?*

---

[1] *Sairaala* 'hospital'.

[2] *Sairanhoitaja* 'nurse'.

[3] *Potilas* 'patient'.

[4] *Vuode* 'bed'.

Korpraali Laine

to happen	*tapahtua*
That's how it happened.	*Niinhän se tapahtui.*

Tohtori Lahti

to hurt	*koskea*
Does it still hurt much?	*Vieläkö se koskee kovasti?*

Korpraali Laine

anymore	*enää*
No, it doesn't hurt much any more.	*Ei se koske enää paljoa.*

Tohtori Lahti

That's good.	*Se on hyvä.*
But I do think that you'll have to stay in the hospital a couple of weeks longer.	*Mutta luulen että teidän täytyy olla sairaalassa vielä pari viikkoa.*

Korpraali Laine

to matter *or* to mean	*merkitä*
It doesn't matter, if only my leg will be all right.	*Se ei merkitse mitään jos vaan säärestäni tulee hyvä.*

Tohteri Lahti

don't worry	*älkää huolehtiko*
Don't worry; it certainly will be all right.	*Älkää huolehtiko, siitä tulee varmasti hyvä.*
You'll still ski with it, too.	*Kyllä sillä vielä hiihdetään.*

sergeant major	*vääpeli*
And here's Sergeant Leino.	*Ja täällähän on vääpeli Leino.*
bandage	*side*
wound	*haava*
to heal *or* to get well	*parantua*
Miss Joki, let's take off the bandage so we can see how the wound has healed.	*Neiti Joki, otetaanpa pois tuo side, että näemme kuinka haava on parantunut.*
	Vääpeli Leino
arm	*käsivarsi*
to feel	*tuntua*
My arm feels very good now.	*Käsivarteni tuntuu oikein hyvältä nyt.*
Do you think I can go home soon, Doctor?	*Luuleeko tohtori, että saan pian mennä kotiin.?*
	Tohtori Lahti
You can go home within a very few days.	*Saatte lähteä aivan näinä päivinä.*
What's the hurry to get home now?	*Mikä kiire teillä sinne kotiin nyt on?*
Aren't you satisfied here?	*Ettekö ole tyytyväinen täällä?*
	Vääpeli Leino
Sure, it's fine here; but there's plenty of work waiting at home.	*Kyllä täällä hyvä on olla, mutta kotona on paljon töitä odottamassa.*
	Tohtori Lahti
I understand.	*Minä ymmärrän.*

Sairaanhoitajatar Joki

private	*sotamies*
Doctor, here is Private Aho.	*Tohtori, tässä on sotamies Aho.*
lung	*keuhko*
fever	*kuume*
high	*korkea*
chart *or* list	*lista*
He has pneumonia and the fever is high, as you can see on the chart.	*Hänellä on keuhkokuume ja kuume on korkea, kuten näette kuumelistasta.*

Tohtori Lahti

to seem	*näkyä*
So it seems.	*Niin näkyy.*
Did you get some sleep last night, Private Aho?	*Voitteko te nukkua viime yönä, sotamies Aho?*

Sotamies Aho

a little	*vähän*
sleep *or* dream	*uni*
No, but the night nurse gave me some sleeping medicine and then I slept better.	*En, mutta yöhoitajatar antoi minulle vähän unilääkettä, ja sitten nukuin paremmin.*

Tohtori Lahti

Good.	*Hyvä on.*
You'll get some sleeping medicine for tonight, too.	*Saatte unilääkettä myös ensi yöksi.*

	Sotamies Aho
Thank you, Doctor.	*Kiitos tohtori.*
	Tohtori Lahti
sergeant	*kersantti*
How are you today, Sergeant?	*Kuinka te voitte tänään kersantti?*
	Kersantti
Very well, thanks, Doctor.	*Kiitos, oikein hyvin, tohtori.*
	Tohtori Lahti
to ache *or* to hurt	*särkeä*
Does your foot still ache?	*Särkeekö jalkaanne vielä?*
	Kersantti
at all	*yhtään*
No, scarcely at all.	*Ei juuri yhtään.*
	Tohtori Lahti
war	*sota*
front	*rintama*
You were on the front in the last war, weren't you?	*Tehän olitte myöskin viime sodassa rintamalla.*
to get wounded	*haavoittua*
bad	*paha*
Did you get wounded very badly then?	*Haavoituitteko hyvin pahasti silloin?*

	Kersantti
Yes, I did.	*Haavoituin kyllä.*
scar	*arpi*
You see the scars on my face.	*Näettehän arvet kasvoissani.*
eye	*silmä*
to lose	*menettää*
I was afraid I'd lose my eyes.	*Pelkäsin, että menettäisin silmäni.*
	Tohtori Lahti
Indeed!	*Todellakin!*
Miss Joki, let's go see our lieutenant now.	*Neiti Joki, mennäänpä nyt katsomaan luutnanttiamme.*
serious	*vakava*
There we have a serious case.	*Siinä meillä on vakava tapaus.*
horrible	*kamala*
accident	*onnettomuus*
It was a horrible accident.	*Se oli kamala onnettomuus.*
	Sairaanhoitajatar
wonderful	*ihmeellinen*
to live	*elää*
It certainly is a miracle that he still lives.	*On todella ihmeellinen asia että hän elää vielä.*
unconscious	*tajuton*
He was unconscious for a long time.	*Hänhän oli tajuttomana niin hauan.*

	Tohtori Lahti
Well, Lieutenant, what's new today?	*No luutnantti, kuuluuko mitään uutta tänään?*
	Luutnantti
mouth	*suu*
dry	*kuiva*
My mouth is very dry.	*Suuni on niin kuiva.*
Could I have a little water?	*Saisinko vähän vettä?*
	Tohtori Lahti
Of course.	*Tietysti.*
Does it hurt very much when you turn your head?	*Koskeeko kovin kun käännätte päätänne?*
	Luutnantti
Yes, it does.	*Kyllä se koskee.*
to get injured	*loukkaantua*
nose	*nenä*
Did my nose get badly injured?	*Loukkaantuiko nenäni pahasti?*
tooth	*hammas*
And how many teeth did I lose?	*Ja kuinka monta hammasta menetin?*
	Tohtori Lahti
Just one.	*Vain yhden.*
I'm sure that when we take off the bandage your face will be quite healed.	*Olen varma että kun otamme siteen pois, kasvonne ovat aivan parantuneet.*

	Luutnantti
I'm glad of that.	*Olen iloinen siitä.*
My wife was afraid I'd have a bad scar on my nose.	*Vaimoni pelkäsi, että saisin nenääni pahan arven.*
	Tohtori Lahti
as . . . as	*yhtä . . . kuin*
You can tell your wife you'll be just as beautiful as before.	*Voitte sanoa vaimollenne että tulette olemaan aivan yhtä kaunis kuin ennenkin.*
morphine injection	*morfiiniruiske*
I'll give you a morphine shot now.	*Annan teille nyt morfiiniruiskeen.*
It should take your pain away.	*Sen pitäisi ottaa pois särkynne.*
Do you remember at all, Lieutenant, how the accident happened?	*Muistatteko yhtään, luutnantti, kuinka onnettomuus tapahtui?*
	Luutnantti
fault *or* defect	*vika*
I remember only that the machine went out of order and I couldn't do anything with it.	*Muistan vain, että koneeseen tuli vika, enkä voinut tehdä sille mitään.*
	Sairaanhoitajatar
Your officer friends have called every day to ask how you are.	*Upseeritoverinne ovat soittaneet joka päivä ja kysyneet miten voitte.*
	Luutnantti
They're nice guys.	*He ovat reiluja poikia.*

	Tohtori Lahti
Well, I must hurry now.	*No niin, minun täytyy kiiruhtaa.*
Maybe the company commander is waiting already.	*Komppanian päällikkö jo ehkä odottaa.*
	Sairaanhoitajatar
He's ready to leave for home.	*Hän on jo valmis lähtemään kotiin.*
major	*majuri*
up	*ylhäällä*
How does it feel to be up again, Major?	*No, miltä tuntuu olla ylhäällä taas, majuri?*
	Majuri
Good, thank you.	*Hyvältä kiitos.*
I have to go and pay my bill in the office.	*Minun täytyy vielä käydä maksamassa laskuni konttorissa.*
Do you think they'll accept my check?	*Luuletteko, että he hyväksyvät sekkini siellä?*
	Tohtori Lahti
Sure.	*Aivan varmasti.*

OSA B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study

Review carefully the *Word Study* sections of units 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11.

Comment One—Negative Order

älä(') anna(')	don't give

To give a negative order to a single person (or in familiar form) you must use the order giving form of the negative verb, which is *älä*(') (or, as some people say, *elä*(')), followed by the verb of action in its vowel stem form ending in '. Thus, *älä*(') *pane*(') 'don't put', and so forth (see unit 8, pages 139-40 for the pronunciation).

älkää huolehtiko	don't worry

Now note how you give a negative order to more than one person not including yourself (or in a formal way). You must use *älkää* (or, as some people say, *elkää*), followed by the verb of action (*huolehtia* 'to worry', stem *huolehti-*) bearing the suffix *-ko*. Thus, *älkää kävelkö* 'don't walk', *älkää istuko siellä* 'don't sit there'.

ei anneta(')	one doesn't give

Note how to say 'one doesn't'. You must use *ei*, followed by the verb of action with the suffix -(*t*)*ta*(') (hence *anta-* to *anna-* to *annetta-* to *anneta*(') through a series of regular automatic changes).

Comment Two—Negative Expression

ei koskaan	never	*ei kukaan*	nobody
ei yksikään	no one	*ei mitään*	nothing
ei yhtään	none	*ei sittenkään*	not even then
ei ennenkuin	not until		

Learn these expressions.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

OSA C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second half of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences.* This is individual study.

3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

These sentences order someone to do something. Change each so that they forbid someone to do the same thing (that is, change the verb to negative).

1. *Tuo kenkäni suutarista.*
2. *Kiiruhtakaa asemalle.*
3. *Asu meillä.*
4. *Siirrä jalkasi pois pöydältä.*
5. *Varaa minulle lippu huomiseksi.*
6. *Ilmoittautukaa torstaina yhdeltätoista.*
7. *Viljelkää sellaista ohraa kuin minä viljelen.*
8. *Tehkää kuten sanon.*
9. *Sulje ovi, täällä on kylmä.*
10. *Ehdottakaa jotain hauskempaa.*
11. *Neuvo lapsiasi.*
12. *Keittäkää minulle kahvia.*
13. *Prässäyttäkää housunne täällä!*
14. *Erehdy tekemään se.*
15. *Vakuuttakaa matkatavaranne ennenkuin lähdette matkalle.*
16. *Tutustu häneen ja sinulla on hauskaa.*
17. *Kuuntele tarkemmin.*
18. *Näyttäkää minulle mitä te teitte eilen.*
19. *Kysykää häneltä kysymyksiä.*
20. *Hyväksykää tämä sekki.*

OSA D—LISTENING IN

1. Mitä te sanoitte?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercise as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

I. Sairaalassa.

Nuori mies on ollut potilaana sairaalassa pari viikkoa ja kaunis nuori sairaanhoitajatar on pitänyt hyvää huolta hänestä.

—Sairaanhoitajatar (hän sanoo) en halua parantua enkä mennä kotiin, sillä haluan olla täällä hyvin kauan, pidän teistä niin paljon!

—Te saatte varmasti olla täällä kauan (vastaa hoitajatar) Tohtori pitää minusta myöskin ja hän näki kun piditte minua hyvänä eilen illalla!

II. Lääkärissä.

Potilas—Vaimoni sanoo minulle, että ***puhun unissani.*** *Mitä minun pitäisi tehdä?*

Tohtori—Ei mitään, mitä teidän ei ***pitäisi.***

III. Lääkärissä.

Tohtori—Nyt teidän ei pitäisi juoda ***kahvia.***

Potilas—Minä en koskaan juo sitä.

Tohtori—Ja te ette saa polttaa myöskään.

Potilas—Mutta minähän en polta.

Tohtori—Hm, se on paha. Jos teillä ***ei*** *ole yhtään pahoja tapoja pelkään, etten voi auttaa teitä paljoa.*

IV. Pientä keskustelua.[5]

A—Kävin eilen lääkärissä, jota sinä suosittelit minulle.

B—Kerroitko hänelle, että minä lähetin sinut?

A—Kerroin.

B—Mitä hän sanoi?

A—Hän pyysi minua maksamaan ennenkuin hän teki minulle mitään.

---

[5] *Keskustelu* 'conversation'.

V. Tohtori ja potilas.

—*Tohtori, luuletteko, että voin elää sadan vuoden vanhaksi?*

—*Kuinka vanha te olette nyt?*

—*Olen neljäkymmentä vuotta vanha.*

—*Poltatteko te?*

—*En.*

—*Juotteko te viinaa?*

—*En.*

—*Käyttekö te tanssiravintoloissa?*

—*En.*

—*Pidättekö kilpa-ajoista?*

—*En.*

—*Onko teillä mitään pahoja tapoja?*

—*Ei, minulla ei todellakaan ole mitään pahoja tapoja.*

—*Miksi te sitten haluaisitte elää vielä kuusikymmentä vuotta?*

VI. Hauskaa hammaslääkärissä.

—*Minulla oli hyvin hauskaa käydessäni hammaslääkärissä tänään.*

—*En ymmärrä kuinka sinulla voi olla hauskaa hammaslääkärissä.*

—*Se on totta. Kun menin sisään eräs toinen hammaslääkäri oli juuri korjaamassa minun hammaslääkärini hampaita.*

OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Keskustelua

1. *A* and *B* are in two beds next to each other in the hospital. They strike up a conversation and each finds out where the other comes from, what work he used to do back home (one was a teller in a bank, the other a farmer), where he was wounded and the type of wound he received.

2. A soldier in a hospital bed is trying to date the Red Cross nurse for the time when he will be up. The nurse leads him on a bit, but she accepts the invitation in the end and they make a date.
3. Two soldiers in a hospital have just been operated on and they feel very bad and bitter about everything. They think the food is atrocious and criticize the dishes in detail. Then someone mentions the sergeant, thereby eliciting groans. The conversation turns to various officers of the company to which the two boys belong. The major also was wounded in action. He and the other officers are compared by the men—to the advantage of the major.
4. Tell about your own operation or that of a member of your family.

OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Cont.*)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the Basic Sentences by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Review

Complete check-up on the material of the Word Study and Basic Sentences.

Sanaluettelo

arpi	scar
elää	to live
enää	anymore
haava	wound
haavoittua	to get wounded
hammas	tooth
huolehtia	to worry
ihmeellinen	wonderful
kamala	horrible
kersantti	sergeant
keuhko	lung
keskustelu	conversation
korkea	high
korpraali	private first class
koskea	to hurt
kuiva	dry
kuume	fever
käsivarsi	arm

lista	chart *or* list
loukkaantua	to get injured
majuri	major
menettää	to lose
merkitä	to matter *or* to mean
morfiiniruiske	morphine injection
nenä	nose
näkyä	to seem
onnettomuus	accident
paha	bad
parantua	to heal *or* to get well
potilas	patient
rintama	front
sairaala	hospital
sairaanhoitaja	nurse
side	bandage
silmä	eye
sota	war
sotamies	private
suu	mouth
särkeä	to ache *or* to hurt
sääri	leg
tajuton	unconscious
tapahtua	to happen
tuntua	to feel
uni	sleep *or* dream
vakava	serious
vika	fault *or* defect
vuode	bed
vähän	a little
vääpeli	sergeant major
yhtä . . . kuin	as . . . as
yhtään	at all
ylhäällä	up

LUKU 22

KONTTORISSA

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

Sotilas tulee toimistoon, missä hänen ystävättäresä tekee työtä, ja pyytää häntä ulos kanssansa.

ENGLANNIKSI	SUOMEKSI
Antti	
Hello, honey, are you ready?	*Päivää, kulta, joko olet valmis?*
Sirkka	
You're here already?	*Joko sinä tulit?*
I'm afraid you came too early.	*Pelkään, että tulit liian aikaisin.*
I still have a lot to do.	*Minulla on vielä paljon työtä.*
reading matter	*lukemista*
You'll find something to read on that table.	*Tuolla pöydällä on lukemista.*
to read	*lukea*
Sit down and read some newspapers or those magazines.	*Istu alas ja lue sanomalehtiä tai noita kuvalehtiä.*
Antti	
Okay, but hurry up.	*Hyvä on, mutta kiiruhda.*

suspense	*jännitys*
novel	*romaani*
pocket	*tasku*
I've a very good detective story in my pocket.	*Minulla on oikein hyvä jännitysromaani taskussani.*
book	*kirja*
I'll read my own book.	*Luen omaa kirjaani.*
	Sirkka
paper	*paperi*
Antti, hand me that package of stationery.	*Antti, annapa minulle tuo kirjepaperi paketti.*
	Antti
Here you are.	*Tässä on.*
ink	*muste*
By the way, where's the ink?	*Kesken kaiken missä teillä on mustetta?*
fountain pen	*täytekynä*
I'd like to fill my fountain pen.	*Haluaisin täyttää täytekynäni.*
	Sirkka
black	*musta*
or	*vai*
Do you want black or blue ink?	*Tahdotko mustaa vai sinistä mustetta?*
	Antti
It's all the same.	*Se on samantekevä.*

	(Hän kaataa[1] mustepullon.[2])
God	*Jumala*
Oh, Lord!	*Voi Jumala!*
I'm sorry!	*Olen pahoillani!*
	Sirkka
clumsy	*kömpelö*
Boy, are you clumsy!	*Kyllä sinäkin sitten olet kömpelö!*
to make a mess of	*sotkea*
Did you have to come here to mess up the place?	*Täytyikö sinun tulla tänne sotkemaan paikkoja?*
	Antti
quiet	*hiljaa*
Keep quiet!	*Ole hiljaa!*
I said I was sorry, didn't I?	*Sanoinhan että olen pahoillani.*
on purpose	*tahalla*
Besides, do you think I did it on purpose?	*Sitäpaitsi luuletko että tein sen tahallani?*
towel	*pyyhe*
Please give me some soap and a towel.	*Anna minulle saippuaa ja pyyhe, ole hyvä.*
washroom	*pesuhuone*
Where's your washroom, anyway?	*Missä teidän pesuhuoneenne onkaan?*

---

[1] *Kaataa* 'to spill' *or* 'to turn over'.
[2] *Pullo* 'bottle'.

	Sirkka
corridor	*käytävä*
It's outside in the corridor, to the left of the door.	*Se on ulkopuolella, käytävässä, ovesta vasemmalle.*
	Antti
Okay.	*Hyvä on.*
When'll you be ready?	*Milloin olet valmis?*
opera	*ooppera*
I've tickets for the opera tonight.	*Minulla on meille liput oopperaan täksi illaksi.*
	Sirkka
to get done	*saada tehtyä*
fast	*nopea*
If you keep quiet, I'll get my work done faster.	*Jos olet hiljaa, niin saan työnikin nopeammin tehtyä.*
Get going to the washroom!	*Ja ala nyt jo mennä sinne pesuhuoneeseen.*
	Tuomari[3]
that I have given	*antamani*
Have you finished typing those letters I gave you?	*Joko olette kirjoittaneet koneella teille antamani kirjeet?*
	Sirkka
Yes, sir.	*Kyllä, herra tuomari.*
typewriter	*kirjoituskone*
They're over there on the typewriter desk.	*Ne ovat tuolla kirjoituskonepöydällä.*

---

[3] *Tuomari* 'lawyer' or 'judge'.

signature	*allekirjoitus*
They just need your signature.	*Ne tarvitsevat vain allekirjoituksenne.*
	Tuomari
Hand me a pen.	*Antakaapa minulle täytekynä.*
Have you addressed the envelopes?	*Oletteko jo kirjoittaneet osoitteet kuoriin?*
	Sirkka
Not yet.	*En vielä.*
Today is Saturday.	*Tänään on lauantai.*
I'll send them Monday morning.	*Lähetän ne maanantai-aamuna.*
	Tuomari
to be convenient *or* to fit	*sopia*
That's fine.	*Se sopii hyvin.*
to dictate	*sanella*
I wish you'd take some dictation before you go.	*Haluaisin sanella pari kirjettä ennenkuin menette.*
And would you please write them right away?	*Ja myöskin että kirjoittaisitte ne heti.*
I intend to stay in the office a little later tonight.	*Aijon olla toimistossa vähän myöhempään tänä iltana.*
	Sirkka
but I can't	*mutten* tai *mutta en*
to stay	*jäädä*
overtime	*ylityö*
I'm sorry, but I can't work overtime today.	*Olen pahoillani, mutten voisi jäädä ylitöihin tänään.*
I'm going out with an American soldier.	*Olen menossa ulos erään amerikkalaisen sotilaan kanssa.*

	Tuomari
interesting	*mielenkiintoinen*
How interesting!	*Sepä mielenkiintoista.*
You know, of course, my wife is an American	*Tiedättehän että vaimonikin on amerikkalainen.*
Where are you going?	*Mihin te aijotte mennä?*
	Sirkka
First to the opera, and perhaps later to dance.	*Ensin oopperaan ja ehkä myöhemmin tanssimaan.*
	Tuomari
to leave	*jättää*
In that case, leave those letters till next week, but don't forget them on Monday.	*Siinä tapauksessa jättäkää nuo kirjeet ensi viikkoon, mutta älkää unhoittako niitä maanantaina.*
long distance call	*kaukopuhelu*
I just remembered, I'm expecting a long distance call Monday morning at eight-fifteen.	*Nytpä muistankin että odotan kaukopuhelua neljännestä yli kahdeksan.*
The call might be person to person.	*Ehkä puhelu on henkilöpuhelu, en tiedä.*
I hope you'll be here on time Monday.	*Toivottavasti olette täällä ajoissa maanantaina.*
	Sirkka
general *or* usual	*tavallinen*
I'm not generally late, sir.	*En tavallisesti ole myöhässä, herra tuomari.*
	Tuomari
That's true.	*Se on totta.*

to tease	*kiusata*
I'm just teasing you.	*Kiusaan teitä vain.*
Have a good time.	*Pitäkää hauskaa.*
	Sirkka
Thank you.	*Kiitos.*

(*Antti tulee takaisin huoneeseen.*)

	Antti
In my opinion, you work too hard.	*Minusta sinä teet liian kovasti työtä.*
employer	*työnantaja*
Besides, I don't like your employer.	*Sitäpaitsi en pidä työnantajastasi.*
to give notice	*sanoa itsensä ylös*
Why don't you give notice and marry me?	*Mikset sano itseäsi ylös ja mene kanssani naimisiin?*
	Sirkka
suddenly	*äkkiarvaamatta*
This is so sudden.	*Kylläpä tuo tuli äkkiarvaamatta.*
We've known each other only three years.	*Emmehän ole tunteneet toisiamme kuin kolme vuotta.*

OSA B—SANAOPPIA[4] JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS[5]

1. Sanaoppia

Review carefully the *Word Study* sections of units 13, 14, 15, 16 and 17.

Comment One—Spelling of ä and ö

You've learned that the letters *ä* and *ö* are printed with two dots on top of an *a* and *o*. This is the way the letters appear in print. However, in handwriting they appear usually as *ā* and *ō*.

Comment Two—The Suffix -va

teidän on nähtävä Helsinki kesällä	you must see Helsinki in the summer

Notice the suffix *-va* in *nähtävä*. When [illegible] simple vowel stem, the suffix means ro[illegible]: *antava* 'giving', *tuleva* 'coming', *saava* 'get[illegible]hen the same suffix is added to a verb which has the -(*t*)*ta*(') suffix (for which see unit 17, pages 284-6), as in *nähtävä* (*nähdä* 'to see', stem *näk-*, *nähtä-*), the meaning is usually 'to be done' or 'to be possible'. Thus, *lukea* 'to read', stem *luke-*, plus -(*t*)*ta*('), giving *luetta-*: *luettava* 'that which must be read' or 'readable'. With *on*, as in *on nähtävä*, the *-va* suffix means 'necessity'—'must see'. *On annettava* 'one must give', *on saatava* 'one must get', and so forth.

Comment Three—Ways of Expressing Future Time

minä menen huomenna	I'll go tomorrow

In general, there's no special way to denote future time in Finnish. You just use the present forms, as above.

olen menevä	I'll go

However, future time can be expressed by combining the present tense of *olla* 'to be' with a verb followed by the *-va* suffix.

olin menevä	I was about to go

Note the combination of a form in the past tense of *olla* with a verb followed by the *-va* suffix.

tulen menemään	I'll go

Note the combination of a present form of *tulla* 'to go' with a verb followed by the suffixes *-ma* and -(*h*)*xn*

---

[4] *Oppi* 'study'.

[5] *Jälkikatsaus* 'review'.

(see unit 19, pages 308-9) to express intention of an action in the future. Thus, also, *hän tulee lukemaan kirjeesi* 'he'll read your letter'.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences:*

OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (*Jatkoa*[6])

1. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus (*Jatkoa*)

Further oral practice with the second half of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

I. Translate the English enclosed in parentheses, fitting them in their appropriate Finnish sentences.

1. *Hänen on* (eat) *ruokansa.*
2. *Sinun on* (come) *kanssani.*
3. *Olit* (coming) *tänne junalla.*
4. *Tulet* (be) *pahoillasi tästä.*
5. *Minun on* (write) *hänelle ensi kuussa.*
6. *Sinä olit* (repairing) *hellan, eilen.*
7. *Meidän on* (look at) *tätä elokuvaa, sillä se on parhain täällä.*
8. *Tulemme* (get lost) *siinä kaupungissa.*
9. *Tulette* (sign) *tuon sekin.*
10. *Hän on* (reading) *tämän kirjeen.*
11. *Teidän on* (return) *takaisin töihin torstaina.*
12. *Tulette* (find) *poikanne jalkaväestä.*
13. *He tulevat* (be afraid of) *tuola miestä.*

---

[6] *Jatkoa* 'continuation'.

14. *Te olitte* (visiting) *kaupungissa.*
15. *Tulemme* (turn to) *teidän puoleenne.*
16. *Tulet vielä kerran* (rush) *töihin.*
17. *Hän tulee* (address) *kirjeet heille.*
18. *Heidän on* (leave) *laivalla, Ruotsiin.*
19. *Tulen aina* (remember) *teitä.*
20. *He tulevat* (direct) *meitä oikeaan suuntaan.*

II. Translate the following sentences into Finnish, using as many ways of expressing future action as you can.

1. I'll read your telegram Friday night.
2. I'll fill my car with gas tomorrow.
3. I intend to mess up your stationery like this.
4. I'll leave this to you.
5. I'll give notice next week.
6. I intend to tease my employer.
7. I'll ask him to come with us.
8. Will you come to us next week?
9. I'll take my suitcase to the station later.
10. I'll be ready very soon.

OSA D—LISTENING IN

1. Mitä te sanoitte?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

I. Majuri Leino menee sairaalankonttoriin maksamaan sairaala laskuansa.

Neiti Ahola

Hyvää huomenta, majuri.
Joko te nyt saatte lähteä kotiin?

Majuri Leino

Hyvää huomenta, neiti Ahola.

Kotiin menossahan minä olen.

Olenhan minä ja ollutkin täällä pian kuukauden.

Neiti Ahola

Oletteko te todellakin olleet täällä niin kauan?

Kyllä se aika menee pian.

Varmaankin olette iloinen että saatte palata komppaniaanne.

Majuri Leino

En palaa vielä toimeeni.

Olen saanut kuukauden loman parantuakseni.

Neiti Ahola

Mitä te sitten aijotte tehdä?

Majuri Leino

Olen päättänyt mennä maalle, että saisin oikein paljon raitista ilmaa ja voin kävellä ihanissa metsissä, päästäkseni vanhaan hyvään kuntoon.

Neiti Ahola

Olen kirjoittanut laskunne valmiiksi.

Haluatteko maksaa sen kaikki nyt, vaiko osan siitä?

Majuri Leino

Jos teille sopii kirjoitan mieluimmin tuhannen markan sekin ja loput lähetän postissa, kun saan ensi kuussa rahani armeijasta.

Neiti Ahola

Hyvä on.

Kirjoitan teille kuitin.

Majuri Leino

Olkaa hyvä ja antakaa minulle mustekynä, unohdin täytekynäni huoneeseeni.

Neiti Ahola

Lähetänkö loppulaskunne armeijaan tai kotiosoitteellanne?

Majuri Leino

Parasta on, että lähetätte sen minulle armeijaan sillä en ole aivan varma vielä milloin palaan kaupunkiin.

Neiti Ahola

Toivotan teille hauskaa matkaa ja että parannutte pian.

Majuri Leino

Kiitoksia kaikesta.

Olen varma, että pian olen taas toissä kuten ennen.

Neiti Ahola

En sano näkemiin, vaan hyvästi ja toivottavasti kaikki menee hyvin.

II. Konttorissa.

a.

Poika—Terve isä, tulin kysymään kuinka sinä voit.

Isä—Liian myöhään, poikani. Äitisi kävi täällä juuri ja annoin hänelle rahani.

b.

Työnantaja—Terve, Antti, olen kuullut että sinulla on lapsi kotonasi.

Uusi isä—Hyvänen aika, toivottavasti häntä ei voi kuulla tänne konttoriinkin.

c.

Johtaja—Miksi te olette myöhässä taas tänä aamuna.

Konttoriapulainen—Nukuin liian myöhään.

Johtaja—Mitä? Nukutteko te kotenannekin?

OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Keskustelua

1. The manager of an office is sending his secretary to the bank and to the post office. She asks questions as to what she is to do in each place.
2. You are telling a friend that your father is a lawyer and that you'll take over his office in a year or so. You intend to move the office to some other part of town, and you tell your friend in detail what you expect the new office to look like.
3. You go into an office and while waiting for the boss you strike up an acquaintance with the girl at the desk. You tell her that you were in the Army (a

corporal) until recently, and that you were discharged because you got wounded. Describe your wound. She tells you that her sister is a nurse. You talk about the weather and complain about the heat. Then you offer to take her to a movie after hours—it is cool inside. She tells you that she must work overtime that evening, but will be glad to go out with you Saturday night.

OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Jälkikatsaus

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences.*

Sanaluettelo

allekirjoitus	signature
antamani	that I have given
hiljaa	quiet
jatkoa	continuation
Jumala	God *or* Lord
jälkikatsaus	review
jännitys	suspense
jättää	to leave
jäädä	to stay
kaataa	to spill *or* to turn over
kaukopuhelu	long distance call
kirja	book
kirjoituskone	typewriter
kiusata	to tease
käytävä	corridor
kömpelö	clumsy
lukea	to read
lukemista	reading matter
mielenkiintoinen	interesting
muste	ink
musta	black
mutten tai *mutta en*	but I can't

nopea	fast
ooppera	opera
oppi	study
paperi	paper
pesuhuone	washroom
pullo	bottle
pyyhe	towel
romaani	novel
saada tehtyä	get done
sanella	to dictate
sanoa itsensä ylös	to give notice
sopia	to be convenient *or* to fit
sotkea	to mess up
tahalla	on purpose
tavallinen	general *or* usual
tasku	pocket
tuomari	lawyer *or* judge
työnantaja	employer
täytekynä	fountain pen
-va	verb suffix
vai	or
ylityö	overtime
äkkiarvaamatta	suddenly

LUKU 23

ULKOILU[1]

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

Erkki Suominen ja hänen toverinsa Bill Carter laativat[2] listan, mitä he tarvitsevat tulevaa ulkoilua varten.

ENGLANNIKSI	SUOMEKSI
Erkki Suominen	
It's very nice of you to come so early.	*Olipa hauska, että tulit näin aikaisin.*
together	*yhdessä*
We can make up the list of what we need together.	*Voimme tehdä listan yhdessä mitä tarvitsemme.*
Bill Carter	
That's exactly what I thought.	*Sitä juuri ajattelinkin.*
I have a list of people who want to come.	*Minulla on tässä lista henkilöistä, jotka haluavat tulla kanssamme.*
Erkki Suominen	
admirable *or* excellent	*mainio*
Fine!	*Mainiota!*

---

[1] *Ulkoilu* 'camping'.

[2] *Laatia* 'to draw up'.

I was thinking that it would be best to go to Northern Finland.	*Ajattelin että olisi parasta mennä Pohjois-Suomeen.*
to hunt	*metsästää*
to fish	*kalastaa*
We could hunt and fish there too.	*Siellä voimme sekä metsästää että kalastaa.*
to stay	*pysyä*
I hope the weather will stay nice.	*Toivon että ilmat pysyvät kauniina.*

Bill Carter

somebody	*joku*
whole	*koko*
Somebody told me that last fall when they went camping it rained all the time.	*Joku kertoi että viime syksynä, kun he olivat ulkoilemassa, satoi koko ajan.*
among other things	*muunmuassa*[3]
tent	*teltta*
instead	*asemasta*
He also said that it would have been better to take a house rather than a tent.	*Muunmuassa hän sanoi että olisi ollut parempi ottaa talo mukaan teltan asemasta.*

Erkki Suominen

It's still too early for the fall rains.	*Nyt on vielä liian aikaista syksysateille.*
otherwise	*muuten*
luck	*onni*
Did they have good luck otherwise?	*Oliko heillä muuten hyvä onni?*

---

[3] Abbreviated as *m.m.*

Bill Carter

They stayed only one week.	*He olivat vain yhden viikon.*
trip	*retki*
on account of	*vuoksi*
The whole trip turned out to be a big drinking party on account of the rain.	*Koko retki muuttui*[4] *yhdeksi ryyppyretkeksi sateen vuoksi.*

Erkki Suominen

I hope it won't happen that way with us.	*Toivottavasti ei meidän käy samalla tavalla.*
Oh, well, let's get down to it.	*No niin, asiaan.*
First of all, we need a tent.	*Ensiksikin tarvitsemme teltan.*

Bill Carter

I think it would be best to take two tents, since there are twelve of us.	*Luulen että on parasta ottaa kaksi telttaa, sillä meitä on kaksitoista miestä.*

Erkki Suominen

rope	*köysi*
axe	*kirves*
hammer	*vasara*
nail	*naula*
Okay. Two tents, a rope, and axe, a hammer and some nails. What else?	*Hyvä on, kaksi telttaa, köysi, tirves, vasara ja nauloja Mitä muuta?*

---

[4] Here meaning 'to become' or 'to turn out'.

Bill Carter

pillow	*tyyny*
blanket	*huopa*
sheet	*lakana*
Also pillows, blankets and sheets.	*Myöskin tyynyjä, huopia ja lakanoita.*
lamp *or* bulb	*lamppu*
How about a flashlight?	*Entäs taskulamppu?*

Erkki Suominen

I don't think we'll need that.	*En luule, että tarvitsemme sitä.*

Bill Carter

some kind	*jonkinlainen*
Anyway, we must take some kind of stove.	*Mutta kuitenkin meidän on otettava jonkinlainen hella*
We intend to cook, don't we?	*Sillä aijommehan me keittää?*

Erkki Suominen

unnecessary	*turha*
Nonsense!	*Mitä turhia!*
possible	*mahdollinen*
We'll take with us as little as possible.	*Otamme mukaamme niin vähän kuin mahdollista.*
stone	*kivi*
space	*väli*
We'll make a fire between two rocks and that's where we'll cook.	*Teemme tulen kahden kiven väliin ja siinä voimm keittää.*

important	*tärkeä*
pan	*pannu*
frying	*paistin-*
pot	*kattila*
It's important to take a coffee-pot, frying pan and a couple of pots.	*Tärkeätä on ottaa kahvipannu, paistinpannu ja pari kattilaa.*

Bill Carter

knife	*veitsi*
fork	*kahveli*[5]
spoon	*lusikka*
Could we take some knives, forks and spoons?	*Voimmeko ottaa veitsiä, kahveleita ja lusikoita?*
Or do you think we should eat with our hands?	*Vai luuletko, että olisi parasta syödä käsin?*

Erkki Suominen

Oh, come now.	*No älähän nyt tuossa.*

Bill Carter

without a gun	*pyssyttä*
rifle	*kivääri*
Anyway, we can't go without a gun.	*Pyssyttä emme kuitenkaan voi mennä.*
I have a rifle.	*Minulla on kivääri.*

Erkki Suomen

double-barrelled gun	*haulikko*
I think a shotgun would be better for hunting.	*Luulisin, että haulikko olisi parempi metsästykseen.*

---

[5] A word of Swedish origin. Very common for *haarukka*.

	Bill Carter
I almost forgot!	*Olin aivan unohtaa.*
boat	*vene*
We'll have to have a boat, won't we?	*Meillähän täytyy olla vene.*
	Erkki Suominen
to worry	*surra*
Don't worry; we'll rent one there.	*Älä sure, son vuokraamme sieltä.*
	Bill Carter
mosquito	*sääski*[6]
I've heard that there are lots of mosquitoes in Northern Finland.	*Olen kuullut että Pohjois-Suomessa on Paljon sääskiä.*
without	*ilman*
net	*harso*
I don't like to go there without a mosquito net.	*En halua mennä sinne ilman sääskiharsoa.*
	Erkki Suominen
paste	*tahna*
And let's not forget the toothpaste and shaving cream, either.	*Emme saa myöskään unohtaa hammastahnaa ja partanajosaippuaa.*
	Bill Carter
And remember, a couple of bottles of whiskey, too.	*Älä unohda paria pulloa wiskiä myöskään.*

---

[4] In some parts of Finland you will hear *hyttynen*.

Erkki Suominen

Well, I guess that's all.	*No, siinä kai on sitten kaikki.*
I hope we haven't forgotten anything.	*Toivottavasti emme ole unohtaneet mitään.*

OSA B—SANAOPPIA JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS

1. Sanaoppia

Review carefully the *Word Study* sections of units 19, 20, 21 and 22.

Comment One—The Suffix -tta

pyssyttä	without a gun

The case suffix *-tta* in *pyssyttä* (stem *pyssy-*) means 'without' or '-less'. Thus, also, *rahatta* 'without money' or 'penniless', *työnantajatta* 'without an employer', *työnantajitta* 'without employers'.

Comment Two—Relationship Terms

Type A 1

Helsingin ulkopuolella	outside of Helsinki
sateen vuoksi	on account of the rain
vihannesten kanssa	with vegetables
Jyväskylän kautta	by Jyväskylä

Words like *ulkopuolella* 'outside', *vuoksi* 'on account of', *kanssa* 'with', and *kautta* 'by' or 'via', are called relationship terms. There are many relationship terms in Finnish, and you can find them in any dictionary. Relationship terms fall into four types, A 1, A 2, B 1 and B 2. Terms belonging to the A 1 type are distinguished by two characteristics: they always *follow* the noun or pronoun which they modify; and the noun or pronoun which they modify generally takes the *-n* suffix (for which see unit 14, pages 237-8).

kanssani	with me
vuoksemme	on account of us
tule meidän kauttamme	come by our house

Note that relationship terms may take a possessive suffix (compare with unit 4, pages 72-3).

Type A 2

voi matkustaa ympäri Suomen *voi matkustaa Suomen ympäri*	one could travel around Finland
kesken kaiken	by the way

In the above sentences, *ympäri* 'around' and *kesken* 'in the midst of' (*kesken kaiken* means literally 'in the midst of all') are relationship terms. As you see, the nouns they accompany take the *-n* suffix (*Suomen*, *kaiken*), but in general they *precede* the noun or pronoun they modify, though some may follow it as well, as an alternative.

Type B 1

Sveniä varten	for Sven
neljännestä vailla	a quarter off

The words *varten* 'for' and *vailla* 'off' are relationship terms of another sort. They always *follow* the noun or pronoun which they modify; but the noun or pronoun which they modify generally takes the -(*t*)*a* suffix (for which see unit 9, pages 161-3).

Type B 2

ennen kukon laulua	before cock-crow
ilman sääskiharsoa	without a mosquito net
sitä vastapäätä	opposite it
lähellä asemaa	near the station
voi matkustaa ympäri Suomea	one could travel here and there in Finland

The words *ennen* 'before', *ilman* 'without', *vastapäätä* 'opposite', *lähellä* 'near', are also relationship terms which *precede* the noun or pronoun they modify, and the modified word takes -(*t*)*a* (*laulua*, *asemaa*, and so on). Note that *ympäri* belongs to both types A 2 and B 2 with slight change of meaning.

Hereafter, if you come across a new relationship term, determine for yourself from the context in which it is used what type it belongs to.

Comment Three—Summary

1. You have learned one more case suffix, the *-tta*, bringing the total up to thirteen.
2. You have learned a number of verb suffixes: *-ta*(') (free form suffix, or infinitive I), *-ma* (infinitive II), and *-va*. You also know how to give a negative order, and how to express future time in Finnish.
3. You have learned four more types of pronouns.
4. You have learned four types of so-called relationship terms.
5. You will recognize variant spellings of the letters *ä* and *ö*.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (*Jatkoa*)

1. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus (*Jatkoa*)

Further oral practice with the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

I. Put these sentences into Finnish and say them aloud:

a. How could you go fishing without a boat?
b. You can't sleep in the woods without a mosquito-net.
c. My father was without work for two years.
d. I tell you, I can't eat without a spoon.
e. He returned from the war with no arms.
f. The town is without a hospital.

II. Put these sentences into Finnish and say them aloud:

a. I made this long trip on account of you.
b. My brother arrived here with his wife.
c. I looked for her around the house.
d. I want some more wine for dinner.
e. He came home before his vacation started.
f. You can't see without lights, so bring your flashlight.
g. Did you look at that interesting building opposite the university?
h. He was very close to death when he was brought to the hospital.

i. You almost got hurt!
j. I have to go to the office, by the way.
k. In the middle of his dinner he noticed that he was missing his knife and fork.
l. As you go by the school, pick up the books.
m. He walked around his fields, but he stopped outside the barn.
n. I want two tickets for the trip around Sweden.
o. The corporal went to bed before the sergeant, because his wound was more serious.

OSA D—LISTENING IN

1. Mitä te sanoitte?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

Bill Carter ja Erkki Suominen ovat saapuneet ulkoilua varten Pohjois-Suomeen ja keskustelevat siitä mitä he aikovat tehdä.

Bill Carter

Kyllä meidän matkamme on mennyt hyvin, eikö olekin?

Erkki Suominen

Niin on.

Nyt meidän täytyy laittaa teltat kuntoon.

Bill Carter

Löysin jo mainiot paikat niille.

Aivan tuossa veden lähellä.

Erkki Suominen

Katso tätä!

Nämä ovat nyt ne kaksi kiveä, joista puhuin. Laitamme tulen näiden väliin ja siinä keitämme.

Bill Carter

Missä ovat toiset pojat?

Erkki Suominen

Osa heistä meni lähimpään taloon venettä vuokraamaan ja osa lähti jo kalastamaan.

Bill Carter

Sepä hauskaa.
Keitämme kahvin valmiiski siksi kun he tulevat.

Erkki Suominen

Ja sitten menemme kaikki uimaan.

Bill Carter

No, siinä se nyt on.
Tiesin, että olin unohtanut jotakin.

Erkki Suominen

Mitä nyt?

Bill Carter

Olen unohtanut uimahousuni.
Nyt en voi mennä uimaan kanssanne.

Erkki Suominen

Kuka sanoi, ettet voi mennä uimaan?

Bill Carter

Sanoinhan, että minulla ei ole uimahousuja.

Erkki Suominen

Eihän meillä muillakaan ole.
Ei täällä niitä tarvita.
Lähin talo on neljän kilometrin päässä.

Bill Carter

No, maassa maan tavalla tai maasta pois.[7]

Erkki Suominen

Mihin sinä panit sen kirveen?
Meillä täytyy olla puita tulta varten.

Bill Carter

Tuossahan se on.
Kuka laittaa huomen aamulla aamiaisen?

Erkki Suominen

Jaa, meidän täytyy lähteä ennen kukonlaulua, jos aijomme lähteä metsästämään.

Bill Carter

Toivon, ettemme ainakaan ole unohtaneet haulikoitamme.

---

[7] Proverb: 'When in Rome, do as the Romans do'.

OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Keskustelua

1. You're a sergeant in the Quartermaster Corps and the major in charge is telling you to procure supplies for a bivouac. He gives you a list and you go over it, discussing item after item.
2. You discuss with a friend the advantages of hunting as against fishing, and make plans to spend your vacation one way rather than the other. Then you talk about the supplies you'll need on your trip.
3. You rent an unfurnished room and plan to fix it up. You need a bed first of all, with blankets, sheets and pillows. You have a broken table; you need a hammer and nails to fix it. You need a rope to haul up your books. You must furnish the kitchenette with a stove, frying pans, pots, and so forth.

OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Jälkikatsaus

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

Sanaluettelo

asemasta	instead
haarukka	fork
harso	net
haulikko	double-barrelled gun

huopa	blanket
hyttynen	mosquito
ilman	without
joku	somebody
jonkinlainen	some kind
kahveli	fork
kalastaa	to fish
kattila	pot
kirves	axe
kivi	stone
kivääri	rifle
koko	whole
köysi	rope
laatia	to draw up
lakana	sheet
lamppu	lamp *or* bulb
lusikka	spoon
mahdollinen	possible
mainio	admirable *or* excellent
metsästää	to hunt
muunmuassa (*m.m.*)	among other things
muuten	otherwise
naula	nail
onni	luck
paistin-	frying
pannu	pan
pyssy	gun
pysyä	to stay
retki	trip
surra	to worry
sääski	mosquito
tahna	paste
teltta	tent
turha	unnecessary
-tta	without *or* -less
tyyny	pillow
tärkeä	important
ulkoilu	camping
vasara	hammer
veitsi	knife
vene	boat
vuoksi	on account of
väli	space
yhdessä	together

UNIT 24

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN FINNISH?

The procedure in this unit will be the same as in unit 18.

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

(Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Finnish for each of the following sentences. Do not write anything down.

I

1. Pack the razor blades, shaving cream and toothpaste.
2. Don't worry, I've a gun.
3. Waiter, could you give us some knives, forks and spoons?
4. Good luck!
5. Spring is the best time to fish around here.
6. Otherwise there's nothing new.
7. The rope broke and so he died.
8. He didn't forget the hammer and nails either.

II

1. I've read all good detective stories.
2. Oh, Lord, you're the stupidest fellow I ever saw!
3. His flashlight looked like a fountain pen.
4. Shut up! I know you did it on purpose.
5. I want a girl who can type and who knows Swedish.
6. You shouldn't tease your employer.
7. He left quite suddenly.
8. Paper towels are cheaper.

III

1. I saw you in my dreams last night, darling.
2. I'm sorry, sir, it was my fault.
3. He was on the front for six months but he got wounded right here in the bathroom shaving.
4. I'm sure she's wonderful, but I hope you're not thinking about her seriously.
5. He has a horrible scar from his eye to his mouth.
6. The dog's nose is dry.
7. The major is unconscious, but he might live.
8. He has a little fever, but that doesn't mean anything.

IV

1. I was in the infantry and I'm trying to forget it.
2. Make the receipt out to the U. S. Government.
3. I'm not going to sign any papers.
4. The barracks are about eleven kilometers to the north.
5. Hurry up, the company commander wants to see you.
6. The photo is of my face only.
7. The Red Army is not far from here.
8. I want to close my account.

V

1. There's an air mail letter in your box.
2. He collects old letters.
3. He has a different address now.
4. Were they yellow or black?
5. In that case I'll get someone to help you.
6. The envelope as well as its contents must be left in the office.
7. There was a French stamp on it.
8. His life isn't worth a penny.

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the sentences in Section *B*, asking various members of the group: *„Kuinka te sanotte suomeksi . . .?"*

SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? *(Cont.)*

(Individual Study)

Do the following exercises. Read all sentences aloud with correct solutions. Have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

I

Figure out this puzzle. If you get the right answer, explain how you got it, and why it is the only possible solution; if you fail, explain why you can't figure it out. Members of the group should discuss.

Antti ja Matti ovat kalastamassa.

He molemmat ovat saaneet kaloja.

Antti sanoo Matille:

"Anna sinä minulle yksi sinun kaloistasi niin minulla on kaksi kertaa niin paljon kuin sinulla."

Matti sanoo Antille:

"Se ei ole oikein.

Miksi sinulla pitäisi olla niin paljon enempi kuin minulla.

Anna sinä minulle yksi sinun kaloistasi niin meillä molemmilla on yhtä monta."

Kuinka monta kalaa oli Antilla?

Ja kuinka monta kalaa oli Matilla?

II

Here are some relationship terms. Make up a series of *complete* sentences, each including one.

a. *edellä*
b. *ennen*
c. *ilman*
d. *kanssa*
e. *kautta*
f. *kesken*
g. *lähellä*
h. *ulkopuolella*
i. *vailla*
j. *varten*
k. *vastapäätä*
l. *vuoksi*
m. *ympäri*

III

Translate the English words in parentheses and fit them into respective sentences.

1. *Tämä sotilas* (always) *unohti henkilöllisyyskorttinsa.*
2. *Kuulin sisareltani, että konsertissa oli* (many) *hyvää laulajaa.*
3. *Luulen, että* (someone) *kävi konttorissa eilen.*
4. (Something) *on tapahtunut hänelle, olen varma.*

5. *Hän oli kaupungissa vain päivän ja* (even then) *hän pyysi minua ulos kanssansa.*
6. *Oleiko varma, että* (somebody) *on lähettänyt sähkeen.*

IV

Take each sentence from the previous exercise (1-6) and make a negative sentence out of it.

7. ____________________________________
8. ____________________________________
9. ____________________________________
10. ____________________________________
11. ____________________________________
12. ____________________________________
13. ____________________________________

V

Change the action of these sentences to future, making changes only where necessary.

14. *Hän on hyvin väsynyt tänään.*
15. *Tänään on sunnuntai.*
16. *Minä kiiruhdan niin paljon kuin mahdollista.*
17. *Hän on luutnantti, siksi kun hän haavoittui sodassa.*
18. *Suuni on kuiva kaiken tuon viskin jälkeen.*
19. *Annan hänelle morffiiniruiskeen heti.*
20. *Missä osastossa te olette?*
21. *Minun kasvoni ovat punaiset.*
22. *Hän ei tiedä sen hintaa.*
23. *Vaimoni oli perillä kello puoli kymmenen.*

VI

In the column to the left you will find a series of pronouns, and in the column to the right a series of suffixes. Combine each pronoun with at least one suffix, and each suffix with at least one pronoun; use each combination you've made up in a *complete* sentence. Sample: *minä, -kin, minäkin, minäkin menen teatteriin tänä iltana.*

a. *hän*
b. *itse*
c. *joka*
d. *ken*
e. *kuka*
f. *mikä*
g. *se*
h. *toinen*
i. *tuo*
j. *tämä*

a. -(*t*)*a*
b. *-n*
c. *-ksi*
d. *-ssa*
e. -(*ka*)*an*
f. -(*h*)*xn*
g. *-na*
h. *-pa*
i. *-nsa*
j. *-ko*

SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in Section *D*. Keep your book closed. If you have a Guide, he will check on pronunciation and the correctness of your Finnish; if not, other members of your group will criticize.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

The members of the group will carry on short conversations lasting from two to five minutes. Everyone should take part as often as possible. Remember to begin and end conversations with the proper greeting. By this time you have more words to use and more subjects to talk about. The group will be given one hundred minutes and you should be able to talk longer on one topic. Don't be afraid to bring in other things that you can think of and talk about besides those suggested here. Let the talk be as natural as possible, try to answer what is asked you and to keep the conversation moving by asking questions in turn.

Suggested Topics:

1. Tell some jokes in Finnish.
2. Give the plot of a movie or a play you saw recently.
3. Have you ever been in a hospital? Tell your experiences—why were you there, how were you treated, were you cured when discharged?
4. Do you know any puzzles? Tell the other members of the group and let them guess the solution.
5. You are a postal clerk. Various people come to the window and want different things.
6. You are a bank clerk. Various people come to the window and want different things.
7. Go shopping in preparation for a camping trip.
8. Your girl works in an office. She tells you about the daily routine, and her boss, whom you don't like.
9. What sort of books do you like to read?
10. Do you like hunting or fishing? Talk about your experiences in this connection.

PART FIVE

LUKU 25

SUOMEN HALLITUS[1]

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

Eino Kallio selittää[2] Suomen hallitusta Joe Scott'ille, joka aikoo lähteä matkalle Suomeen.

ENGLANNIKSI	SUOMEKSI
Eino	
When do you intend to leave?	*Milloin sinä aijot lähteä?*
Joe	
The boat leaves early tomorrow morning.	*Laiva lähtee aikaisin huomen aamulla.*
to travel	*matkustaa*
I'll travel on a Swedish boat, which'll arrive at Göteborg Wednesday afternoon.	*Matkustan ruotsalaisella laivalla, joka saapuu Göteborgiin keskiviikkona iltapäivällä.*
From there I'll continue by train to Stockholm, and from there by plane to Helsinki.	*Sieltä jatkan matkaani junalla Tukholmaan ja Tukholmasta lentokoneella Helsinkiin.*
Eino	
Have you already packed all your things?	*Joko sinulla on kaikki matkatavarat pakattuna?*

---

[1] *Hallitus* 'government'.
[2] *Selittää* 'to explain'.

	Joe
almost	*melkein*
Almost everything.	*Melkein kaikki.*
to get	*joutua*
difficulty	*vaikeus*
customs *or* duty	*tulli*
I'll try to take with me as little as possible so I won't get into difficulties with the customs.	*Koetan ottaa mukaani niin vähän kuin mahdollista, etten joutuisi vaikeuksiin tullissa.*
	Eino
severe *or* strict	*ankara*
In my opinion the customs aren't strict in Finland.	*Tulli ei minusta ole ankara Suomessa.*
You can take presents to your friends duty-free, if you tell them straight out that they're meant for gifts.	*Voit viedä lahjoja ystävillesi ilman tullia kun sanot suoraan, että olet tarkoittanut ne lahjoiksi.*
	Joe
Is that so?	*Vai niin.*
to be born	*syntyä*
You were born in Finland and lived there, didn't you?	*Sinähän olet syntynyt Suomessa ja asunut siellä*
grateful	*kiitollinen*
beforehand.	*etukäteen*
I'd be grateful if you'd tell me a little about the country and its government so I'll know something beforehand.	*Olisin kiitollinen jos kertoisit minulle vähän tuosta maasta ja sen hallituksesta, että tietäisin vähän etukäteen.*
	Eino
I'll be glad to.	*Teen sen mielelläni.*

Well, where shall I start?	*No niin, mistä alkaisin?*
republic	*tasavalta*
difference	*eroavaisuus*
Finland is a republic, like the United States, but naturally there are differences.	*Suomi on tasavalta, kuten Yhdysvallatkin, mutta luonnollisesti on eroavaisuuksia.*
	Joe
to represent	*edustaa*
president	*presidentti*
party	*puolue*
Does your president represent some party?	*Edustaako presidenttinne jotakin puoluetta?*
	Eino
No.	*Ei.*
above	*yläpuolella*
The president is usually above party distinctions.	*Presidentti on tavallisesti puoluerajojen yläpuolella.*
	Joe
to choose	*valita*
How is he elected?	*Kuinka hänet valitaan?*
	Eino
elector	*valitsija*
The president is elected by three hundred electors, every sixth year.	*Presidentin valitsee joka kuudes vuosi kolmesataa valitsijamiestä.*
	Joe
duty	*tehtävä*
What are his duties?	*Mitä kaikkea kuuluu hänen tehtäviinsä?*

Eino

to appoint *or* to name	*nimittää*
minister	*ministeri*
to form	*muodostaa*
cabinet	*valtioneuvosto*
Among other things, he appoints the prime minister, who then forms the cabinet.	*Muunmuassa hän nimittää pääministerin, joka sitten muodostaa valtioneuvoston.*

Joe

ministry	*ministeriö*
What are the ministries?	*Mitkä ovat ministeriöt?*

Eino

justice *or* court	*oikeus*
defense	*puolustus*
The most important are the Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Ministry of Justice, Ministry of Defense and the Ministry of the Interior, as well as some six others.	*Tärkeimmät ovat Ulkoasiainministeriö, Oikeusministeriö, Puolustusministeriö, ja Sisäasiainministeriö sekä noin kuusi muuta.*
diet *or* parliament	*eduskunta*
majority	*enemmistö*
support	*kannatus*
The ministers must have the support of the majority in parliament.	*Ministereillä täytyy olla eduskunnan enemmistön kannatus.*

Joe

to organize	*järjestää*
Tell me how the parliament is organized in Finland.	*Kerrohan miten eduskunta on järjestetty Suomessa.*

	Eino
chamber	*kamari*
with a hundred	*sataisine*
with its representatives	*edustajineen*
citizen	*kansalainen*
to vote	*äänestää*
There's only one chamber in the parliament, with two hundred representatives, whom citizens over twenty-one vote for for three years at a time.	*Siellä on vain yksi kamari eduskunnassa kaksisataisine edustajineen jotka kansalaiset, jotka ovat yli kaksikymmentä yksi vuotta vanhoja äänestävät kolmeksi vuodeksi kerrallaan.*
	Joe
Are there many parties in Finland?	*Onko Suomessa monta puoluetta?*
	Eino
social democratic	*sosialidemokraatti*
agrarian	*maalaisliitto*
There are about seven parties, of which the Social Democratic and the Agrarian are the biggest at present.	*Siellä on noin seitsemän puoluetta, joista sosialidemokraatti ja maalaisliitto puolueet ovat suurimmat nykyään.*
	Joe
supposing	*olettaen*
village	*kylä*
to divide	*jakaa*
administrative	*hallinnollinen*
But supposing now I'm in a Finnish village—by the way, how is Finland divided administratively?	*Mutta olettaen nyt, että olen suomalaisessa kylässä—kesken kaiken—miten on Suomi jaettu hallinnollisesti?*

Eino	
province	*lääni*
governor	*maaherra*
It's divided into ten provinces, which are governed by a governor.	*Se on jaettu kymmeneen eri lääniin, joiden päänä on maaherra.*
Joe	
trouble	*ikävyys*
to whom	*kenen puoleen*
How about if I get into some kind of trouble—to whom could I turn?	*Entäs jos joutuisin jonkinlaisiin ikävyyksiin kenen puoleen voisin kääntyä?*
Eino	
to depend	*riippua*
It depends on where you are.	*Se riippuu siitä missä olet.*
sheriff *or* bailiff	*nimismies*
If you're in the country, it's best to consult the sheriff.	*Jos olet maalla on paras kääntyä nimismiehen puoleen.*
In the city, you go to the police station, where they'll advise you.	*Kaupungissa menet poliisiasemalle, missä he neuvovat sinua.*
Of course, being an American, you can always turn to the American Legation or Consulate.	*Tietysti voit aina amerikkalaisena kääntyä Yhdysvaltojen lähetystön tai konsulaatin puoleen.*
Joe	
That's clear.	*Sehän on selvä.*
Thanks for the advice.	*Kiitos kaikista neuvoistasi.*

Eino

passport	*passi*
I should tell you besides always to keep your passport about you.	*Vielä tahtoisin sanoa, että pidä passi aina mukanasi.*
And I'm sure that if you 'do in Rome as the Romans do', you don't have to be afraid of getting into trouble.	*Ja olen varma, että jos elät maassa maan tavalla ei sinun tarvitse pelätä joutuvasi ikävyyksiin.*

OSA B—SANAOPPIA JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS

1. Sanaoppia

Comment One—The Suffix -(t)e-

olettaen	supposing

The suffix -(*t*)*e*-, in the above example, is added to the stem *oletta-* of the verb *olettaa* 'to suppose', and is followed by the suffix *-n*. This suffix is added to the consonant stem of verbs of the second class and must always be followed by one of two suffixes, namely *-n* (see unit 15, page 253) or *-ssa* (see unit 3, page 55). After a short vowel (the *-a-* of *oletta-*, for instance) the *-t-* of the suffix drops out and thus it becomes merely *-e-;* otherwise it will appear as *-te-*. When before the *-n* suffix, the meaning of -(*t*)*e*- is roughly 'the way in which something is done.' Further examples: *kävellen* 'walking' (remember that *t* after *l* is replaced by *l*); *mennen* 'going', (remember that *t* after *n* is replaced by *n*); *käyden* 'visiting' (from *käy-te-n*, with automatic change of *t* to *d*), *varaten* 'reserving' (from *varat-te-n*, with automatic change of *tt* to *t*), *ohjaten* 'directing', and so forth.

peljätessä	while afraid
huolehtiessa	while attending to
tullessa	while coming
juodessa	while drinking

When the -(*t*)*e*- suffix is followed by *-ssa*, it means roughly that the action goes on while something else happens, as the above examples show.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (*Jatkoa*)

1. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus (*Jatkoa*)

Further oral practice with the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

I. Translate the words in parentheses and fit them into their respective sentences; then say each sentence aloud.

1. *Toverini kertoi, että hän oli koko viime kesän maalla* (fishing) *ja* (hunting) *kaiket päivät.*
2. *On turhaa koettaa mennä sinne* (driving) *autolla, sillä tiet ovat niin huonot.*
3. (Thinking) *asiaa enemmän en luule, että hän tarkoitti loukata sinua.*
4. (Writing) *kirjeen koneella saatte sen valmiiksi paljon nopeammin.*
5. *Työnantaja lähti* (muttering) *kotiinsa.*
6. (Travelling) *Tanskassa tänä talvena olin suuressa junaonnettomuudessa.*
7. (Coming) *teille eilen illalla näimme paljon ihmisiä kadulla.*
8. *Kuulitteko mitään mielenkiintoista* (visiting) *Eduskuntatalossa viime viikolla?*
9. (Answering) *tuolla tavalla tulitteko ajatelleeksi mitä sanoitte?*
10. (Singing) *aika menee nopeasti.*

II. Discuss these questions relating to Finnish government as fully as possible.

1. *Kuinka mones vuosi Suomessa aina valitaan presidentti?*

2. *Kuka on presidentin yläpuolella?*
3. *Onko Suomessa enemmän kuin kaksi puoluetta?*
4. *Kuka on läänin päämies?*
5. *Kuka muodostaa valtioneuvoston?*
6. *Jos hukkaat passisi ollessasi maalla, Suomessa, kenen puoleen sinun on parasta kääntyä?*
7. *Onko Suomi jaetta hallinnollisesti kyliin?*
8. *Kuinka monta edustajaa on Suomen eduskunnassa?*
9. *Montako ministeriä on Valtioneuvostossa?*
10. *Kuinka vanha täytyy Suomen kansalaisen olla voidakseen äänestää?*

OSA D—LISTENING IN

1. Mitä te sanoisitte?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

Oikeudessa

I

Suomalainen maanviljelijä, joka halusi tulla Amerikan kansalaiseksi oli oikeudessa ja tuomari kysyi häneltä:

—Pidättekö te tästä maasta?

—Kyllä varmasti, vastasi mies.

—Ja pidättekö myöskin meidän hallituksestamme?

—Ky-yllä, mutta haluaisin saada sadetta vähän enemmän.

II

Yksinkertainen suomalainen mies oli oikeudessa tullakseen Yhdysvaltojen kansalaiseksi.

Tuomari:—Kuka on Yhdysvaltojen presidentti?

Mies vastasi siihen oikein.

—Ja kuka sitten on New Yorkin kaupunginjohtaja?

Siihenkin mies vastasi oikein.

—Voisitteko te tulla Yhdysvaltain presidentiksi?

—En.

—No miksi ette?

—Anteeksi tuomari. Minulla on hyvin kiire. Olen työssä joka päivä koko päivän nykyään.

III

Tuomari kysyi mieheltä:

—Voitteko te lukea ja kirjoittaa?

—Voin kirjoittaa, mutta en lukea, vastasi mies.

—Kirjoittakaa nimenne sitten tuohon, olkaa hyvä.

Mies kirjoitti jotakin paperille.

—Mitä te kirjoititte? —kysyi hämmästynyt tuomari.

—En tiedä, sillä sanoinhan etten voi lukea.

IV. *Isä ja poika keskustelevat Suomesta*

Poika

Hei isä!

Mitä tiedät?

Oliko sinulla kiirettä konttorissa tänään?

Isä

Terve Jorma.

Ei niin kovin, mutta olen kuitenkin väsynyt.

Poika

Tahtoisin, että auttaisit minua kotitehtävässäni tänään jos et ole liian väsynyt.

Isä

Tietysti, hyvä lapsi, kerrohan nyt miten voin sinua auttaa.

Siitä on pitkä aika kun minä kävin koulua ja olen unohtanut paljon asioita.

Poika

Asia on aivan toista.

Sinähän kerroit minulle, että olit kerran Suomessa käymässä silloin kun minä en ollut vielä syntynytkään.

Isä

Aivan oikein.

Äitisi ja minä olimme Suomessa monta viikkoa eräänä kesänä, odotahan, siitä on jo yksitoista vuotta.

Poika

Katsos, me luemme koulussa nyt juuri Suomesta ja ajattelin että pyydän sinua kertomaan minulle jotakin siitä maasta.

Isä

No, mitä kaikkea haluaisit tietää?

Poika

Ensiksikin kuka hallitsee Suomea?

Isä

Suomen valtion päämies on presidentti samalla tavalla kuin Yhdysvalloissakin.

Poika

Valitaanko hänet neljäksi vuodeksi kerrallaan?

Isä

Ei, kuudeksi.

Poika

Kuka saa äänestää Suomessa?

Isä

Kaikki miehet ja naiset, jotka ovat yli kaksikymmentäneljä vuotta vanhoja.

Poika

Kuinka paljon ihmisiä asuu Suomessa?

Isä

Vain noin puolet siitä mitä asuu New Yorkin kaupungissa.

Poika

Mutta opettaja sanoi, että Suomi on suurempi kuin Englanti.

Isä

Se on totta myöskin.

Nyt lapseni minun täytyy mennä vuoteeseen ja parasta on, että sinä myös menet, kello on pian puoli yksitoista.

OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Keskustelua

1. A soldier is buying books and he asks the bookseller about the contents of various books which he picks up from the counter. The bookseller tells him that one book is on languages, another is a cookbook, the third is a detective story, the next deals with government, and so on.
2. A Finn is asking an American soldier friend about the organization of the United States government. Later the soldier explains where his friend would have to turn if he got involved in a street accident in, say, Chicago.
3. Compare the government of Finland with the government of the United States (or of any other country you know), pointing out how they differ and how they are alike.

OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Jälkikatsaus

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

Sanaluettelo

ankara	severe *or* strict
edustaa	to represent
edustajineen	with its representatives
enemmistö	majority
eroavaisuus	difference
etukäteen	beforehand
hallinnollinen	administrative
hallitus	government
ikävyys	trouble
jakaa	to divide
joutua	to get
järjestää	to organize
kamari	chamber
kannatus	support
kansalainen	citizen

kenen puoleen	to whom
kiitollinen	grateful
kylä	village
lääni	province
maalaisliitto	agrarian
maaherra	governor
matkustaa	to travel
melkein	almost
ministeri	minister
ministeriö	ministry
muodostaa	to form
nimismies	sheriff *or* bailiff
nimittää	to appoint *or* to name
oikeus	justice *or* court
olettaa	to suppose
passi	passport
presidentti	president

puolue	party
puolustus	defence
riippua	to depend
sataisine	with a hundred
selittää	to explain
sosialdemokraatti	socialdemocratic
syntyä	to be born
tasavalta	republic
-(t)e	verb suffix
tehtävä	duty
tulli	customs *or* duty
vaikeus	difficulty
valita	choose
valitsija	elector
valtioneuvosto	cabinet
yläpuolella	above

LUKU 26

SUOMEN TEOLLISUUS[1]

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

Jaakko Hirvi ja Bob Emerson keskustelevat Suomen teollisuudesta.

ENGLANNIKSI	SUOMEKSI
Bob Emerson	
nature	*luonto*
A friend of mine has talked a lot about Finland and its countryside.	*Toverini on kertonut minulle niin paljon Suomesta ja sen luonnosta.*
Jaakko Hirvi	
So you have some other Finnish friends too.	*Sinulla on siis muitakin suomalaisia tovereita.*
Bob Emerson	
Yes.	*On kyllä.*
to study	*opiskella*
The fellow was here to study in the same university with me.	*Hän oli opiskelemassa täällä samassa yliopistossa minun kanssani.*
We were roommates	*Olimme huonetoverit.*

---

[1] *Teollissuus* 'industry'.

Jaakko Hirvi

to mention	*mainita*
Did he ever happen to talk about Finnish industry?	*Tuliko hän koskaan maininneeksi mitään Suomen teollisuudesta?*

Bob Emerson

No.	*Ei.*
idealist	*idealisti*
practicality	*käytäntö*
He was more idealistic than practical.	*Hän oli enempi idealisti kuin käytännön mies.*

Jaakko Hirvi

lately	*viime aikoina*
powerful *or* enormous	*valtava*
step	*askel*
Lately Finnish industry has grown by leaps and bounds.	*Viime aikoina on Suomen teollisuus mennyt eteenpäin valtavin askelin.*

Bob Emerson

it's mentioned	*on mainittu*
branch	*haara*
It's said that timber is one of the main branches of your industry.	*On mainittu että puuteollisuus on yksi teollisuutenne päähaara.*

Jaakko Hirvi

So it is.	*Niin on.*

reason	*syy*
green	*vihreä*
Not without reason, we Finns call our forests 'the green gold of Finland'.	*Ilman sytä emme me suomalaiset kutsu metsiämme „Suomen vihreäksi kullaksi."*

Bob Emerson

Very interesting.	*Hyvin mielenkiintoista.*
to suppose	*olettaa*
wooded	*metsäinen*
I suppose your largest forests are in the east and north of Finland.	*Oletan, että, Itä—ja Pohjois—Suomi ovat metsäisimmät.*

Jaakko Hirvi

They are.	*Niin ovat.*
log	*tukki*
to float	*uittaa*
river	*joki*
lake	*järvi*
along	*myöten*
sawmill	*sahalaitos*
to be located	*sijaita*
railroad junction	*rautatieristeys*
From there the logs are floated down the rivers and lakes to the sawmills, which are usually located at the mouths of rivers or at railroad junctions.	*Sieltä tukit uitetaan jokia ja järviä myöten sahalaitoksiin, jotka tavallisesti sijaitsevat jokien suissa tai rautatie risteyksissä.*

to be continued	*jatkua*
transportation	*kuljetus*
further	*edelleen*
port	*satama*
load	*lastata*
export	*vienti*
From there the transportation continues to the ports where the timber is loaded on ships for export.	*Siitä jatkuu kuljetus edelleen satamiin, joissa puutavara lastataan laivoihin ulkomaille vientiä varten.*

Bob Emerson

Which are your largest sawmills and loading ports?	*Mitkä ovat suurimmat sahalaitoksenne ja lastaussatamanne?*

Jaakko Hirvi

The largest ones are in Kemi, Oulu, Kokkola, Rauma, Kotka and Käkisalmi.	*Suurimmat ovat Kemissä, Oulussa, Kokkolassa, Raumalla, Kotkassa ja Käkisalmessa.*

Bob Emerson

next	*seuraava*
What branches of your industry are next in size?	*Mitkä ovat seuraaviksi suurimmat teollisuushaaranne?*

Jaakko Hirvi

technical	*teknillinen*
power	*voima*
Next should be mentioned the electrotechnical industry.	*Seuraavaksi voin mainita sähköteknillisen teollisuuden.*

The largest of these is the Imatra Power Station owned by the State.	*Suurin niistä on valtion omistama Imatran Voimalaitos*
	Bob Emerson
How about Outokumpu?	*Entäs Outokumpu?*
	Jaakko Hirvi
Aha!	*Ahaa!*
copper	*kupari*
mine	*kaivos*
Outokumpu is our well known coppermine.	*Outokumpu on tunnettu kuparikaivoksemme.*
It's also owned by the State.	*Se on myöskin valtion omistama.*
	Bob Emerson
Have you other mines too?	*Onko teillä muita kaivoksia?*
	Jaakko Hirvi
nickel	*nikkeli*
iron	*rauta*
Sure, we have a nickel mine in Petsamo and also iron mines.	*Kyllä, meillä on nikkelikaivos Petsamossa ja myöskin rautakaivoksia.*
	Bob Emerson
linen	*pellava*
cotton	*pumpuli*
My friend told me that at Tampere they have many linen and cotton mills.	*Toverini kertoi Tampereella olevan monta pellava- ja pumpulitehdasta.*

Jaakko Hirvi

Finlayson, in Tampere is the largest cotton mill in northern Europe.	*Finlayson Tampereella on Pohjois-Euroopan suurin pumpulitehdas.*
We also have many linen and wool factories.	*Myöskin on meillä paljon pellava-ja villatehtaita.*

Bob Emerson

textile	*kutoma*
standard *or* attitude	*kanta*
The textile industry seems to have very high standards.	*Kutomateollisuus näyttää olevan hyvin korkealla kannalla.*

Jaakko Hirvi

skin *or* leather	*nahka*
connection	*yhteys*
In connection with the leather industry I could mention the leather and shoe factories of Aaltonen, also in Tampere.	*Nahkateollisuuden yhteydessä voin muunmuassa mainita Aaltosen Kenkä ja Nahkatehtaat, myöskin Tampereella.*
china	*porsliini*
product	*tuote*
I've seen the products of your china and glass industry here in America.	*Olen nähnyt teidän porsliini-ja lasiteollisuutenne tuotteita täällä Amerikassa.*

Jaakko Hirvi

line	*ala*
By way of home industries one must mention the grain, tobacco and sugar industries.	*Kotiteollisuuden alalla on hyvin tärkeätä myöskin mainita viljatupakka-ja sokeriteollisuus.*

Bob Emerson

furniture	*huonekalu*
special	*erikoinen*
chair	*tuoli*
I specially like the products of your furniture industry, such as the chairs and tables, etc.	*Pidän erikoisesti teidän huonekaluteollisuutenne tuotteista niinkuin uudenaikaisista tuoleista, pöydistä, j.n.e.*

OSA B—SANAOPPIA JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS

1. Sanaoppia

Comment One—The Suffix -ne

kaikkine yksityiskohtineen	with all the particulars
kaksisataisine edustajineen	with its two hundred representatives

The suffix *-ne*, used in the above illustrations is a case suffix meaning 'with'. It is always preceded by the plural marker *-i-*, even when the meaning is singular, and followed by one of the possessive suffixes. The possessive *-nsa* is often replaced, as above, by *-n*, before which *-ne-* becomes *-nee-*. Here are some more examples: *menin oopperaan vaimoineni* 'I went to the opera with my wife', *hän on pellolla lehminensä* (or *lehmineen*) 'he's on the field with his cows', *komppania miehineen päivineen lähti rintamalle* 'the company went with all men and equipment to the front'.

Comment Two—The Suffix -u

on korjattu	is repaired
on mainittu	is said

The suffix *-u* always follows the -(*t*)*ta*(')- suffix added to the stem, but the latter loses its *-a*(')- before the *-u*. Thus, *korjata* 'to repair', consonant stem *korjat-*, becomes *korjat-t-u; mainita* 'to mention', stem *mainit-*, becomes *mainit-t-u*. With *on*, the meaning of these forms is illustrated by the above phrases. Note these forms: *se on tunnettu kirja* 'it's a known book' (*tuntea* 'to know'), *se on tiedetty koko suomessa* 'it's known all over Finland' (*tietää* 'to know'), *on nähty monta kertaa* 'it has been seen many times' (*nähdä* 'to see'), *työ on tehty* 'the work is done' (*tehdä* 'to do').

Comment Three—Suffix -inen

metsäinen	wooded

You've learned the word *metsä* 'forest', and you've had *metsäinen* 'wooded'. Note the suffix *-inen:* this suffix is often added to nouns, especially those meaning quantity, age, or quality. Study these further examples: *tässä on tämän päiväinen postinne* 'here's your mail of today' *se on viimevuotinen sanomalehti* 'it's last year's paper', *nälkäinen lapsi meni kadulle* 'the hungry child went to the street'.

Note that the stem form of *-inen* is *-ise-*, *-is-;* *viimeviikkoiset ruokatavarat ovat lopussa* 'last week's food supplies are exhausted'.

poika(i)nen	little boy

The *-inen* suffix is also diminutive, though it's usually found as *-nen: poikanen; tyttönen* 'little girl', *laulunen* 'little song'.

Comment Four—Place Names

suurimmat ovat Kemissä	the largest ones are in in Kemi
Oulussa	in Oulu
Kokkolassa	in Kokkola
Raumalla	in Rauma
Kotkassa	in Kotka
Käkisalmessa	in Käkisalmi

Note the way you say 'in Rauma': *Raumalta;* but in all other cases the suffix *-ssa* is used. For some place names, like *Tampere* or *Rovaniemi*, you must use the *-lta*, for others, like *Helsinki*, *Turku*, or *Tonio*, you must use the *-ssa*. There is no way of knowing which to use, except to learn each place name separately.

Oulusta	from Oulu
Raumalta	from Rauma

Note that place names which take *-ssa* for 'in', take *-sta* for 'from', and those which take *-lla* for 'in' take *-lta* for 'from'.

Ouluun	to Oulu
Raumalle	to Rauma

Note that place names which take *-ssa* and *-sta* take -(*h*)*xn* for 'to'; but those which take *-lla* and *-lta* take *-lle* for 'to'.

2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

Jatkakaa peruslauseitten ensi osan harjoitusta[2] *suullisesti*[3].

OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (*Jatkoa*)

1. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

Jatkakaa peruslauseitten toisen osan harjoitusta suullisesti.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

I. Translate the expressions in parentheses and fit them into their respective sentences. Say each sentence aloud.

1. *Sisareni matkusti* (with her children) *kesälomalle.*
2. *Laiva saapui satamaan* (with its passengers).
3. *Sotilaat lähtivät* (with their rifles) *rintamalle.*
4. *Maanviljelijä osti talon* (with the forests).
5. *Kaupunki* (with its factories and large buildings) *näytti kauniilta.*
6. *Kesä on jo lopussa* (with its warm days).
7. *Talvi tulee* (with excellent skiing conditions).
8. (With all his knowledge) *ei hän kuitenkaan o[illegible]t tyytyväinen.*
9. *Liikkeessä oli paljon tavaraa* (with different prices).
10. *Pidän hänestä hyvin paljon* (with all her nonsense).

II. Fit the words in parentheses into their respective sentences.

1. *Posti on* (*lähettää*) *Ruotsiin jo kauan sitten.*
2. *Raha on* (*panna*) *pankkiin talletustilille.*

---

[2] *Harjoitus* 'practice'. [3] *Suullisesti* 'by mouth'.

3. *On* (*sanoa*), *että metsät ovat Suomen vihreätä kultaa.*
4. *Lippu on* (*ostaa*) *tämän illan teatteria varten.*
5. *Tukit on* (*kuljettaa*) *sahalaitokseen.*
6. *Suomesta on* (*viedä*) *paljon tavaraa ulkomaille.*
7. *Kello on* (*siirtää*) *kolme tuntia eteenpäin.*
8. *Kuparikaivoksesta on* (*löytää*) *myöskin nikkeliä.*
9. *Koulussa on* (*laulella*) *aamusta iltaan.*
10. *Liikkeessä ei* (*tietää*) *paljonko sen hinta on.*

OSA D—LISTENING IN

1. Mitä te sanoitte?

Yhdessä luokan toisten oppilaitten kanssa vastatkaa suullisesti edellisiin[4] *harjoituksiin kun ohjaaja*[5] *kysyy.*

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Listening In

I. Kysymyksiä ja vastauksia Suomen teollisuudesta.

Mikä on Suomen pääteollisuus?
Suomen pääteollisuus on puuteollisuus.
Missä on Suomen suurin pumpulitehdas?
Suurin pumpulitehdas on Tampereella.
missä ovat suurimmat metsät Suomessa?
Suurimmat metsät ovat Itä- ja Pohjois-Suomessa.
Mitkä ovat kotiteollisuutemme tärkeimmät haarat?
Vilja- tupakka- ja sokeriteollisuus.
Millaisella kannalla on kutomateollisuus?
Kutomateollisuus on hyvin korkealla kannalla.
Missä on Suomen nikkelikaivos?
Nikkelikaivos on Petsamossa.
Mitä muita kaivoksia on Suomessa?
Suomessa on myöskin rauta- ja kuparikaivoksia.
Mikä on Suomen suurin teollisuuskaupunki?
Tampere on Suomen suurin teollisuuskaupunki.
Mikä on Pohjoiseuroopan suurin pumpulitehdas?
Finlayson on Pohjoiseuroopan suurin pumpulitehdas.
Onko Suomessa nahkateollisuutta?
Kyllä.

---

[4] *Edellinen* 'previous'. [5] *Ohjaaja* 'leader'.

Missä ovat suurimmat lastaus-satamamme?

Ne ovat Kemissä, Oulussa, Kokkolassa, Raumalla, Kotkassa ja Käkisalmessa.

Kuinka puutavara kuljetetaan lastauspaikkoihin?

Puutavara uitetaan jokia ja järviä myöten lastauspaikkoihin.

Kuinka suomalaiset kutsuvat metsiään?

He kutsuvat metsiään "Suomen vihreäksi kullaksi".

Mikä on Outokumpu?

Outokumpu on kuparikaivos.

Mitä tehtaita on Tampereella?

Tampereella on kenkä- ja nahkatehtaita, pellava- pumpuli- ja villatehtaita.

Missä sahalaitokset tavallisesti sijaitsevat?

Ne sijaitsevat jokien suissa tai rautatieristeyksissä.

Onko Imatran Voimalaitos valtion omistama?

Kyllä, valtio omistaa sen.

II. Miksi opiskella?

Mitä enemmän me opiskelemme, sitä enemmän me tiedämme.

Mitä enemmän me tiedämme, sitä enemmän me unohdamme.

Mitä enemmän me unohdamme, sitä vähemmän me tiedämme.

Mitä vähemmän me tiedämme, sitä vähemmän me unohdamme.

Mitä vähemmän me unohdamme, sitä enemmän me tiedämme.

Miksi opiskella?

OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Keskustelua

1. A and B are discussing the products of American and Finnish industries. A mentions what is manufactured in the United States and B answers that such a product is either manufactured in Finland or has to be imported.
2. Captain Kangas of the U. S. Army used to import furniture from Finland and sell it in New York. He runs across one of the merchants from whom he used to import. They talk about the present situation between the two countries, especially with regard to export and import of goods.
3. Two noncoms are asking a waiter about the various industries in the city where they are stationed. The latter tells them they used to have glass factories, but they were transformed for war.

OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Jälkikatsaus

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

Sanaluettelo

ala	line
askel	step
edelleen	further
edellinen	previous
erikoiseeti	special
haara	branch
harjoitus	practice
huonekalu	furniture
idealisti	idealist
-inen	noun suffix, diminutive
jatkua	to be continued
joki	river
järvi	lake
kaivos	mine
kanta	standard *or* attitude
kuljetus	transportation
kupari	copper

kutoma	textile
käytäntö	practicality
lastata	to load
luonto	nature
mainita	to mention
myöten	along
nahka	skin *or* leather
-ne	with
nikkeli	nickel
ohjaaja	leader
olettaa	to suppose
on mainittu	is mentioned
opiskella	to study
pellava	linen
porsliini	china
pumpuli	cotton
rauta	iron
rautatieristeys	railroad junction

sahalaitos	sawmill
satama	port
seuraava	next
sijaita	to be located
suullisesti	by mouth
syy	reason
teknillinen	technical
teollisuus	industry
tukki	log
tuoli	chair
tuote	product
-u	verb suffix
uittaa	to float
valtava	powerful *or* enormous
vienti	export
vihreä	green
viime aikoina	lately
voima	power
yhteys	connection

LUKU 27

KASVATUSJÄRJESTELMÄ[1]

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

ENGLANNIKSI	SUOMEKSI
compulsory education	*oppivelvollisuus*
full	*täysi*
Compulsory education came in full effect in Finland in 1937.	*Oppivelvollisuus tuli täyteen voimaan Suomessa vuonna-yhdeksäntoistasataakolmekymmentäseitsemän.*
going	*käynti*
compulsory	*pakollinen*
age	*ikä*
It is compulsory for children to go to school between the ages of seven and sixteen.	*Koulunkäynti on pakollinen lapsille seitsemästä kuuteentoista ikävuoteen.*
study	*opinto*
The children may continue their education in several ways.	*Lapset voivat jatkaa opintojaan monella eri tavalla.*
elementary school	*kansakoulu*
extension	*jatko*
After elementary school they may continue their studies in extension classes for the two years following.	*Kansakoulun jälkeen he jatkavat opintojaan jatkoluokissa kahtena seuraavana vuotena.*

---

[1] *Kasvatus* 'education'; *järjestelmä* 'system'.

illiterate	*lukutaidoton*
percentage	*prosentti*
The percentage of illiterates is very small.	*Lukutaidottomien prosentti on hyvin pieni.*
training college for teachers	*seminaari*
There are four training colleges for prospective teachers in Finland.	*Suomessa on neljä seminaaria kansakoulun opettajiksi aikovia varten.*
country youth	*maalaisnuoriso*
peoples high school	*kansanopisto*
The country youth may go from elementary school to the people's high school.	*Maalaisnuoriso voi mennä kansakouluista kansanopistoihin.*
theoretical	*tietopuolinen*
teaching	*opetus*
practical	*käytännöllinen*
subject *or* material	*aine*
household	*talous*
Beside theoretical subjects they teach also practical subjects, such as handicrafts, home economics, and agriculture.	*Niissä tietopuolisen opetuksen lisäksi opetetaan myös käytännöllisiä aineita, kuten käsitöitä kotitaloutta ja maataloutta.*
working men's institute	*työväenopisto*
district	*seutu*
The working men's institute has the same function in the cities and factory districts as the people's high school in the country.	*Työväenopistoilla on sama tehtävä kaupungeissa ja tehdasseuduilla kuin kansanopistoilla maaseuduilla.*

freedom	*vapaus*
worker	*työläinen*
union	*liitto*
After Finland's War of Independence the workers, who now have an eight hour working day, formed a union.	*Suomen vapaussodan jälkeen työläiset, joilla nyt on kahdeksan tunnin työpäivä ovat muodostaneet liiton.*
social	*yhteiskunnallinen*
knowledge	*tieto*
Its purpose is to spread social knowledge among the people.	*Sen tehtävänä on opettaa yhteiskunnallista tietoa kansalle.*
to support	*ylläpitää*
course	*kurssi*
library	*kirjasto*
activity *or* pursuit	*harrastus*
It supports courses of study, libraries, artistic and other activities.	*Se ylläpitää opintokursseja, kirjastoja, taide- ja muita harrastuksia.*
student	*opiskelija*
schooling	*koulutus*
secondary school	*oppikoulu*
Students who want further schooling may attend secondary schools.	*Opiskelijat, jotka haluavat korkeampaa koulutusta voivat mennä oppikouluihin.*
Latin	*latina*
mathematics	*matematiikka*
In these schools they study languages such as Latin, German, Swedish, as well as mathematics, etc.	*Näissä kouluissa opetetaan kieliä kuten latinaa, saksaa, ruotsia, sekä matematiikkaa j. n. e.*

voluntary *or* by choice	*vapaaehtoinen*
Some of these languages are compulsory, others by choice.	*Toiset kielet ovat pakollisia toiset vapaaehtoisia.*
pupil	*oppilas*
There are in Finland about 230 secondary schools, with some 54,000 pupils.	*Suomessa on noin kaksisataakolmekymmentä oppikoulua ja niissä noin viisikymmentäneljätuhatta oppilasta.*
Four fifths of these schools are Finnish, one fifth Swedish.	*Neljä viidettä osaa näistä kouluista on suomalaisia, yksi viides osa ruotsalaisia.*
scientific	*tieteellinen*
The center of Finnish scientific life is the University of Helsinki.	*Tieteellisen elämän keskus on Helsingin Yliopisto.*
Institute of Technology	*Teknillinen Korkeakoulu*
to be trained	*valmistua*
engineer	*insinööri*
chemist	*kemisti*
Engineers and chemists are trained at the Institute of Technology.	*Teknillisessä Korkeakoulussa valmistuu insinöörejä ja kemistejä.*
Other technical schools include industrial, trade, craft, and agricultural schools.	*On muitakin teknillisiä kouluja kuten teollisuuskouluja, ammattikouluja, käsityökouluja maanviljelyskouluja.*
There are dairy schools at Kuopio, Kokemäki, and Kokkola.	*Meijerikouluja on Kuopiossa, Kokemäellä ja Kokkolassa.*

significance *or* weight	*merkitys*
history	*historia*
folklore	*kansanrunous*
studying	*opiskelu*
Great weight is given in Finland to the study of Finnish history, Finnish language and folklore.	*Suuri merkitys Suomessa pannaan Suomen historian, suomenkielen ja kansanrunouden opiskelulle.*

OSA B—SANAOPPIA JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS

1. Sanaoppia

Comment One—The Suffix -tta-

menettää	to lose	*uittaa*	to float

You know the verbs *mennä* 'to go', and *uida* 'to swim'. When you add the suffix *-tta-* to these verbs they come to mean 'to cause to go' or 'to lose', 'to cause to swim' or 'to float'. The meaning of the suffix, therefore, is 'to cause to'. The suffix is added to stems of one syllable (thus, *juoda* 'to drink', stem *juo-*, *juottaa* 'to make drink' (animals, for example); *syödä* 'to eat', stem *syö*, *syöttää* 'to feed'). The suffix is also added to stems of two syllables, ending in a short vowel (thus, *laulaa* 'to sing', stem *laula-*, *laulattaa* 'to make sing'), and to the vowel stem of two syllable verbs belonging to stem type II (thus, *panna* 'to put', stem *pane-*, *panettaa* 'to make someone put'; don't confuse this suffix with -(*t*)*ta*(')-, unit 17, pages 284-6, which is always added to the consonant stem of these verbs: contrast *menettä-* and *mentä-*). Certain other verb stems take slightly different variants of this same suffix (*-ta-* or *-utta-*).

Comment Two—Suffix -u-

jatkua	to be continued	*parantua*	to get well
valmistua	to be trained		

You've learned the verb *jatkaa* 'to continue'; contrast it with *jatkua* 'to be continued'. Similarly, while *parantaa* means 'to cure', *parantua* means 'to get well'; *valmistaa* means 'to make ready' or 'to prepare', *valmistua* 'to be made ready' or 'to be trained'. The meaning of the *-u-* suffix, therefore, is 'to be done to' (reflexive) in contrast to 'to do'. Compare also *kääntää* 'to turn' something or someone else and *kääntyä* 'to turn' (oneself). The suffix is added to stems ending in *-a-*, *-ä-*, *-e-*, and the latter usually disappears before the *-u-*, as in the above examples (note also *sulkea* 'to close', *sulkeutua* 'to be closed automatically'). Certain other verb stems take slightly different variants of this same suffix (*-utu-*, *-pu-*).

Comment Three—Variations on a Stem

oppi study

opinto
oppia
oppilas
oppinut
opisto

opetus
opettaa
opettaja
opettajatar

opiskelu
opiskella
opiskelija

A glance at these eleven words will show that they are related in some way. Let's see what they have in common. Everyone of the words has the element *op-;* four words, moreover, have the element *opp-*. These two are merely variants of one another, as you know from the discussion in unit 11, pages 201-3 (just as *kupp-* is a variant of *kup-;* compare *kuppi* and *kupit*). Taking arbitrarily *opp-* as the basic form, we note that it's followed by either *-i-* or *-e-*. As you know, further, *-i-* is replaced by *-e-* in Finnish before certain suffixes, so the two vowels may be taken as variants of one another. Now, taking *-i-* as the basic form, we arrive at the element *oppi-* which is common to all the above words. Having noted how these words are related, let's see now how they differ.

If we take *oppi-* as a basic stem underlying all the forms, then *oppi* 'study' is a basic free form.

Let's take the words in the column to the left, one by one.

Opinto consists of the stem *oppi-* and the suffix *-nto*, including the regular automatic replacement of *pp* by *p*. This suffix *-nto*, and the closely related suffixes *-nta*, *-nti*, mean roughly 'the act of'. Thus, *opinto* is 'the act of studying'; *etsintä* 'the act of looking for', 'the search' (from *etsiä* 'to look for'); *vienti* 'export' (from *viedä* 'to take away'); *tuonti* 'import' (from *tuoda* 'to bring').

Oppia 'to learn' consists of the stem and the suffix *-ta*('), which was discussed in unit 19, pages 307-8. In contrast to *oppi*, which we called a basic free form, we might call *oppia* a derived free form.

Oppilas 'pupil' consists of the stem and the suffix *-las*, the same which you've had in *sotilas* 'soldier', and *potilas* 'patient'.

Oppinut 'scholar' consists of the stem and the suffix *-nut*, which was discussed in unit 16, pages 270-1. The meaning, more exactly, is 'learned'; *oppinut mies* 'man of learning'. Note also, *oppinut maailma* 'the learned world'.

Opisto 'institute' consists of the stem and the suffix -(*i*)*sto*, which has a collective meaning. For example, *laiva* 'boat'; *laivasto* 'navy'; *kirja* 'book', *kirjasto* 'library'; *mies*, 'man', *miehistö* 'men' or 'crew'; *osa* 'part', *osasto* 'branch'.

Now we may take the words in the middle column. Note that *-i-* is replaced by *-e-* before all the suffixes here.

Earlier in this unit you learned the suffix *-tta-* 'to cause to'. 'To cause to learn' means 'to teach'. Hence *oppi-* plus *-tta-* form the derived stem *opetta-*.

Opetus (further derived stem *opetukse-*) 'teaching' is a rather special formation from the stem *opetta-* with the suffix *-us*, meaning, with the closely related suffix *-os* 'the act of'. Before these suffixes *-tta-* is replaced by *-t-:* thus also *kiitos* 'thanks, the act of thanking' from *kiittää* 'to thank' (note the further derived noun stem *kiitokse-*); *katsaus* 'review' from *katsoa* 'to look'; *tarkoittaa* 'to mean', *tarkoitus* 'meaning'; *merkitä* 'to mean', *merkitys* 'meaning'.

Opettaa 'to teach' consists of the derived stem *opetta-*, and the suffix *-ta*(') (see the form *oppia* above).

Opettaja 'teacher' consists of the derived stem *opetta-*, and the suffix *-ja*, which means 'one who acts'; *lukea* 'to read', *lukija* 'reader' (note that *-e-* is replaced by *-i-* before *-j*); *mennä* 'to go', *menijä* 'one who goes'; *käydä* 'to go' *kävijä* 'visitor'; *antaa* 'to give', *antaja* 'giver'; and so on.

Opettajatar 'teacher' or 'school-mistress' is the same as the former, plus the suffix *-tar*, which was discussed in unit 15, page 252, and which designates people of feminine sex.

Let's turn to the words in the column to the right.

In addition to the basic stem form *oppi-*, the forms in this column have another common element, namely, the suffix *-skele-*. This suffix is one of several meaning roughly 'to do repeatedly', 'to do often', 'to do steadily'. 'To learn steadily' means 'to study'. Hence *oppi-* plus *-skele-* from the derived stem *opiskele-*.

Opiskelu 'studying' consists of the derived stem *opiskele-*, and the suffix *-u* (before which *-e-* disappears). This *-u* suffix means, like the closely related suffix *-o*, and like *-nto*, *-nta*, *-nti*, *-us*, *-os* discussed above, 'the act of'. For example, *löytää* 'to find', *löytö* 'discovery'; *jatkaa* 'to continue', *jatko* 'continuation'; *alkaa* 'to begin', *alku* 'beginning'.

Opiskella 'to study' consists of the derived stem *opiskele-*, and the suffix *-ta*(') (see the forms *oppia* and *opettaa* above).

Opiskelija 'student' consists of the derived stem *opiskele-*, and the suffix *-ja*, discussed above (see *opettaja*).

Many other suffixes could be added to the stem *oppi-*. Can you dig up other sets of related forms, based on some other stem? This process of derivation per-

vades the entire Finnish language and it is therefore important that you should understand it thoroughly.

2. Sanaopin jälkikatsaus

Peittämällä[2] *ensiksi englantilaiset ja sitten suomalaiset sanontatavat ääntäkää itseksenne englantilaiset sanontatavat suomeksi ja sitten vastaavat suomalaiset sanontatavat englanniksi.*

3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

Jatkakaa peruslauseitten ensi osan harjoitusta suullisesti.

OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (*Jatkoa*)

1. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus (*Jatkoa*)

Jatkakaa peruslauseitten toisen osan harjoitusta suullisesti.

2. Peruslauseitten kertausta[3]

Kerratkaa itseksenne kaikki peruslauseet ja sanontatavat niin että osaatte[4] *ne ja tiedätte niiden tarkoituksen.*

3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

I. Say each sentence aloud. When you are sure that you understand it, mark it true (T) or false (F), assuming that the information contained in this and the previous units is correct.

1. *On mahdotonta matkustaa lentokoneella Tukholmasta Helsinkiin.*
2. *Suomessa presidentti aina edustaa puoluetta.*
3. *Presidentti valitaan kuudeksi vuodeksi kerrallaan.*
4. *Suomen eduskunnassa on kaksi kamaria samalla tavalla kuin Yhdysvalloissa.*
5. *Suomi on jaettu kymmeneen lääniin, joiden päänä on maaherra.*
6. *Suomen suurimmat metsät ovat Etelä- ja Länsi-Suomessa.*
7. *Puutavaraa tuodaan Suomeen ulkomailta.*
8. *Imatran Voimalaitos on valtion omistama.*
9. *Outokumpu ja muut kuparikaivokset eivät ole valtion omistamia.*
10. *Suomesta viedään porsliinia ja lasitavaroita Yhdysvaltoihin.*
11. *Kaikkien lasten täytyy käydä koulua Suomessa.*

---

[2] *Peittää* 'to cover'. [3] *Kerrata* 'to repeat' or 'to review'. [4] *Osata* 'to know how'.

12. *Lukutaidottomien prosentti Suomessa on hyvin suuri.*
13. *Suomessa ei ole työväen liittoja.*
14. *Insinöörejä ja kemistejä valmistuu Helsingin Yliopistossa, mikä on Suomen oppineen maailman keskus.*
15. *Kansanrunoudelle ei anneta mitään merkitystä Suomessa, ja sitä ei opeteta missään kouluissa.*

II. Make all the variations you can on the basic stem *löy-* (for instance, *löytää* 'to find'). List each derived form that you can think of; add all suffixes that you can. Then take each form that you've worked out, and use it in a sentence. At the next group meeting say each of your sentences aloud; the Guide or other members of the group will criticize.

OSA D—LISTENING IN

1. Mitä te sanoitte?

Yhdessä luokan toisten oppilaitten kanssa vastatkaa suullisesti edellisiin harjoituksiin kun ohjaaja kysyy.

2. Sanaopin kertausta

Ohjaajan sanoessa englanninkieliset vastineet[5] sanaopista kääntäkää ne suomeksi.

3. Listening In

Kirje pojalta hänen vanhemmilleen

Vaasassa, syyskuun 7 p. 1944.

Terve Äiti ja Isä!

Ensimäinen viikkoni koulutiellä on lopussa.

Junamatka tänne meni oikein hyvin.

Junassa oli paljon ihmisiä.

Näin paljon sotilaita, jotka olivat tulossa lomalle rintamalta.

Toiset olivat haavoittuneet käteen ja toiset jalkaan.

He olivat jo niin paljon parantuneet, että saivat mennä kotiin.

Junassa oli myös monta henkilöä meidän kylästä.

Muunmuassa naapurin isäntä, joka tuli kaupunkiin ostoksille.

Hän sanoi ostavansa uuden radion.

Aikani meni niin nopeasti keskustellessani hänen kanssaan kaikista asioista, etten huomannutkaan kun olimme jo Vaasan asemalla.

Ajoin vuokra-autolla asemalta asuntopaikkaani.

Huoneeni on pieni mutta kaunis.

Pää-asia on, että minulla on hyvä kirjoituspöytä.

Isännän huoneessa on suuri kirjasto.

---

[5] *Vastine* 'equivalent'.

Hän sanoi, että saan ottaa sieltä lukemista milloin vain haluan.

Koko tämä perhe, jossa asun on hyvin hauska.

Ruoka on mainiota, ei kuitenkaan niin hyvää kuin äiti keittää.

Pidän erikoisesti Laurista, joka on vain kaksi vuotta vanhempi kuin minä.

Hän käy samaa koulua, mutta on jo kolmannella luokalla.

Hän sanoi auttavansa minua mielellään kotitehtävissäni.

Olen iloinen että koulu on niin lähellä asuntoani.

Koulu alkaa kahdeksalta ja minun ei tarvitse lähteä asunnostani kuin kymmentä vailla.

Koko viikon on ollut hyvin kaunista, vain tänään satoi vähän.

Eilen koulun jälkeen kävelin Laurin kanssa satamaan.

Siellä oli monta laivaa, muunmuassa yksi suuri Saksan sotalaivastoon kuuluva laiva.

Ja sitten koulusta.

Minun täytyy sanoa, että kesäloman jälkeen koulunkäynti ei tunnu erikoisen hauskalta.

Kuitenkin haluan tulla insinööriksi kuten isä.

Ja ymmärrän, että minun on parasta alkaa heti alusta sitä silmällä pitäen.

Onneksi pidän matematiikan opettajastani oikein paljon, sillä sehän on lempiaineeni.

Luulen, ettei minulla tule olemaan siinä paljon vaikeuksia.

Saa nähdä sitten, kuinka hyvin tulen toimeen kielissä.

Ensimäisellä luokalla ei opeteta muita vieraita kieliä kuin ruotsia.

Toisella luokalla aletaan opettaa saksaa; kuudennella englantia, ranskaa ja latinaa.

Vain yksi näistä kolmesta kielestä on pakollinen.

Luulen, että minä haluan opiskella englantia, sillä toivon että voin kerran käydä Amerikassa opintomatkalla.

Mutta siitähän voimme puhua myöhemmin.

Siihenhän on vielä pitkä aika.

Tänä iltana menemme Laurin kanssa elokuviin katsomaan erästä amerikkalaista elokuvaa.

Sen nimi on Buffalo Bill.

Luin sen kirjan jo monta vuotta sitten ja pidin siitä hyvin paljon.

Ensi kirjeessä kerron siitä enemmän.

Nyt luulen, että minun täytyy alkaa valmistaa kotitehtäviäni.

Jos teen sen tänään, ei minun tarvitse lukea huomenna kun on sunnuntai.

Toivon, että kirjoitatte minulle, kuinka te kaikki voitte siellä kotona.

Pitäkää hyvää huolta Halli koirastani.

Kun meillä on ensimäinen lomapäivä, tulen kotona käymään.

Teidän poikanne
Toivo.

OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

1. Peruslauseitten kertausta

Peittäen suomenkielisen tekstin[6] *harjoitelkaa itseksenne kunnes osaatte suomeski jokaisen englanninkielisen lauseen.*

2. Sanojen kertausta

Ohjaajan lausuessa peruslauseet englanniksi kääntäkää ne suomeksi.

3. Keskustelua

1. Give your educational background, telling what schools you've attended, stating the time you spent at each. Include the main subjects you've studied.

   Give any occupations you've had after leaving school, including the age at which you held various positions, the location, reasons for leaving, and so forth.

2. Have you had a favorite teacher in school or in college? Tell your friend all about this teacher—why you liked him (or her), and why all teachers should be like that.

3. An American and a Finn compare the educational system of their respective countries. Bring out clearly how they are alike and show how they differ.

OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

Jälkikatsaus

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences.*

Sanaluettelo

aine	subject *or* material
harrastus	activity *or* pursuit
historia	history
ikä	age
insinööri	engineer

---

[6] *Teksti* 'text'.

jatko	extension
järjestelmä	system
kansakoulu	elementary school
kansanopisto	people's high school
kansanrunous	folklore
kasvatus	education
kemisti	chemist
kerrata	to repeat *or* to review
kirjasto	library
koulutus	schooling
kurssi	course
käytännöllinen	practical
latina	Latin
liitto	union
lukutaidoton	illiterate
maalaisnuoriso	country youth
matematiikka	mathematics
merkitys	significance *or* weight
opetus	teaching
opinto	learning
opiskelija	student
opiskelu	studying
oppikoulu	secondary school
oppilas	pupil
oppivelvollisuus	compulsory education
osata	to know how
pakollinen	compulsory
peittää	to cover
prosentti	percentage
seminaari	training college for teachers
seutu	district
talous	household
Teknillinen Korkeakoulu	Institute of Technology
teksti	text
tieteellinen	scientific
tietopuolinen	theoretical
-tta	verb suffix
työläinen	worker
työväenopisto	working men's institute
täysi	full
-u	verb suffix
valmistua	to be trained
vapaaehtoinen	voluntary *or* by choice
vapaus	freedom
vastine	equivalent
ylläpitää	to support

LUKU 28

ARMEIJASSA[1]

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

ENGLANNIKSI	SUOMEKSI
What's your rank?	*Mikä on sotilasarvonne?*
I'm a private first class.	*Minä olen korpraali.*
My comrade here is a private.	*Toverini on sotamies.*
We are all *noncommissioned officers.*	*Olemme kaikki* aliupseereita.
(*Replace* 'noncommissioned officer' by the following ranks:)	(Korvatkaa *sana 'aliupseeri' seuraavilla sotilasarvoilla:*)
corporal	*alikersantti*
sergeant	*kersantti*
officer	*upseeri*
My brother is serving in the infantry.	*Veljeni palvelee jalkaväessä.*

---

[1] This unit should be used with the *Finnish Phrase Book* TM30-617 of the War Department. Many of the expressions given in this unit are in the form of fill-in-sentences. For example, you may find a sentence *Oletteko sotamies?* 'Are you a private?' You should practice this sentence replacing *sotamies* by *luutnantti*, *kapteeni* and so forth. New words in the text are italicized in English.

He's a *second lieutenant.*	*Hän on* vänrikki.
(Replace 'second lieutenant' by:)	(*Korvatkaa sana 'vänrikki' arvoilla:*)
first lieutenant	*luutnantti*
captain	*kapteeni*
major	*majuri*
lieutenant *colonel*	everstiluutnantti
The regiment *is commanded* by the colonel.	*Eversti* komentaa *rykmenttiä.*
The *division* is *under* the command of the *general.*	Divisioona *on* kenraalin *komennuksen* alainen.
My *grandfather* used to be in the Navy.	Isoisäni *oli Laivastossa.*
He was an *ensign.*	*Hän oli* aliluutnantti.
My father was a *seaman.*	*Isäni oli* matruusi.
What's your *outfit?*	*Mikä on* joukko-osastonne?
(Replace 'outfit' by:)	(*Korvatkaa sana 'joukkoosasto' sanoilla:*)
company	*komppania*
battery	patteri
troop	eskadroona
flight	lentue
battalion	pataljoona
squadron	laivue
group	lentoryhmä
I'm in the Marines.	*Olen Meri*[2]*jalkaväessä.*

---

[2] *Meri* 'sea'.

(Replace 'Marines' by:)	(*Korvatkaa sana 'Merijalkaväki' sanoilla:*)
Air Forces	*Ilmavoimat*
Armored Command	Panssarijoukot
Artillery	Tykistö
Cavalry	Ratsuväki
Engineers	Pioneerit
Medical Corps	Lääkintäjoukot
Ordnance Corps	Taisteluvälineosasto
Quartermaster Corps	Huoltojoukot
Signal Corps	Viestijoukot
There are five *Military Policemen.*	*Tuolla on viisi* sotapoliisia.
They *arrested* a *pilot.*	*He* pidättivät lentäjän.
(Replace 'pilot' by:)	(*Korvatkaa sana 'lentäjä' sanoilla:*)
the parachutist	laskuvarjosotilas
the machine gunner	konekivääriampuja
the sniper	tarkka-ampuja
the radio operator	radisti
Have the *mechanic* repair the machine gun.	*Korjauttakaa konekivääri* mekaanikolla.
(Replace 'machine gun' by:)	(*Korvatkaa 'konekivääri' sanoilla:*)
heavy gun	raskas tykki
plane	*lentokone*
tank	hyökkäysvaunu
telephone *lines*	*puhelin*johdot
motorcycle	moottoripyörä
equipment	varusteet

Bring *your ammunition.*	*Tuokaa* ammuksenne.
(Replace 'ammunition' by:)	(*Korvatkaa sana 'ammukset' sanoilla:*)
bayonet	pistin
grenade	kranaatti
pistol	pistooli
pocket flashlight	*taskulamppu*
Are there soldiers near here?	*Onko täällä sotilaita lähellä?*
Are they our *enemies?*	*Ovatko he* vihollisiamme?
The captured soldier spoke Swedish.	*Vangiksi*[3]*joutunut sotilas puhui ruotsia.*
(Replace 'Swedish' by:)	(*Korvatkaa sana 'ruotsia' sanoilla:*)
Danish	*tanskaa*
English	*englantia*
German	*saksaa*
Norwegian	*norjaa*
Russian	*venäjää*
Help!	*Auttakaa!*
Danger!	Vaara!
Step forward!	Astukaa esiin!
Quickly!	*Nopeasti!*
Don't *shoot!*	*Älkää* ampuko!

---

[3] *Vanki* 'prisoner'.

Advance!	*Eteenpäin!*
Surrender!	Antautukaa!
Obey or I'll fire!	Totelkaa *tai ammun!*
I'm wounded!	*Olen haavoittunut!*
Bring a doctor!	Hakekaa *lääkäri!*
Bring *help!*	*Hakekaa* apua!
The Germans shot many people in this village.	*Saksalaiset ampuivat paljon ihmisiä tässä kylässä*
You'd better *hide* in the *cellar.*	*Parasta on että* piiloudutte kellariin.
(Replace 'cellar' by:)	(*Korvatkaa sana 'kellari' sanoilla:*)
stable	*talli*
barn	*navetta*
woods	*metsä*
The Germans *are fleeing.*	*Saksalaiset* pakenevat.
The city is now in the hands of the Americans.	*Kaupunki on nyt amerikkalaisten käsissä.*
Is there a river near here?	*Onko täällä joki lähellä?*
(Replace 'river' by:)	(*Korvatkaa sana 'joki' sanoilla:*)
a well	kaivo
a railroad	*rautatie*
a telephone exchange	*puhelinasema*
a radio station	*radioasema*

a village	*kylä*
a city	*kaupunki*
a lake	*järvi*
a forest	*metsä*
Is this *bridge* good?	*Onko tämä* silta *hyvä?*
(Replace 'good' by:)	(*Korvatkaa sana 'hyvä' sanoilla:*)
bad	*huono*
passable	kulkukelpoinen
impassable	kulkukelvoton
Draw me a map!	*Piirtäkää minulle kartta!*
My girl-friend *enlisted* in the Lotta Svärd.[4]	*Tyttötoverini* yhtyi *Lotta Svärdeihin.*

OSA B—SANAOPPIA JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS

1. Sanaoppia

Comment One—The Suffix -la

sairaala	hospital	*kanala*	chicken house

The word *sairas* 'sick, invalid', has a vowel stem form *sairaa-*, to which the *-la* suffix is added in the above example; similarly, *kana* 'chicken' has the *-la* suffix. This *-la* means roughly 'place where' (invalids are, chickens are, and so on). Thus also *sika* 'pig', *sikala* 'pig sty'.

Comment Two—The Suffix -ue(')

laivue	squadron	*lentue*	flight

The suffix *-ue*(') (stem form *-uee-*) has a roughly collective meaning ('a group of people') like *-(i)sto* ('a group of things'). Thus also ***matkue*** 'party (of travellers)', ***joukkue*** 'group'.

---

[4] For the Lotta Svärd see Alexander Matson, 'Finland's Army of Women', *The American Scandinavian Review* 28.39-44 (1940).

Comment Three—The Suffix -kas

nenäkäs	impertinent

The word ***nenä*** means 'nose', and the suffix *-kas* (stem form *-kkaa-*) means 'endowed with a certain quality'; the literal meaning of ***nenäkäs***, then, is 'nosy'. Thus also ***voimakas*** 'strong' (***voima*** 'power, strength'), ***arvokas*** 'valuable' (***arvo*** 'value').

Comment Four—The Suffix -llinen

tyypillinen	typical	***rauhallinen***	peaceful

The suffix *-llinen* (stem form *-llise-*) usually means 'pertaining to'. You've had such examples as ***virallinen*** 'official' (***virka*** 'position'), ***teknillinen*** 'technical', and you may add ***kirjallinen*** 'literary', ***taivaallinen*** 'heavenly', ***onnellinen*** 'happy, lucky' (from ***onni*** 'luck', with rather different meaning).

Comment Five—The Suffix -ton

kulkukelvoton	impassable	***tajuton***	unconscious

The suffix *-ton* (stem form *-ttoma-*) means 'without' ('un-', 'in-', '-less'), as in the above examples (***kulkukelpo-inen*** 'passable', ***taju*** 'consciousness'). Note these further examples: ***isätön ja äiditön*** 'fatherless and motherless', ***avuton*** 'helpless' (from ***apu*** 'help'; the replacement here of ***p*** by ***v*** is due to the back formation on the analogy of the stem form ***avuttoma-***), ***toivoton*** 'hopeless', ***onneton*** 'unhappy, unlucky'.

Note: The suffixes *-la*, *-ue(')*, *-kas*, *-llinen* and *-ton* are all added to ***noun*** stems.

Comment Six—The Suffix -mus

kysymys	question

Kysyä 'to ask' has the stem form ***kysy-***, to which *-mus* (stem form *-mukse-*) is added; the latter means 'the action of'—***kysymys*** 'the action of asking'. Note also ***täyttymys*** 'fulfillment', from ***täyttää*** 'to fill (out)'.

Comment Seven—The Suffix -e(')

pyyhe	towel

Pyyhkiä 'to wipe' has the stem form ***pyyhki-***, to which the suffix *-e(')* (stem form *-ee-*) is added; the latter means 'the act of'. Thus also ***puhe*** 'speech' (from ***puhua*** 'to speak'), ***side*** 'bandage' (from ***sitoa*** 'to bind, wrap').

Comment Eight—The Suffix -mo

kutomo	textile mill

Kutoa 'to weave' has the stem form *kuto-*, to which the suffix *-mo* is added; the latter means 'place where they do something'. Thus also *sitomo* 'bindery', *leipomo* 'bakery' (from *leipoa* 'to bake'), *polttimo* 'distillery' (from *polttaa* 'to burn').

Comment Nine—The Suffix -in

avain	key

Avata 'to open' has the stem form *ava-*, to which the suffix *-in* (stem form *-ime-*) is added; the latter means 'instrument with which'. Thus also, *puhelin* 'telephone', *soitin* 'musical instrument' (from *soittaa* 'to call' or 'to play').

Note: The suffixes *-mus*, *-e(')*, *-mo* and *-in* are all added to *verb* stems.

2. Sanaopin jälkikatsaus

Peittämällä ensiksi englantilaiset ja sitten suomalaiset sanontatavat ääntäkää itseksenne englantilaiset sanontatavat suomeksi ja sitten vastaavat suomalaiset sanontatavat englanniksi.

3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

Jatkakaa peruslauseitten ensi osan harjoitusta suullisesti.

OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (*Jatkoa*)

1. Peruslausitten jälkikatsaus (*Jatkoa*)

Jatkakaa peruslauseitten toisen osan harjoitusta suullisesti.

2. Peruslauseitten kertausta

Kerratkaa itseksenne kaikki peruslauseet ja sanontatavat niin että osaatte ne ja tiedätte niiden tarkoituksen.

3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

Below you will find sets of two words or phrases (*a* to *t*). Fit each pair into a sentence and say each finished sentence aloud. Sample: x. *lääkäri/sairaala; Lääkäri hoitaa potilaita sairaalassa* 'the doctor takes care of the patients in the hospital'.

a. *Ratsuväki/hevonen*
b. *Yhtyä/joukko-osasto*

c. *Taisteluvälineosasto/kersantti*
d. *Piilottaa/pistooli*
e. *Pioneerit/silta*
f. *Vihollinen/joutua vangiksi*
g. *Matruusi/laiva*
h. *Radisti/lentokone*
i. *Hakea/kaivo*
j. *Ampua/raskas tykki*
k. *Totella/upseeri*
l. *Sotamies/paeta*
m. *Lääkäri/lääkintäjoukot*
n. *Divisioona/komentaa*
o. *Silta/pitkä*
p. *Mekaanikko/korjata*
q. *Antautua/vihollinen*
r. *Sotapoliisi/pidättää*
s. *Lentäjä/lentokone*
t. *Vänrikki/aliupseeri*

OSA D—KUUNTELUHARJOITUSTA

1. Mitä te sanoitte?

Yhdessä luokan toisten oppilaitten kanssa vastatkaa suullisesti edellisiin harjoituksiin kun ohjaaja kysyy.

2. Sanaopin kertausta

Ohjaajan sanoessa englanninkieliset vastineet sanaopista kääntäkää ne suomeksi.

3. Kuunteluharjoitusta

I. Naimisiin meno.

Sotilas: *Herra kapteeni. haluaisin viikon loman.*
Kapteeni: *Miksi? Mitä te aijotte tehdä?*
Sotilas: *Mennä naimisiin.*
Kapteeni: *Vai niin! Kuinka kauan olette tunteneet tämän tytön?*
Sotilas: *Viikon.*
Kapteeni: *Mutta hyvänen aika, mies, se ei ole tarpeeksi kauan.*
Ehdotan, että odottaisitte pari kuukautta ja jos sitten vielä haluatte mennä naimisiin, annan teille loman.

Kaksi kuukautta myöhemmin sotilas tulee takaisin ja pyytää lomaa.

Kapteeni: *Te siis todellakin haluatte mennä naimisiin.*
En tiennyt, että nuori mies nykyään menee ulos saman tytön kanssa näin kauan.

Sotilas: *Ymmärrän hyvin mitä tarkoitatte, herra kapteeni.*
Mutta tämä ei olekkaan sama tyttö.

II. Sotilas elämää

Kersantti komentaa sotamiehiä.
"Oikealle!" hän komentaa.
Heti sen jälkeen "Käännös vasemmalle!"
Alokas jättää komppaniansa palatakseen parakkeihin.
"Hei sinä, minne luulet meneväsi!"

Sotamies: *"Ethän sinä tiedä itsekään mitä haluat.*
Kahden minuutin sisällä olet muuttanut mielesi ainakin sata kertaa."

III. Maailmansota

Isä: *Ja siinä, poikani, on koko kertomus isästäsi ja maailmansodasta.*
Poika: *Niinkö isä!*
Mutta mitä armeija teki kaikilla toisilla sotilailla?

IV. Kirje

Matruusi: *Anna minun olla rauhassa.*
Kirjoitan tytölleni.
Sotamies: *Miksi kirjoitat niin hitaasti?*
Matruusi: *Hän ei ossa lukea nopeasti.*

V. Parranajo

Kersantti: *Ajoitteko partanne tänä aamuna?*
Sotilas: *Kyllä, herra kersantti.*
Kersantti: *Huomenna menkää lähemmäksi parranajokonettanne.*

OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

1. Peruslauseitten kertausta

Peittäen suomenkielisen tekstin harjoitelkaa itseksenne kunnes osaatte suomeksi jokaisen englanninkielisen lauseen.

2. Sanojen kertausta

Ohjaajan lausuessa peruslauseet englanniksi kääntäkää ne suomeksi.

3. Keskustelua

1. A civilian wants you to explain the organization of your division. He knows nothing whatever about the Army, and you must tell him the most elementary details. For example, speaking of rank, you explain that a lieutenant is higher than a sergeant, a colonel is higher than a captain, etc.

2. Three privates are having a discussion. Joe is in the Artillery, Bill in the Armored Command, Jack in the Infantry. They are sitting in a bar, and each is praising the merits of the other two fellows' branches of service, but griping about his own. After a while the discussion becomes quite heated and the men raise their voices. A sailor, sitting near by, points out the superiority of life aboard ship to that in any branch of the Army. Now each man sticks up for his own branch, and it's three against one in favor of the Army. After a while the two services stand drinks for each other, and turn to a different, but common topic of conversation: girls.

3. A parachutist has just dropped in on a farm and two Finns are telling him that the enemy is close by. The parachutist assures them that more soldiers are dropping from airplanes and the situation is well in hand. The Finns explain the position of the Germans.

4. Discuss the invasion of France or any other major military operation you know about; or describe manoeuvres you have taken part in.

OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

Lopettakaa keskustelu. Ohjaaja kertaa peruslauseet jos se on välttämätöntä.[5]

Jälkikatsaus

Täydellinen[6] *sanaopin ja peruslauseitten kertaus.*

Sanaluettelo

alainen	under
alikersantti	corporal
aliluutnantti	ensign
aliupseeri	noncommissioned officer
ammukset	ammunition

---

[5] *Välttämätöntä* 'necessary'.

[6] *Täydellinen* 'complete'.

ampua	to shoot
antautua	to surrender
apu	help
astua esiin	to step forward
divisioona	division
-e(')	verb based suffix, 'the act of'
eskadroona	troop
eversti	colonel
hakea	to fetch
Huoltojoukot	Quartermaster Corps
hyökkäysvaunu	tank
-in	verb based suffix, 'instrument with which'
isoisä	grandfather
johdot	lines
joukko-osasto	outfit
kaivo	well
-kas	noun based suffix, 'endowed with a certain quality'
kellari	cellar
kenraali	general
komentaa	to command

konekivääriampuja	machine gunner
korvata	to replace
kranaatti	grenade
kulkukelpoinen	passable
-la	noun based suffix, 'place where'
laskuvarjosotilas	parachutist
lentoryhmä	group
-llinen	noun based suffix, 'pertaining to'
Lääkintäjoukot	Medical Corps
matruusi	seaman
mekaanikko	mechanic
meri	sea
-mo	verb based suffix, 'place where they do something'
moottoripyörä	motorcycle
-mus	verb based suffix, 'the action of'
paeta	to flee
Panssarijoukot	Armored Command
pataljoona	battalion
patteri	battery
pidättää	to arrest
piiloutua	to hide
Pioneerit	Engineers

pistin	bayonet
pistooli	pistol
radisti	radio operator
raskas tykki	heavy gun
Ratsuväki	Cavalry
silta	bridge
Sotapoliisi	Military Police
Taisteluvälineosasto	Ordnance Corps
tarkka-ampuja	sniper
-ton	noun based suffix, ‘without’
totella	to obey
Tykistö	Artillery
täydellinen	complete
-ue(')	noun based suffix, ‘a group of’
vaara	danger
vanki	prisoner
varusteet	equipment
vihollinen	enemy
välttämätön	necessary
vänrikki	second lieutenant
yhtyä	to enlist *or* to join

LUKU 29

KIRJALLISUUS[1] JA TAIDE[2]

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

Ted, joka on amerikkalainen vierailee Pekkalan perheessä.
Hän ja Hilkka Pekkala keskustelevat.

ENGLANNIKSI	SUOMEKSI
	Ted
What are you reading?	*Mitä sinä luet?*
	Hilkka
Kalevala	*Kalevala*
This is the Kalevala.	*Tämä on Kalevala.*
	Ted
But don't they read it in the high schools?	*Mutta ettekö te lue Kalevalaa oppikouluissa?*
	Hilkka
Of course, but I just got this for my birthday.	*Tietysti, mutta sain tämän syntymäpäiväkseni.*
One never gets tired of reading it.	*Sitä ei väsy koskaan lukemaan.*

---

[1] *Kirjallisuus* 'literature'. [2] *Taide* 'art'.

root	*juuri*
celebrated	*mainehikas*
century	*vuosisata*
The Kalevala has its roots in the famous old folksongs which the people of Finland have sung for centuries.	*Kalevala on saanut juurensa vanhoista mainehikkaista kansanlauluista, joita Suomen kansa on laulanut vuosisatoja sitten.*
fairy tale	*satu*
legend *or* tradition	*tarina*
poem	*runo*
to collect	*kerätä*
to be published	*ilmestyä*
They told each other fairy tales, legends and folk poems, collected by Eljas Lönnrot.	*He kertoivat toisilleen satuja, tarinoita ja kansanrunoja, jotka Eljas Lönnrot on kerännyt.*
It was published for the first time in 1835.	*Kalevala ilmestyi ensimäisen kerran vuonna 1835.*

Ted

generally	*yleensä*
influence	*vaikutus*
Did it have any influence on literature in general or on any of the other arts?	*Onko sillä yleensä ollut vaikutusta muuhun kirjallisuuteen tai taiteeseen?*

Hilkka

example	*esimerkki*
hero	*sankari*
Oh yes. For example Aleksis Kivi's play Kullervo deals with a hero of the Kalevala.	*Kyllä, kuten esimerkiksi Aleksis Kiven näytelmään Kullervo, jossa kerrotaan Kalevalan sankarista.*

painter	*maalari*
to paint	*maalata*
design *or* subject	*aihe*
Painters, like A. Gallen-Kallela, have painted subjects from the Kalevala.	*Taidemaalarit, kuten A. Gallen-Kallela on maalannut paljon Kalevala-aiheisia maalauksia.*
music	*musiikki*
Our music also takes its subjects from the Kalevala.	*Myöskin on meillä Kalevala-aiheista musiikkia.*
The best known of these are Sibelius' Kullervo, Pohjolan Tytär and Tapiola.	*Tunnetuimpia niistä ovat Sibeliuksen Kullervo, Pohjolan Tytär ja Tapiola.*

Ted

Very interesting.	*Hyvin mielenkiintoista.*
Why don't you tell me more about your artists?	*Kerro minulle enempi teidän taiteilijoistanne, ole hyvä.*

Hilkka

famous	*kuuluisa*
writer *or* author	*kirjailija*
Aleksis Kivi's *Seven Brothers* is well known.	*Aleksis Kiven Seitsemän Veljestä on hyvin tunnettu.*
Among many others, our well known writers are: Ilmari Kianto, Johannes Linnankoski, Joel Lehtonen, and so forth.	*Muita tunnettuja kirjailijoitamme ovat Ilmari Kianto, Johannes Linnankoski, Joel Lehtonen ja monet muut.*

Ted

How about F. E. Sillanpää?	*Entäs F. E. Sillanpää?*

Hilkka

international	*kansainvälinen*
fame	*maine*
Most famous of F. E. Sillanpää's works is his internationally known book the *Maid Silja.*	*Kuuluisin F. E. Sillanpään teoksista on hänen kansainvälistä mainetta saavuttanut kirjansa Nuorena Nukkunut.*

Ted

Of course I've heard of it.	*Tietystikin olen kuullut siitä.*
I've also read the works of Seppänen.	*Olen lukenut myöskin Unto Seppäsen teoksia.*
But I'd like to hear about your painters too.	*Haluaisin kuulla myöskin teidän taidemaalareistanne.*

Hilkka

Oh, there's Armas Järnefelt, Sallinen and many others.	*Armas Järnefelt, Sallinen ja monet muut.*
Of our architects Eliel Saarinen is the best known.	*Arkkitehdeistämme on Eliel Saarinen kuuluisin.*

Ted

academy	*akatemia*
He is in Michigan directing the Cranbrook Academy, isn't he?	*Hänhän on Michicanissa Cranbrook Akatemian johtajana.*
What did he build here in Finland?	*Mitä hän on rakentanut täällä Suomessa?*

Hilkka

He designed the railroad station of Helsinki.	*Hän on piirtänyt Helsingin aseman.*

Together with Lindgren he drew up the Pohjola building.	*Yhdessä Lindgrenin kanssa he ovat piirtäneet Pohjola rakennuksen.*
The National Museum is also his work.	*Myöskin Kansallismuseo on hänen käsialaansa.*
Ted	
Do you have many other museums?	*Onko teillä paljon muita museoita?*
Hilkka	
province	*maakunta*
There are about sixty provincial museums.	*Meillä on noin kuusikymmentä maakuntamuseoa.*
You must see the Seurasaari museum.	*Sinun on nähtävä Seurasaaren museo.*
Ted	
special	*erikoinen*
Is there something special about it?	*Onko siellä jotain erikoista?*
Hilkka	
It is an open air museum.	*Se on ulkoilma museo.*
ancient	*muinainen*
culture	*kulttuuri*
You can see there the ancient culture of the Finnish people.	*Siellä on nähtävänä muinaista kansan kulttuuria.*
The museum is scientifically directed by the University.	*Museo on Yliopiston tieteellisen ohjauksen alaisena.*

weight	*paino*
Great weight was always given to the study of Finnish culture.	*Suomessa on aina pantu suurta painoa kulttuurin opiskelulle.*
professor	*professori*
The first chair of folklore was established at the University of Helsinki, held by Kaarle Krohn.	*Kaarle Krohn oli ensimäinen suomenkielisen kansanrunouden professori Helsingin Yliopistossa.*

Ted

Tell me something about Finnish music.	*Kerrohan jotain suomalaisesta musiikista!*

Hilkka

I already mentioned Jean Sibelius.	*Jean Sibeliuksen olen jo ennemmin maininnut.*
Then we have others like Melartin, Madetoja and Hannikainen.	*Sitten meillä on muita, kuten Melartin, Madetoja ja Hannikainen.*

Ted

to love	*rakastaa*
I've noticed that the Finns love music.	*Olen huomannut, että suomalaiset rakastavat musiikkia.*

Hilkka

It's true.	*Se on totta.*
choir	*kuoro*
Almost in every village there is at least one choir.	*Melkein joka kylässä on ainakin yksi kuoro.*

to compose	*säveltää*
We have a good many beautiful songs by Palmgren, Kilpinen and Merikanto.	*Meillä on paljon Palmgrenin, Kilpisen ja Merikannon säveltämiä kauniita lauluja.*
	Ted
There is one art you haven't told me about.	*Mutta yhdestä taiteesta sinä et ole vielä kertonut.*
	Hilkka
What art?	*Mistä taiteesta?*
	Ted
The art of love.	*Rakkaustaiteesta.*
	Hilkka
That is also on a very high level in Finland, my love.	*Rakkaani, se on myöskin korkealla kannalla Suomessa.*

OSA B—SANAOPPIA JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS

1. Sanaoppia

Review carefully the *Word Study* sections of units 25, 26, 27 and 28.

Comment One—Kinship Terms

vaimo	wife	*isoisä*	grandfather
sisar	sister	*poika*	son

Terms, like the above, that designate a relative of yours are known as kinship terms. In dealing with a Finn you must learn to recognize the kinship terms he or she uses, and you will find it useful to know the precise meaning of these terms. Languages differ considerably in their kinship terminology and you will find that Finnish has terms of relations for which

English has none, and that a given term may have more than one English equivalent.

The Finnish kinship terms appear in the following table. Some of them you've had; others are new and will be listed in the Finder List. This is how the table must be used. There are five columns. Column 1 is a series of fixed numbers, corresponding to the English equivalents in column 5; the numbers in column 2, on the other hand, refer to the number of the corresponding Finnish term, as it appears for the first time. Now, when a Finnish term occurs again, instead of repeating it, you will find simply its original number assigned. You can thus see at a glance what terms correspond to what English equivalents. In column 3 it is assumed that a Finnish male is speaking; in column 4, a Finnish female: you will note that there is only one difference in the two columns.

1 *Fixed Number*	*2* *Term Number*	*3* *Finnish Term*	*4* *Female Speaking*	*5* *English Equivalent*
1	1	*Isä*		Father
2	2	*Äiti*		Mother
3	3	*Veli*		Brother
4	4	*Sisar*		Sister
5	5		*Mies*	Husband
6	6	*Vaimo*		Wife
7	7	*Poika*		Son
8	8	*Tytär*		Daughter
9	9	*Isoisä*		Father's father
10	10	*Isoäiti*		Father's mother
11		9		Mother's father
12		10		Mother's mother
13	11	*Setä*		Father's brother
14	12	*Täti*		Father's sister
15	13	*Eno*		Mother's brother

1 *Fixed Number*	*2* *Term Number*	*3* *Finnish Term*	*5* *English Equivalent*
16		12	Mother's sister
17		12	Father's brother's wife
18		11	Father's sister's husband
19		12	Mother's brother's wife
20		11	Mother's sister's husband
21	14	*Käly*	Brother's wife
22	15	*Lanko*	Sister's husband
23	16	*Miniä*	Son's wife
24	17	*Vävy*	Daughter's husband
25	18	*Appi* (sometimes 1)	Wife's or husband's father
26	19	*Anoppi* (sometimes 2)	Wife's or husband's mother
27	20	*Serkku*	Father's brother's son
28		20	Father's sister's son
29		20	Mother's brother's son
30		20	Mother's sister's son
31		7 & 7	Son's son
32		7 & 8	Son's daughter
33		8 & 7	Daughter's son
34		8 & 8	Daughter's daughter
35		3 & 7	Brother's son
36		3 & 8	Brother's daughter
37		4 & 7	Sister's son
38		4 & 8	Sister's daughter

Everybody, from *1-38*, is your ***sukulainen*** 'relative'. If you are unmarried, you belong to the ***perhe*** 'family' headed by 1, and including 2, 3 (unmarried), 4 (unmarried); if you are married and a male, you head your own *perhe*, and it includes 6, 7 (unmarried), 8 (unmarried).

Some of the kinship terms are also used for people who are not necessarily relatives:

3—Any close man friend can be so addressed (especially in letters); also a religious term.

4—Sometimes close girl friends can be so addressed; also a religious term.

7—Any young male; boy.

11—Polite term of address by a young person to an older male.

12—Polite term of address by a young person to an older female.

Here are some combined terms:

39	1 & 2	*vanhemmat*
40	3 & 3	*veljekset*
41	4 & 4	*sisarukset*
42	3 & 4	*sisarukset* (or *sisarekset*)
43	7 & 8	*lapset*

Note the terms *31-38*. Here two terms are used to describe one relative, in each case. The first term always ends in either a possessive suffix (see unit 4, pages 72-3 or in the *-n* suffix (see unit 1[illegible], pages 237-8). For instance, *36* (3 & 8) ***veljeni tytär*** 'my brother's daughter'. Terms of this sort, as in English, can be extended almost indefinitely; thus, 'father's father's mother' would be 9 & 2, ***isoisän äiti***, etc.

Comment Two—Summary

1. You have learned one more case suffix, the ***-ne***, so that you know altogether fourteen. There are a few, very rare, additional case suffixes, but you needn't worry about those.
2. You have learned several verb suffixes: *-(t)e-* (infinitive III), *-u-* (reflexive), *-skele-*.
3. You have learned a large number of suffixes by means of which you can make nouns of verbs, verbs of nouns.
4. You know the Finnish kinship system and terminology.

2. Sanaopin jälkikatsaus

Peittämällä ensiksi englantilaiset ja sitten suomalaiset sanontatavat ääntäkää itseksenne englantilaiset sanontatavat suomeksi ja sitten vastaavat suomalaiset sanontatavat englanniksi.

3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

Jatkakaa peruslauseitten ensi osan harjoitusta suullisesti.

OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (*Jatkoa*)

1. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus (*Jatkoa*)

Jatkakaa peruslauseitten toisen osan harjoitusta suullisesti.

2. Peruslauseitten kertausta

Kerratkaa itseksenne kaikki peruslauseet ja sanontatavat niin että osaatte ne ja tiedätte niiden tarkoituksen.

3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

I. Inquire among your Finnish friends and find out who the following are and what their importance is in Finnish culture:

1. *Runeberg, Juhani Aho, Maila Talvio, Mika Valtari, Eino Leino, Volter Kilpi.*
2. *Juho Rissanen, Pekka Halonen, Laitinen, Ekman, Yrjö Liipola.*
3. *Sulho Ranta, Kuula.*
4. *Juljus Krohn, Agricola, Setälä, Castren, Porthan, Erkki Karu, Cygneus, Ahlqvist, Harva, Sederholm.*

II. This is a true-false exercise like the one in unit 27, pages 400-1.

1. *Kalevalaa ei lueta Suomen oppikouluissa.*
2. *Kullervo on Kalevala-aiheinen näytelmä.*
3. *Suomessa ei ole Kalevala-aiheisia näytelmiä.*
4. *Pohjolan Tyttären on säveltänyt Kuula.*
5. *Eliel Saarinen on professorina Helsingin Yliopistossa.*
6. *Suomessa on noin kuusikymmentä maakuntamuseoa.*
7. *Kaarle Krohn oli ensimäinen kansanrunouden professori.*
8. *Merikanto on kuuluisa taidemaalarimme.*
9. *Suomen kansa on musikaalista.*
10. *Melkein jokaisessa kylässä on oma kuoro.*
11. *Me rakastamme vihollisiamme.*
12. *Divisioonaa komentaa kenraali.*
13. *Sotamiehen tehtävänä on totella upseerin antamia määräyksiä.*
14. *Hyökkäysvaunusotilas kuuluu laivastoon.*
15. *Laskuvarjosotilas käyttää aseenaan tykistöä.*
16. *Me taistelemme vihollisiamme vastaan.*
17. *Vangiksi joutuneet sotilaat voivat olla amerikkalaisia, saksalaisia j.n.e.*
18. *Järviä ja jokia ei ole Suomessa.*
19. *Rautatie ei ole kulkuväline.*
20. *Kalevala ilmestyi ensimäisen kerran vuonna 1835.*

OSA D—KUUNTELUHARJOITUSTA

1. Mitä te sanoitte?

Yhdessä luokan toisten oppilaitten kanssa vastatkaa suullisesti edellisiin harjoituksiin kun ohjaaja kysyy.

2. Sanaopin kertausta

Ohjaajan sanoessa englanninkieliset vastineet sanaopista kääntäkää ne suomeksi.

3. Kuunteluharjoitusta

I. Tarina Mark Twainista.

Puhujamatkallaan Mark Twain saapui pieneen kaupunkiin. Ennen päivällistä hän meni parturiin.

„Te olette vieras tässä kaupungissa," sanoi parturi.

„Kyllä," vastasi Mark Twain. „Olen ensimäistä kertaa tässä kaupungissa."

„Te tulitte hyvään aikaan," jatkoi parturi. „Mark Twain puhuu täällä tänä iltana. Tietystikin menette sinne."

„Kyllä kai."

„Oletteko ostaneet jo linpun?"

„En vielä."

„Mutta kaikki liput on jo myyty, ette voi saada istumapaikkaa enää."

„Kuinka ikävää! Minulla näyttää olevan huono onni. En saa koskaan istua kun tuo mies puhuu."

II. Oopperassa

Eräs suomalainen säveltäjä oli kunniavieraana Oopperassa. Hänen emäntänsä oli äänessä koko oopperan ajan. Loppupuolella hän kääntyi säveltäjän puoleen sanoen:

„Teidän täytyy tulla oopperaan ensi perjantai-iltana. Silloin esitetään ooppera Tosca. Varmaan tulette pitämään siitä."

„Kyllä varmasti, mielelläni," vastasi säveltäjä. „En ole koskaan kuullut teitä siinä."

III. Laulajatar ja Säveltäjä

Toinen vieras kääntyi toisen puoleen ja alkoi puhua naisesta, joka juuri lauloi.

„Hänellä on kamala ääni. Tiedättekö te, kuka hän on?"

„Kyllä," kuului vastaus. „Hän on minun vaimoni."

„Suokaa anteeksi. En tietystikään tarkoita hänen ääntään, vaan tuota kamalaa laulua, jota hänen täytyy laulaa. Tiedättekö, kuka sen on säveltänyt?"

„Minä olen sen säveltänyt," kuului kylmä vastaus.

OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

1. Peruslauseitten kertausta

Peittäen suomenkielisen tekstin harjoitelkaa itseksenne kunnes osaatte suomeksi jokaisen englanninkielisen lauseen.

2. Sanojen kertausta

Ohjaajan lausuessa peruslauseet englanniksi kääntäkää ne suomeksi.

3. Keskustelua

1. Discuss the works of a great American author (Poe, Mark Twain, Eugene O'Neill, Hemingway); discuss the works of a great American painter (Whistler, Sargent, Thomas Benton, Rockwell Kent); discuss the works of a great American sculptor (Augustus St. Gaudens, Paul Manship); discuss the compositions of a great American musician (George Gershwin, Chanler, Stephen Foster, Jerome Kern, Duke Ellington).
2. What is your favorite art form? Why? What have Finns contributed to that particular form of art?
3. You are engaged to get married. Your girl wants to know all about your relatives. You list them one by one, making brief descriptive comments about each (for example: uncle Herbert lives with us—he doesn't make a living; sister studies at the University; brother Jack is in the Marines; cousin Fred is a sportsman; aunt Matilda is an opera singer, and so forth).

OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

Lopettakaa keskustelu. Ohjaaja kertaa peruslauseet jos se on välttämätöntä.

Jälkikatsaus

Täydellinen sanaopin ja peruslauseitten kertaus.

Sanaluettelo[3]

aihe	design *or* subject
akatemia	academy
anoppi	*19*
appi	*18*

---

[3] Kinship terms are listed with their numbers as given on pages 435-7 of this unit.

eno	*13*
erikoinen	special
esimerkki	example
ilmestyä	to be published
isoäiti	*10*
juuri	root
Kalevala	Kalevala
kansainvälinen	international
kerätä	to collect
kirjailija	writer *or* author
kuoro	choir
kulttuuri	culture
kuuluisa	famous
käly	*14*
lanko	*15*
maakunta-	provincial
maalari	painter
maalata	to paint
maine	fame
mainehikas	celebrated
miniä	*16*
muinainen	ancient
musiikki	music
paino	weight
professori	professor
rakastaa	to love
runo	poem
sankari	hero
satu	fairy tale
serkku	*20*
setä	*11*
sisarukset	*41 or 42*
sukulainen	relative
säveltää	to compose
tarina	legend *or* tradition
täti	*12*
vanhemmat	*39*
vaikutus	influence
veljekset	*40*
vuosisata	century
vävy	*17*
yleensä	generally

UNIT 30

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN FINNISH?

The procedure in this unit will be the same as in unit 18.

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

Prepare to give orally the Finnish for each of the following sentences. Do not write anything down.

I

1. Handel was a composer who lived in the 18th century.
2. Hemingway is an internationally known author.
3. The University of Paris is one of the oldest cultural centers in the world.
4. The machine gun was right under the tree.
5. My father-in-law is an influential man.
6. He collected her letters.
7. Love is wonderful.
8. Would you care to join our choir?

II

1. The road is impassable because it has been raining all week.
2. Quickly, get a nurse!
3. Hide those tanks in the barn over there.
4. Tell the mechanic to repair the telephone lines.
5. Bring help! I'm wounded.
6. Step forward, raising your hands, and surrender.
7. You are a prisoner of war: hand over your equipment.
8. The Marines have landed (arrived).

III

1. Where did you learn to speak Norwegian so well?
2. Support the Red Cross: give all you can.
3. Is there a library in this town?
4. Get me a Russian dictionary (word book).
5. Who is the leader of your union?
6. We lost about 25%.
7. Mathematics can be practical as well as theoretical.
8. I don't attach any significance to it.

IV

1. The port is full of Naval vessels.
2. The factory is located at a railroad junction.
3. Old copper may be green.
4. Is it made of linen or of cotton?
5. What are the major products of the glass industry?
6. There's no reason for further discussion.
7. Next, we have an American song.
8. What is your line?

V

1. We're almost at the village now.
2. I was born in 1917, February the second.
3. Show me your passport please: this is the Finnish border.
4. He might be a customs officer.
5. Divide and conquer!
6. What are the chief American parties?
7. He has a job at the Ministry of Defense.
8. All's well that ends well.

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the sentences in Section *B*, asking various members of the group: „*Kuinka te sanotte suomeksi . . .?*"

SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

(Individual Study)

Do the following exercises. Read all sentences aloud with correct solutions. Have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

I

For each of the following relations in the column to the left there is a single kinship term in Finnish. What is it?

Relation:	Kinship Term:
1. *Tyttären mies*	1. ______________
2. *Veljeni vaimo*	2. ______________
3. *Isämme veli*	3. ______________
4. *Setäni poika*	4. ______________
5. *Tädin isä*	5. ______________
6. *Appeni vaimo*	6. ______________
7. *Isoisäni ainoa poika*	7. ______________
8. *Poikani vaimo*	8. ______________
9. *Äidin veli*	9. ______________
10. *Sisareni lasten isä*	10. ______________

II

In the column to the right in I above, underline each kinship term that stands for a real relative of yours. Describe each relative in not less than five complete sentences, stating physical characteristics, occupation, whereabouts, and so forth, making sure that each sentence is correct and that the total description is clear and consistent.

III

If you are studying in a group, you may enjoy a game. Each member of the class is to take a long, narrow strip of paper. Now, everyone should write down a descriptive adjective, like *suuri*, *vanha*, etc., and having done so, fold the paper so that the word is covered up, and pass the strip to his neighbor on his left. When all strips are passed on, everybody should write a fellow's name, fold the paper to cover up, and pass on. Next, all should write *ja*, followed by another adjective, like *kaunis*, *tyhmä*, etc., fold up and pass on. Then follows a girl's name. The items thereafter are, a place (where they met), the time when, what they did there, what he thinks of her, what she thinks of him. When the last item is down, the papers should be unfolded, and each member of the group should read out the result on the slip before him. It should be something like this:

tyhmä
Matti
ja kaunis
Liisa
tutustuivat ravintolassa
kello yhdeksän
he tanssivat
Liisa on ihana
Matti on kömpelö tanssija

IV

The Finnish game ***kakiskymmentä kysymystä*** is the same as the game known here as 'Animal, Vegetable, or Mineral', a guessing game. One member of the group leaves the room, while the others decide on a person or an object to be guessed. When the odd man returns, he must ask a question of each member of the group, which are to be answered ***kyllä*** or ***ei***. He is allowed twenty questions. If he guesses the correct solution, the last person to answer goes out. If he doesn't, he goes out again.

SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in parts I-II of Section *D*. Keep your book closed. If you have a Guide, he will check on pronunciation and the correctness of your Finnish; if not, other members of the group will criticize.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

The members of the group will carry on short conversations lasting from two to five minutes.

Suggested Topics:

1. Tell the story of an opera you've been to.
2. Speak about one form of art, comparing the artists of different nations who have contributed.
3. Question a prisoner of war.
4. Give orders to requisition a certain set of military supplies.
5. Describe your Army (or Navy) career.
6. Interview a family on behalf of the Red Cross or the United Nations Relief and Rehabilitation Administration.
7. Do you think that a free college education should be made available to everyone?

8. What sort of industrial relations will there be, in your opinion, between Finland and the U. S.?

9. What do you think will be the political position of Finland in the near future?

10. You've probably studied foreign languages other than Finnish. What do you think of the method by which you've learned Finnish, and how does it compare with other methods?

VOCABULARIES

The most useful dictionary at present easily available to the American student of Finnish is Severi Alanne, *Suomalais-Englantilainen Sanakirja* (Superior, Wisconsin, 1919). Aune Tuomikoski and Anna Slöör, *Englantilais-Suomalainen Sanakirja* (Helsinki, 1939) is designed for British users especially, and is hard to get in the United States. Two pocket dictionaries which may come handy are: K. V. Arminen and Eetu Aaltio, *Suomalais Englantilainen Sanakirja* (Hancock, Michigan, 1916), and K. V. Arminen, *Englantilais-Suomalainen Sanakirja* (Hancock, Michigan, 1914).

A. FINNISH-ENGLISH

aamiainen	breakfast
aamu	morning
aihe	design *or* subject
aika	time
aikaisin	early
aikoa	to in[illegible]
aina	alway[illegible]
aine	subject *or* material
ainoastaan	only
aivan	quite
ajaa	to ride
ajatella	to think
ajatus	idea *or* thought
akatemia	academy
ala	line
alainen	under
alas	down
alikersantti	corporal
aliluutnantti	ensign
aliupseeri	noncommissioned officer
alkaa	to begin
allekirjoittaa	to sign
allekirjoitus	signature
alushousut	shorts
amerikkalainen	American
ammatti	trade
ammukset	ammunition
ampua	to shoot

ankara	severe *or* strict
annos	portion
anoppi	*26**
antaa	to give
antautua	to surrender
anteeksi	excuse me
appi	*25**
apteekki	pharmacy
apu	help
armeija	army
arpi	scar
arvata	to guess
arvo	value
arvoinen	worth
ase	weapon
asema	station
asemasta	instead
asia	matter *or* thing
askel	step
aste	degree *or* grade
astua	to step
asua	to stay *or* to dwell
Ateneumi	Atheneum
attashea	attache
auto	car
auttaa	to help

avain	key
bensiini	gasoline
divisioona	division
edelleen	further
edellinen	previous
edellä	ahead *or* before
edes	even
eduskunta	Diet *or* parliament
edustaa	to represent
edustaja	representative
ehdottaa	to suggest
ehkä	perhaps
ei	no
eilen	yesterday
ei ansaitse	it doesn't matter
eksyä	to get lost
elokuu	August
elokuvat	movies
elää	to live
emäntä	mistress *or* landlady
enemmistö	majority
Englanti	England
ennen	before
eno	*15**
ensi	next
ensin	first
entäs	how about
enää	anymore

---

*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

erehtyä	to make a mistake *or* to be mistaken
eri	different
erikoinen	special
eroavaisuus	difference
eräs	a (certain)
esimerkki	example
esitellä	to present
eskadroona	troop
eteenpäin	ahead
etelä	south
etsiä	to look for
etukäteen	beforehand
että	that
eversti	colonel
filmi	film
Filosofian Maisteri	Master of Arts
haara	branch
haarukka	fork
haava	wound
haavoittua	to get wounded
hakea	to fetch
hallinnollinen	administrative
hallitus	government
halpa	cheap
haluta	to want
hammas	tooth
harjoitus	practice
harrastus	activity *or* pursuit
harso	net
haulikko	double barrelled gun
hauska	gay *or* fun
he	they
heinäkuu	July
hella	stove
helmikuu	February
henkilö	person
henkilöllisyys	identification
herra	gentleman *or* Mr.
heti	at once *or* immediately
hevonen	horse
hiihtokeli	skiing condition
hiihtää	to ski
hiljaa	quiet
hinta	price
hissi	elevator
historia	history
hitaasti	slowly
housut	trousers
hotelli	hotel
huhtikuu	April
hukata	to lose
huolehtia	to worry
huoli	care
huoltojoukot	Quartermaster Corps
huomata	to notice

huone	room
huonekalu	furniture
huoneusto	apartment
huono	bad
huopa	blanket
hyttynen	mosquito
hyväksyä	to accept
hyvänen aika	for goodness sake
hyvästi	goodbye
hyökkäysvaunu	tank
hämmästyä	to be surprised
hän	he *or* she
idealisti	idealist
ihailija	admirer
ihana	wonderful
ihmeellinen	wonderful
ihminen	human being *or* person
ikä	age
ikävyys	trouble
ilma	weather *or* air
ilman	without
ilmestyä	to be published
ilmoittautua	to report
iloinen	happy *or* glad
ilta	evening
insinööri	engineer
isoisä	*9**
isoäiti	*10**
istua	to sit
isä	*1**
isäntä	master *or* landlord
itse	self
itä	east
ja	and
jakaa	to divide
jakso	part
jalka	foot
jalkaväki	infantry
ja niin edespäin (*j.n.e.*)	and so forth (etc.)
jatkaa	to continue
jatko	extension *or* continuation
jatkua	to be continued
Japani	Japan
johtaja	manager
joka	every
joki	river
joko	either
jonkinlainen	some kind
johdot	lines
joukko-osasto	outfit
joulukuu	December
jos	if
joutua	to get

---

*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

juhlasali	auditorium
Jumala	God
juna	train
juoda	to drink
juomaraha	tip
juuri	root
juuri	just
jälkeen	after
jälkikatsaus	review
jälkiruoka	desert
jännitys	suspense
järjestelmä	system
järjestää	to organize
järvi	lake
jättää	to leave
jää	ice
jäädä	to stay
jäätelö	ice cream
kaasu	gas
kaataa	to spill *or* to turn over
kaavake	form *or* blank
kahdeksan	eight
kahveli	fork
kahvi	coffee
kai	probably *or* perhaps
kaikki	all
kaivo	well
kaivos	mine
kaksi	two
kala	fish
kalastaa	to fish
kallis	expensive
kamala	horrible
kamari	chamber
kana	chicken
kanala	chickenhouse
kannatus	support
kansainvälinen	international
kansakoulu	elementary school
kansalainen	citizen
kansallis-	national
kansanopisto	peoples high school
kansanrunous	folklore
kanssa	with
kanta	standard *or* attitude
kantaja	porter
karamelli	candy
kartta	map
kassa	cashier
kasvatus	education
kasvot	face
katkaista	to break
katsoa	to see *or* to look
kattila	pot
katu	street
kauan	long time

kaukana	far
kaukopuhelu	long distance call
kaunis	nice *or* beautiful
kauppa	shop *or* store
kaupunki	town
kaurapuuro	oatmeal
kautta	via
keittää	to cook
kellari	cellar
kello	watch *or* clock
keltainen	yellow
kemisti	chemist
ken	who
kenkä	shoe
kenraali	general
kerran	once
kerrata	to tell again *or* to review
kerrassaan	absolutely *or* positively
kerros	floor
kersantti	sergeant
kertoa	to tell
kerätä	to collect
keski	mid-
keskiviikko	Wednesday
keskuslämmitys	central heat
keskustelu	conversation
kesä	summer
kesäkuu	June
keuhko	lung
kevät	spring
kieli	language *or* tongue
kiire	hurry
kiiruhtaa	to hurry
kiitos	thank you
kiitollinen	grateful
kilometri	kilometer
kilpa-ajot	horse races
kilpailu	race *or* contest
kilpi	plate *or* sign
kirja	book
kirjailija	writer *or* author
kirjasto	library
kirje	letter
kirjoittaa	to write
kirkko	church
kirves	axe
kiusata	to tease
kivi	stone
kivääri	rifle
koettaa	to try
kohtelias	polite
kohtuullinen	reasonable
koira	dog
koko	whole
kolme	there
komentaa	to command

komppania	company
kone	machine
konekivääriampuja	machine gunner
konjakki	cognac *or* brandy
konsertti	concert
konservatorio	conservatory
konsulaatti	consulate
konsuli	consul
konttori	office
konttoriapulainen	clerk
koota	to collect
korjata	to repair
korkea	high
korpraali	private first class
kortti	card
korvata	to replace
koska	when
koskea	to hurt *or* to touch
koti	home
koulu	school
koulutus	schooling
kova	hard *or* service
kranaatti	grenade
kuin	as *or* than
kuinka	how
kuitenkin	anyway
kuitti	receipt
kuiva	dry

kuka	who
kukka	flower
kukko	rooster
kuljetus	transportation
kulkukelpoinen	passable
kulma	corner
kulta	sweetheart *or* gold
kulttuuri	culture
kun	as *or* when
kunto	condition
kuolla	to die
kuori	cover
kuoro	choir
kupari	copper
kuppi	cup
kurssi	course
kutoma	textile
kuukausi	month
kuulla	to hear
kuulua	to include *or* to belong
kuuluisa	famous
kuume	fever
kuunnella	to listen to
kuusi	six
kuvalehti	magazine
kyllä	yes
kylmä	cold
kylpyhuone	bathroom

kylä	village
kymmenen	ten
kynä	pencil
kysymys	question
kysyä	to ask
käly	*21**
käsi	hand
käsivarsi	arm
kävellä	to walk
käydä	to visit
käymälä	toilet
käyttää	to use
käytäntö	practicality
käytännöllinen	practical
käytävä	corridor
käännös	translation
kääntyä	to turn
kääntää	to forward *or* to turn *or* to translate
kömpelö	clumsy
köysi	rope
laakso	valley
laatia	to draw up
laatikko	box
lahja	present
laittaa	to put
laiva	boat *or* steamer
laji	sort
lakana	sheet
lamppu	lamp *or* bulb
lanko	*22**
latina	Latin
laukku	valise *or* bag
laulu	song
lapsi	child
lasi	glass
lasku	bill
laskuvarjosotilas	parachutist
lastata	to load
lauantai	Saturday
laulaja	singer
lehmä	cow
leipä	bread
leivos	pastry
lempi-	favorite
lentokone	airplane
lentoposti	airmail
lentoryhmä	group
liha	meat
lihaliemi	buillon
lihapulla	meatball
liian	too
liikemies	businessman
litto	union

---

*See unit 29. Comment One, for exact meaning.

lippu	ticket
lista	chart *or* list
lisää	more
lokakuu	October
loma	vacation
loppu	the rest *or* end
loukkaantua	to get injured
loukata	to hurt
lounas	lunch
luettelo	directory
lukea	to read
lukemista	reading matter
luku	chapter
lukutaidoton	illiterate
lumi	snow
luokka	class
luonnollinen	natural
luonto	nature
lusikka	spoon
luulla	to think
luutnantti	lieutenant
lypsää	to milk
lyseo	high school
lähellä	near
lähettäjä	sender
lähettäminen	sending
lähettää	to send
lähetystö	legation *or* embassy
lähteä	to start
lämmin	warm
lämmittää	to keep warm *or* to heat
länsi	west
lääke	medicin
Lääkintäjoukot	Medical Corps
lääkäri	doctor
lääni	province
löytää	to find
maa	country *or* earth *or* countryside
maaherra	governor
maakunta	province
maalaisliitto	agrarian
maalaisnuoriso	country youth
maalari	painter
maalata	to paint
maaliskuu	March
maanantai	Monday
maanviljelijä	farmer
mahdollinen	possible
mahdoton	impossible
maine	fame
mainehikas	celebrated
mainio	excellent *or* admirable
mainita	to mention
maito	milk
majuri	major
makeinen	sweet(s)

markka	mark
maksaa	to pay
marraskuu	November
matematiikka	mathematics
matka	trip
matkustaa	to travel
matruusi	seaman
me	we
meijeri	dairy *or* creamery
mekaanikko	mechanic
melkein	almost
menettää	to lose
mennä	to go
meno	way *or* going
meri	sea
merkki	mark
merkitys	significance *or* weight
merkitä	to matter *or* to mean
metsä	forest
metsästää	to hunt
mielenkiintoinen	interesting
mieli	mind
mies	5*
mikä	what
millainen	what kind
milloin	when
ministeri	minister
ministeriö	ministry
miniä	*23**
minuutti	minute
minä	I
miton	how
molemmat	both
monta	many
moottoripyörä	motorcycle
morfiiniruiske	morphine injection
morsian	bride
muinainen	ancient
muistaa	to remember
mukana	with
muna	egg
muodostaa	to form
museo	museum
musiikki	music
musta	black
muste	ink
mutista	to mutter
mutta	but
muunmuassa (*m.m.*)	among other things
muuten	otherwise
muuttaa	to move
muuttua	to be moved *or* to become *or* to turn out
myyjä	salesman

---

*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

myymälä	booth *or* store
myöhään	late
myöskin	also
myöten	along
naapuri	neighbor
nahka	skin *or* leather
naimisissa	married
nainen	woman
naula	nail
navetta	barn
ne	them *or* those
neiti	miss
neljä	four
neljännes	a quarter
nenä	nose
nenäkäs	impertinent
nenäliina	handkerchief
neuvo	advice
neuvoa	to advise
nikkeli	nickel
nimismies	sheriff *or* bailiff
nimittää	to appoint *or* to name
niin	really
niin. . . kuin	as well as
nimi	name
no	well
noin	about
nolla	zero

nopea	fast
norjalainen	Norwegian
nukkua	to sleep
numero	number
nuori	young
nykyään	at present
nyt	now
nähdä	to see
näin	like this *or* so *or* thus
näkemiin	so long
näkyä	to seem
nälkä	hunger
näytelmä	play
näyttää	to show
odottaa	to wait
ohjaaja	leader
ohra	barley
oi!	oh!
oikea	right
oikein	very
oikeus	justice *or* court
olettaa	to suppose
olla	to be
olla pahoilla	to regret *or* to be sorry
olla perillä	to reach one's destination
olla velkaa	to owe
olut	beer
oma	own

omistaa	to own
omistaja	owner
onnettomuus	accident
onni	lunch
ooppera	opera
opettaa	to teach
opettaja	teacher
opetus	teaching
opinto	study
opiskelija	student
opiskella	to study
opiskelu	studying
oppi	study
oppikoulu	secondary school
oppilas	pupil
oppivelvollisuus	compulsory education
osa	part *or* section
osasto	branch
osata	to know how
osoite	address
osoittaa	to address *or* to point
ostaa	to buy
ostos	purchase
osuus-	co-operative
ottaa	to take
ovi	door
paeta	to flee
paha	bad
pahus	darn it *or* nuisance
paikka	place
paino	weight
paistin	frying
paita	shirt
pakata	to pack
paketti	package
pakkanen	cold *or* frost
pakollinen	compulsory
palata	to return
paljon	much
palvelija	servant
palvelus	service
pankki	bank
panna	to put
pannu	pan
pansarijaukot	Armored Command
paperi	paper
parakki	barracks
parantua	to heal *or* to get well
pari	a couple
parranajokone	razor
parta	beard
parturi	barber
passi	passport
pataljoona	battalion
patteri	battery
peittää	to cover

peljätä	to be afraid
pellava	linen
pelto	field
penni	penny
perhe	family
perjantai	Friday
peruna	potatoes
peruslause	basic sentence
pesuhuone	washroom
pesä	fire-place
pian	soon
pidättää	to arrest
pieni	small
pihvi	beefsteak
piiloutua	to hide
piippu	pipe
piirtää	to draw
Pioneerit	Engineers
pistin	bayonet
pistooli	pistol
pitkä	long
pitää	to like
pohjoinen	worth
poika	boy *or* 7*
pois	away *or* off
poliisi	policeman

polttaa	to smoke
porras	stairway *or* stair
porsliini	china
postimerkki	stamp
potilas	patient
presidentti	president
professori	professor
porsentti	percentage
prässäyttää	to have pressed
puhelin	telephone
puhelu	a call
puhua	to speak
puhutella	to address
pullo	bottle
pumpuli	cotton
punainen	red
puoli	half
puolue	party
puolustus	defence
puu	wood
pyssy	gun
pysyä	to stay
pyyhe	towel
pyykki	laundry
pyytää	to ask for
päivä	day
päivällinen	dinner
pää	head *or* chief

---

*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

päällä	on
päällikkö	commander
päättää	to decide
pöytä	table
radio	radio
radisti	radio operator
raitiovaunu	street car
raitis	fresh
raja	border
rakastaa	to love
rakennus	building
Ranska	France
ranskalainen	French
rauha	peace
rauta	iron
rautatieristeys	railroad junction
raskas tykki	heavy gun
Ratsuväki	Cavalry
ravintola	restaurant
reilu	straight forward *or* honest
rengas	ring
retki	trip
riippua	to depend
rikki	broken
rintama	front
risti	cross
rohdoskauppa	drugstore
romaani	novel
rommi	rum
rouva	Mrs.
ruis	rye
runo	poem
ruokalista	menu
ruotsalainen	Swedish
Ruotsi	Sweden
ryyppy	drink
räätäli	tailor
saada	to get
saapas	boot
saapua	to arrive
sahalaitos	sawmill
sairaala	hospital
sairaanhoitaja	nurse
saippua	soap
Saksa	Germany
saksalainen	German
salaatti	salad
sama	game
sana	word
sanella	to dictate
sankari	hero
sanoa	to say
sanoa itensä ylös	to give notice
sanomalehti	newspaper
sata	hundred
sataa	to rain

satama	port
satu	fairy tale
sauna	steam bath
savuke	cigarette
se	it
sekki	check
seitsemän	seven
selittää	to explain
selvä	clear
seminaari	training college *or* teachers' college
serkku	*27**
setä	*13**
seuraava	next
seutu	district
side	bandage
siirtää	to move *or* to transfer
siis	consequently
sijaita	to be located
sika	pig
sillä	because
silmä	eye
silta	bridge
sininen	blue
sinä	you
sipuli	onion
sisar	*4**
sisarukset	*42**
sisä	inside
sisältö	contents
sisäänkirjoitettu	registered
sitten	then
sitäpaitsi	besides
soittaa	to call *or* to ring
sopia	to be convenient *or* to fit
sosiaalidemokraatti	socialdemocratic
sota	war
sotamies	private
Sotapoliisi	Military Police
sotilas	soldier
sotkea	to mess up
soudella	to row
sukka	sock
suklaa	chocolate
suksi	ski
sukulainen	relative
sulhanen	fiancée
sulkea	to close
sunnuntai	Sunday
suoda	to allow *or* to grant
Suomi	Finland
suora	straight
suositella	to recommend
surra	to worry

---

*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

suu	mouth
suunta	direction
suuri	large
suurlähettiläs	ambassador
suutari	shoemaker
syksy	fall
syntyä	to be born
syy	reason
syyskuu	September
syödä	to eat
sähkö	electricity
sähköttää	to wire
sähkösanoma	telegram
säilytyshuone	check-room
särkeä	to ache *or* to hurt
särky	pain
säveltää	to compose
sääri	leg
sääski	mosquito
taas	again
tahalla	on purpose
tahna	paste
tahtoa	to want
tai	or
taide	art
taisteluvälineosasto	ordnance corps
taivas	heaven
tajuton	unconscious
takaisin	back
takana	behind
takki	coat
talli	stable
talo	house
talonmies	janitor
talous	household
talvi	winter
tammikuu	winter
Tanska	Denmark
tanssi	dance
tanssia	to dance
tapa	way *or* habit
tapahtua	to happen
tapaus	case
tarina	legend *or* tradition
tarjoilija	waiter
tarkalleen	exactly
tarkka-ampuja	sniper
tarkoittaa	to mean
tarve	enough *or* need
tarvita	to need
tasavalta	republic
tasku	pocket
tavallinen	general *or* usual
tavara	belongings *or* goods
tavaratalo	department store
te	you

teatteri	theatre
tehdas	factory
tehdä	to do
tehtävä	duty
teknillinen	technical
Teknillinen Korkeakoulu	Institute of Technology
teksti	text
teltta	tent
teollisuus	industry
terve	health
tervetuloa	welcome
terä	blade
tie	road
tieteellinen	scientific
tietopuolinen	theoretical
tietysti	sure
tietää	to know
tiistai	Tuesday
tilata	to order
tili	account
todistaa	to prove
tohtori	doctor
toimi	occupation
toimia	to work
toimisto	office
toinen	other *or* second *or* another
toivoa	to hope *or* wish
torstai	Thursday
tosi	truth
totella	to obey
Toukokuu	May
toveri	friend *or* pal
tuhat	thousand
tukka	hair
tukki	log
tulitikku	match
tulla	to come
tulli	customs *or* duty
tunnettu	known
tunti	hour
tuntua	to feel
tuolla	there
tupakka	tobacco
turha	unnecessary
tusina	dozen
tuoda	to bring
tuoli	chair
tuomari	lawyer *or* judge
tuote	product
tutustua	to get acquainted
tyhmä	stupid
Tykistö	Artillery
tytär	*8**

---

*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

tyttö	girl
tyyny	pillow
tyypillinen	typical
tyytyväinen	satisfied
työ	work
työläinen	worker
työnantaja	employer
työväenopisto	working man's institute
tämä	this
tärkeä	important
täydellinen	complete
täytekynä	fountain pen
täti	*14**
täysi	full
täytyä	must
täyttää	to fill out
uida	to swim
uittaa	to float
ulkoilu	camping
ulkomaa	foreign country *or* abroad
ulkopuolella	outside
ulos	out
uni	sleep *or* dream
unohtaa	to forget
upseeri	officer
uudenaikainen	modern

uusi	new
uutinen	piece of news
vaara	danger
vai	or
vaihtaa	to change
vaikeus	difficulty
vaikutus	influence
vailla *vaille*	to *or* of
vaimo	*6**
vain	only *or* just
vaiva	trouble *or* bother
vaivata	to trouble
vakava	serious
vakuuttaa	to insure *or* to assure
valita	to choose
valitsija	elector
valkea	white
valmis	ready
valmistua	to be trained
valo	light
valokuva	photo
valtava	powerful *or* enormous
valtio	government *or* state
valtioneuvosto	cabinet
vanha	old
vanhemmat	*39**
vanki	prisoner

---

*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meani[illegible]

vapaa	vacant
varata	to reserve
varmaan	certainly
varsin	especially
varten	for
varusteet	equipment
vapaaehtoinen	voluntary *or* by choice
vapaus	freedom
vasara	hammer
vasen	left
vastaanottaja	receiver
vastapäätä	opposite
vastata	to answer
vastine	equivalent
vaunu	car
vehnä	wheat
veitsi	knife
veli	*3**
veljekset	*40**
vene	boat
venäläinen	Russian
vesi	water
viedä	to take
vielä	still
vienti	export
vieras	stranger *or* guest

vihannes	vegetable
vihollinen	enemy
vihreä	green
viikko	week
viime	last
viina	liquor
viini	wine
viisi	five
vika	fault *or* defect
vilja	grain
viljellä	to cultivate
villainen	woolen
virallinen	official
virkailija	clerk
viski	whiskey
voi!	oh!
voida	can
voima	power
vuode	bed
vuokra	rent
vuokrata	to rent
vuoksi	on account of
vuosi	year
vuosisata	century
vähän	a little
väli	space
välttämätöntä	necessary
vänrikki	Second Lieutenant.

---

*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

väsyä	to get tired
vävy	*24**
väärä	wrong
vääpeli	sergeant major
yhdeksän	nine
Yhdysvallat	United States
yhtaikaa	simultaneously
yhteys	connection
yhtyä	to enlist *or* to join
yhtä . . . kuin	as . . . as
yksi	one
yksityiskohtainen	particular
ylhäällä	up
yleensä	generally

yli	past
Yliopisto	University
ylityö	overtime
ylittää	to cross
ylläpitää	to support
ylpeys	pride
yläpuolella	above
ylös	up
ymmärtää	to understand
ympyrä	circle
yskä	cold *or* cough
ystävä	friend
yö	night
äiti	*2**
äkkiarvaanatta	suddenly
ääntää	to pronounce

---

*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

B. ENGLISH-FINNISH

a (certain)	*eräs*
about	*noin*
above	*yläpuolella*
absolutely	*kerrassaan*
academy	*akatemia*
accept, to	*hyväksyä*
accident	*onnettomuus*
account	*tili*
ache, to	*särkeä*
activity	*harrastus*
address	*osoite*
address, to	*osoittaa*
address, to	*puhutella*
administrative	*hallinnollinen*
admirable	*mainio*
admirer	*ihailija*
advice	*neuvo*
advise, to	*neuvoa*
afraid, to be	*peljätä*
after	*jälkeen*
again	*taas*
age	*ikä*
agrarian	*maalaisliitto*
ahead	*eteenpäin*
ahead	*edellä*
air mail	*lentoposti*
airplane	*lentokone*
all	*kaikki*
allow	*suokaa*
almost	*melkein*
along	*myöten*
also	*myöskin*
always	*aina*
ambassador	*suurlahettilas*
American	*amerikkalainen*
ammunition	*ammukset*
among other things	*muunmuassa* (*m.m.*)
ancient	*muinainen*
and	*ja*
and so forth	*ja niin edespäin* (*j.n.e.*)
answer, to	*vastata*
anymore	*enää*
anyway	*kuitenkin*
apartment	*huoneusto*
appoint, to	*nimittää*
April	*huhtikuu*
arm	*käsivarsi*
Armored Command	*pansarijankot*
army	*armeija*
arrest, to	*pidättää*

arrive, to	*saapua*
art	*taide*
artillery	*tykisto*
as	*kuin*
as	*kun*
as . . . as	*yhtä . . . kuin*
as well as	*niin . . . kuin*
ask, to	*kysyä*
ask for, to	*pyytää*
at once	*heti*
at present	*nykyaan*
Atheneum	*Atheneumi*
attache	*attashea*
auditorium	*juhlasali*
August	*elokuu*
author	*kirjailija*
away	*pois*
axe	*kirves*
back	*takaisin*
bad	*huono*
bad	*paha*
bandage	*side*
bank	*paukki*
barber	*parturi*
barley	*ohra*
barn	*navetta*
barracks	*parakki*
basic sentence	*peruslause*
bathroom	*kylpyhuone*
battalion	*pataljoona*
battery	*patteri*
bayonet	*pistin*
be, to	*olla*
beard	*parta*
because	*sillä*
become, to	*muuttua*
bed	*vuode*
beefsteak	*pihvi*
beer	*olut*
before	*edellä*
before	*ennen*
beforehand	*etukateen*
begin, to	*alkaa*
behind	*takana*
belongings	*tavara*
besides	*sitäpaitsi*
bill	*lasku*
black	*musta*
blade	*tera*
blanket	*huopa*
blue	*sininen*
boat	*vene*
boat	*laiva*
book	*kirja*
boot	*saapas*
booth	*myymälä*

border	*raja*
born, to be	*syntyä*
both	*molemmat*
bottle	*pullo*
box	*laatikko*
boy	*poika*
branch	*haara*
branch	*osasto*
bread	*leipä*
break, to	*katkaista*
breakfast	*vaamiainen*
bride	*morsian*
bridge	*silta*
bring, to	*tuoda*
broken	*rikki*
brother	*veli*
building	*rakennus*
buillon	*lihaliemi*
businessman	*liikemies*
but	*mutta*
buy, to	*ostaa*
cabinet	*valtioneuvosto*
call, a	*puhelu*
call, to	*soittaa*
camping	*ulkoilu*
can	*voida*
candy	*karamelli*
car	*auto*
car	*vaunu*
card	*kortti*
care	*huoli*
case	*tapaus*
cashier	*kassa*
Cavalry	*Ratsuväki*
celebrated	*mainehikas*
cellar	*kellari*
central heat	*keskuslämmitys*
century	*vuosisata*
certainly	*varmaan*
chair	*tuoli*
chamber	*kamari*
change, to	*vaihtaa*
chapter	*luku*
chart	*lista*
cheap	*halpa*
check	*sekki*
check-room	*säilytyshuone*
chemist	*kemisti*
chicken	*kana*
chickenhouse	*kanala*
children	*lapsi*
chocolate	*suklaa*
choice, by	*vapaaehtoinen*
choir	*kuoro*
choose, to	*valita*
church	*kirkko*

cigarette	*savuke*
circle	*ympyrä*
citizen	*kansalainen*
class	*luokka*
clear	*selvä*
clerk	*konthoriapulainen*
clerk	*virkailija*
close, to	*sulkea*
clumsy	*kömpelö*
coat	*takki*
coffee	*kahvi*
cognac	*konjakki*
cold	*kylmä*
cold	*pakkanen*
cold	*yskä*
collect, to	*kerätä*
collect, to	*koota*
colonel	*eversti*
come, to	*tulla*
command, to	*komentaa*
commander	*päällikkö*
company	*komppania*
complete	*täydellinen*
compose, to	*säveltää*
compulsory	*pakollinen*
compulsory education	*oppivelvollisuus*
concert	*konsertti*
condition	*kunto*
connection	*yhteys*
consequently	*siis*
conservatory	*konservatorio*
consul	*konsuli*
consulate	*konsulaatti*
contents	*sisältö*
continuation	*jatkoa*
continue, to	*jatkaa*
continued, to be	*jatkua*
conversation	*keskustelu*
converse, to	*kertoa*
convenient, to be	*sopia*
cook, to	*keittää*
co-operative	*ossus-*
corner	*kulma*
copper	*kupari*
corporal	*alikersantti*
corridor	*käytävä*
cotton	*pumpuli*
cough	*yskä*
country	*maa*
country side	*maa*
country youth	*maalaisnuoriso*
couple, a	*pari*
course	*kurssi*
cover	*kuori*
cover, to	*peittää*
cow	*lehmä*

cross	*risti*
cross, to	*ylittää*
cultivate, to	*viljellä*
culture	*kulttuuri*
cup	*kuppi*
customs	*tulli*
dairy	*meijeri*
dance	*tanssi*
dance, to	*tanssia*
danger	*vaara*
darn it	*pahus*
day	*päivä*
December	*joulukuu*
decide, to	*päättää*
defence	*puolustus*
degree	*aste*
Denmark	*Tanska*
department-store	*tavaratalo*
depend, to	*riippua*
design	*aihe*
desert	*jälkiruoka*
dictate, to	*sanella*
die, to	*kuolla*
Diet	*eduskunta*
difference	*eroavaisuus*
different	*eri*
difficulty	*vaikeus*
dinner	*päivällinen*
direction	*suunta*
directory	*luettelo*
district	*seutu*
divide	*jakaa*
division	*divisioona*
do, to	*tehdä*
doctor	*lääkäri*
doctor	*tohtori*
dog	*koira*
door	*ovi*
double barrelled gun	*haulikko*
down	*alas*
dozen	*tusina*
draw, to	*piirtää*
draw up, to	*laatia*
drink	*ryyppy*
drink, to	*juoda*
drugstore	*rohdoskauppa*
dry	*kuiva*
duty	*tehtävä*
duty	*tulli*
early	*aikaisin*
earth	*maa*
east	*itä*
eat, to	*syödä*
education	*kasvatus*
egg	*muna*
eight	*kahdeksan*

either	*joka*
elector	*valitsija*
elementary school	*kansakoula*
electricity	*sähkö*
elevator	*hissi*
employer	*työnantaja*
enemy	*vihollinen*
engineer	*insinööri*
Engineers	*Pioneerit*
English	*englantia*
enlist, to	*yhtyä*
enough	*tarve*
ensign	*aliluutnantti*
equipment	*varusteet*
equivalent	*vastine*
especially	*varsin*
even	*edes*
every	*joka*
exactly	*tarkalleen*
example	*esimerkki*
excellent	*mainio*
excuse me	*anteeksi*
expensive	*kallis*
explain, to	*selittää*
export	*vienti*
extension	*jatko*
eye	*silmä*
face	*kasvot*
factory	*tehdas*
fairy tale	*satu*
fall	*syksy*
fame	*maine*
family	*perhe*
famous	*kuuluisa*
far	*kaukana*
farmer	*maanviljelijä*
fast	*nopea*
fault	*vika*
favorite	*lempi-*
February	*helmikuu*
feel, to	*tuntua*
fetch, to	*hakea*
fever	*kuume*
fiancée	*sulhanen*
field	*pelto*
fill out, to	*täyttää*
film	*filmi*
find, to	*löytää*
Finland	*Suomi*
fire-place	*pesä*
first	*ensin*
fish	*kala*
fish, to	*kalastaa*
fit, to	*sopia*
five	*viisi*
flee, to	*paeta*

float, to	*uittaa*
floor	*kerros*
flower	*kukka*
folklore	*kansanrunous*
foot	*jalka*
for	*varten*
for goodness sake	*hyvänen aika*
foreign country	*ulkomaa*
forest	*metsä*
forget, to	*unohtaa*
fork	*haarukka*
fork	*kahveli*
form	*kaavake*
form, to	*muodostaa*
forward, to	*kääntää*
fountain pen	*täytekynä*
four	*neljä*
France	*Ranska*
freedom	*vapaus*
French	*ranskalainen*
fresh	*raitis*
Friday	*perjantai*
friend	*toveri*
friend	*ystävä*
front	*rintama*
frost	*pakkanen*
frying	*paistin-*
full	*täysi*
fun	*hauska*
furniture	*huonekalu*
further	*edelleen*
gas (stove)	*kaasu*
gasoline	*bensiini*
gay	*hauska*
general	*kenraali*
generally	*yleensä*
general	*tavallinen*
gentleman	*herra*
German	*saksalainen*
Germany	*Saksa*
get, to	*joutua*
get, to	*saada*
get acquainted, to	*tutustua*
get injured, to	*loukkaantua*
get lost, to	*eksyä*
get tired, to	*väsyä*
get wounded, to	*haavoittua*
girl	*tyttö*
give, to	*antaa*
give notice, to	*sanoa itsensä ylös*
glass	*lasi*
go, to	*mennä*
God	*Jumala*
good-bye	*hyvästi*
goods	*tavara*
government	*hallitus*

government	*valtio*
governor	*maaherra*
grade	*aste*
grain	*vilja*
grandfather	*isoisä*
grant	*suokaa*
grateful	*kiitollinen*
green	*vihreä*
grenade	*kranaatti*
group	*lentoryhmä*
guess, to	*arvata*
gun	*pyssy*
habit	*tapa*
hair of the head	*tukka*
half	*puoli*
hammer	*vasara*
hand	*käsi*
handkerchief	*nenäliina*
happen, to	*tapahtua*
happy	*iloinen*
hard	*kova*
have pressed, to	*prässäyttää*
he	*hän*
head	*pää*
heal, to	*parantaa*
hear, to	*kuulla*
heaven	*taivas*
heavy gun	*raskas tykki*
hello!	*terve*
help	*apu*
help, to	*auttaa*
hero	*sankari*
hide, to	*piiloutua*
high	*korkea*
high school	*lyseo*
history	*historia*
home	*koti*
hope, to	*toivoa*
horrible	*kamala*
horse	*hevonen*
horse races	*kilpa-ajot*
hospital	*sairaala*
hotel	*hotelli*
hour	*tunti*
house	*talo*
household	*talous*
how	*kuinka*
how	*miten*
how about	*entäs*
human being	*ihminen*
hundred	*sata*
hunger	*nälkä*
hunt, to	*metsästää*
hurry	*kiire*
hurry, to	*kiiruhtaa*
hurt, to	*koskea*

hurt, to	*toukata*
hurt, to	*särkeä*
I	*minä*
ice	*jää*
ice cream	*jäätelö*
idea	*ajatus*
idealist	*idealisti*
identification	*henkilöllisyys*
if	*jos*
illiterate	*lukutaidoton*
immediately	*heti*
impertinent	*nenäkäs*
important	*tärkeä*
impossible	*mahdoton*
includes	*kuulua*
industry	*teollisuus*
infantry	*jalkaväki*
influence	*vaikutus*
ink	*muste*
inside	*sisä*
instead	*asemasta*
Institute of Technology	*Teknillinen Korkeakoulu*
insure, to	*vakuuttaa*
intend, to	*aijotte*
interesting	*mielenkiintoinen*
international	*kansainvälinen*
iron	*rauta*
it	*se*
it doesn't matter	*ei ansaitse*
janitor	*talonmies*
January	*tammikuu*
Japan	*Japani*
join, to	*yhtyä*
July	*heinäkuu*
June	*kesäkuu*
just now	*juuri*
justice	*oikeus*
keep warm, to	*lämmittää*
key	*avain*
kilometer	*kilometri*
knife	*veitsi*
know, to	*tietää*
known	*tunnettu*
know how, to	*osata*
lake	*järvi*
lamp	*lamppu*
landlord	*isäntä*
language	*kieli*
large	*suuri*
last	*viime*
late	*myöhään*
Latin	*latina*
laundry	*pyykki*
lawyer	*tuomari*
leader	*ohjaaja*

learn, to	*jättää*
left	*vasen*
leg	*sääri*
legation	*lähetystö*
legend	*tarina*
letter	*kirje*
library	*kirjasto*
lieutenant	*luutnantti*
light	*valo*
like, to	*pitää*
like this *or* so *or* thus	*näin*
line	*ala*
linen	*pellava*
lines	*johdot*
liquor	*viina*
list	*lista*
listen to, to	*kuunnella*
little, a	*vähän*
live, to	*elää*
load, to	*lastata*
located, to be	*sijaita*
log	*tukki*
long	*pitkä*
long distance call	*kaukopuhelu*
long time	*kauan*
look for, to	*etsiä*
Lord	*Jumala*
lose, to	*hukata*
lose, to	*menettää*
love, to	*rakastaa*
luck	*onni*
lunch	*lounas*
lung	*keuhko*
machine gunner	*konekivääriampuja*
magazine	*kuvalehti*
major	*majuri*
majority	*enemmistö*
mark	*merkki*
master	*isäntä*
mistake, make a	*erehtyä*
mistaken, to be	*erehtyä*
manager	*johtaja*
many	*monta*
map	*kartta*
March	*maaliskuu*
mark	*markka*
married	*naimisissa*
Master of Arts	*Filosofian Maister*
matches	*tulitikku*
material	*aine*
mathematics	*matematiikka*
matter	*asia*
matter, to	*merkitä*
May	*toukokuu*
mean, to	*tarkoittaa*
mean, to	*merkitä*

meat	*liha*
meatballs	*lihapulla*
mechanic	*mekaanikko*
Medical Corps	*Lääkintäjoukot*
medicin	*lääke*
mention, to	*mainita*
menu	*ruokalista*
mess up, to	*sotkea*
mid-	*kesdi*
Military Police	*Sotapoliisi*
milk	*maito*
milk, to	*lypsää*
mind	*mieli*
mine	*kaivos*
minister	*ministeri*
ministry	*ministeriö*
minute	*minuutti*
miss	*neiti*
Mr.	*herra*
mistress	*emäntä*
modern	*uudenaikainen*
Monday	*maanantai*
month	*kuukausi*
more	*lisää*
morning	*aamu*
morphine injection	*morfiiniruiske*
mosquito	*hyttynen*
mosquito	*sääski*
motorcycle	*moottoripyörä*
mouth	*suu*
moved, to be	*siirtää*
moved, to be	*muuttua*
move in, to	*muuttaa*
movies	*elokuvat*
Mrs.	*rouva*
much	*paljon*
museum	*museo*
music	*musiikki*
must	*täytyä*
mutter, to	*mutuista*
nail	*naula*
name	*nimi*
name, to	*nimittää*
national	*kansallis-*
natural	*luonnollinen*
nature	*luonto*
near	*lähellä*
necessary	*välttämätöntä*
need	*tarve*
need, to	*tarvita*
neighbor	*naapuri*
net	*harso*
new	*uusi*
newspaper	*sanomalehti*
next	*ensi*
next	*seuraava*

nice	*kaunis*
nickel	*nikkeli*
night	*yö*
nine	*yhdeksän*
no	*ei*
noncommissioned officer	*aliupseeri*
north	*pohjoinen*
Norwegian	*Norjalainen*
nose	*nenä*
notice, to	*huomata*
novel	*romaani*
November	*marraskuu*
now	*nyt*
nuisance	*pahus*
number	*numero*
nurse	*sairaanhoitaja*
oatmeal	*kaurapuuro*
obey, to	*totella*
occupation	*toimi*
October	*lokakuu*
off	*pois*
office	*konttori*
office	*toimisto*
officer	*upseeri*
official	*virallinen*
oh!	*oi!*
oh!	*voi!*
old	*vanha*
on	*päälle*
on account of	*vuoksi*
on purpose	*tahalla*
once	*kerran*
one	*yksi*
only	*ainoastaan*
only	*vain*
opera	*ooppera*
opposite	*vastapäätä*
or	*tai*
or	*vai*
order, to	*tilata*
Ordnance Corps	*taisteluvälineosasto*
organize, to	*järjestää*
other	*toinen*
otherwise	*muuten*
out	*ulos*
outfit	*joukko-osasto*
outside	*ulkopuolella*
overtime	*ylityö*
owe, to	*olla velkaa*
own	*oma*
own, to	*omistaa*
owner	*omistaja*
onion	*sipuli*
pack, to	*pakata*
package	*paketti*
pain	*särky*

paint, to	*maalata*
painter	*maalari*
pal	*toveri*
pan	*pannu*
paper	*paperi*
parachutist	*laskuvarjosotilas*
parents	*vanhemmat*
parliament	*eduskunta*
part	*jakso*
part	*osa*
particulars	*yksityiskohtineen*
party	*puolue*
passable	*kulkukelpoinen*
passport	*passi*
past	*yli*
paste	*tahna*
pastry	*leivos*
patient	*potilas*
pay, to	*maksaa*
peace	*rauha*
pencil	*kynä*
penny	*penni*
peoples high school	*kansanopisto*
percentage	*prosentti*
perhaps	*ehkä*
person	*henkilö*
person	*ihminen*
pharmacy	*apteekki*

photo	*valokuva*
piece of news	*uutinen*
pig	*sika*
pillow	*tyyny*
pipe	*piippu*
pistol	*pistooli*
place	*paikka*
plate	*kilpi*
play	*näytelmä*
pocket	*tasku*
poem	*runo*
point, to	*osoittaa*
policeman	*poliisi*
polite	*kohtelias*
port	*satama*
porter	*kantaja*
portion	*annos*
possible	*mahdollinen*
positively	*kerrassaan*
pot	*kattila*
potatoes	*peruna*
power	*voima*
powerful	*valtava*
practical	*käytännöllinen*
practicality	*käytäntö*
practice	*harjoitus*
present	*lahja*
present, to	*esitellä*

president	*presidentti*
previous	*edellinen*
price	*hinta*
pride	*ylpeys*
prisoner	*vanki*
private	*sotamies*
private first class	*korpraali*
probably	*kai*
product	*tuote*
professor	*professori*
pronounce, to	*ääntää*
prove, to	*todista*
province	*lääni*
provincial	*maakunta*
published, to be	*ilmestyä*
pupil	*oppilas*
purchase	*ostos*
pursuit	*harrastus*
put, to	*laittaa*
put, to	*panna*
quarter, a	*neljännes*
Quartermaster Corps	*Huoltojoukot*
question	*kysymys*
quiet	*hiljaa*
quite	*aivan*
race	*kilpailu*
radio	*radio*
radio operator	*radisti*
railroad-junction	*rautatieristeys*
rain, to	*sataa*
razor	*parranajokone*
reach one's destination, to	*olla perillä*
read, to	*lukea*
reading matter	*lukemista*
ready	*valmis*
really	*niin*
reason	*syy*
reasonable	*kohtuullinen*
receipt	*kuitti*
receiver	*vastaanottaja*
recommend, to	*suositella*
red	*punainen*
register	*sisäänkirjoitettu*
regret, to	*olla pahoilla*
relative	*sukulainen*
remember, to	*muistaa*
rent	*vuokra*
rent, to	*vuokrata*
repair, to	*korjata*
replace, to	*korvata*
report, to	*ilmoittautua*
represent, to	*edustaa*
representative	*edustaja*
republic	*tasavalta*
reserve, to	*varata*
rest, the	*loppu*

restaurant	*ravintola*
return, to	*palata*
review	*jälkikatsaus*
rifle	*kivääri*
right	*oikea*
ring	*rengas*
ring, to	*soittaa*
river	*joki*
road	*tie*
room	*huone*
rooster	*kukko*
root	*juuri*
rope	*köysi*
row, to	*soudella*
rum	*rommi*
Russian	*venäläinen*
rye	*ruis*
salad	*salaatti*
salesman	*myyjä*
same	*sama*
satisfied	*tyytyväinen*
Saturday	*lauantai*
sawmill	*sahalaitos*
say, to	*sanoa*
scar	*arpi*
school	*koulu*
schooling	*koulutus*
scientific	*tieteellinen*
sea	*meri*
seaman	*matruusi*
second lieutenant	*vänrikki*
second	*toinen*
secondary school	*oppikoulu*
see, to	*katsoa*
see, to	*nähdä*
seem, to	*näkyä*
self	*itse*
send, to	*lähettää*
sender	*lähettäjä*
sending	*lähettäminen*
September	*syyskuu*
sergeant	*kersantti*
sergeant major	*vääpeli*
serious	*vakava*
servant	*palvelija*
service	*palvelus*
seven	*seitsemän*
severe	*ankara*
severe	*kova*
shave, to	*ajaa*
she	*hän*
sheet	*lakana*
sheriff	*nimismies*
shirt	*paita*
shoe	*kenkä*
shoemaker	*suutari*

shoot, to	*ampua*
shop	*kauppa*
shorts	*alushousut*
show, to	*näyttää*
sign	*kilpi*
sign, to	*allekirjoittaa*
signature	*allekirjoitus*
significance	*merkitys*
simultaneously	*yhtaikaa*
singer	*laulaja*
sit, to	*istua*
six	*kuusi*
ski	*suksi*
ski, to	*hiihtää*
skiing condition	*hiihtokeli*
skin	*nahka*
sleep	*uni*
sleep, to	*nukkua*
slowly	*hitaasti*
small	*pieni*
smoke, to	*polttaa*
sniper	*tarkka-ampuja*
snow	*lumi*
so long	*näkemiin*
soap	*saippua*
social-democratic	*sosialidemokraatti*
sock	*sukka*
soldier	*sotilas*
some kind	*jonkinlainen*
son	*poika*
song	*laulu*
soon	*pian*
sorry, to be	*olla pahoilla*
sort	*laji*
south	*etelä*
space	*väli*
speak, to	*puhua*
special	*erikoinen*
spill, to	*kaataa*
spoon	*lusikka*
spring	*kevät*
stable	*talli*
stair	*porras*
stairway	*porras*
stamp	*postimerkki*
standard	*kanta*
start, to	*lähteä*
state	*valtio*
station	*asema*
stay, to	*asua*
stay, to	*jäädä*
stay, to	*pysyä*
steambath	*sauna*
steamer	*laiva*
step	*askel*
step, to	*astua*

still	*vielä*
stone	*kivi*
store	*myymälä*
store	*kauppa*
stove	*hella*
straight	*suora*
straightforward	*reilu*
stranger	*vieras*
strict	*ankara*
street	*katu*
street-car	*raitiovaunu*
student	*opiskelija*
study	*opinto*
study	*oppi*
study, to	*opiskella*
studying	*opiskelu*
stupid	*tyhmä*
subject	*aihe*
subject	*aine*
suddenly	*äkkiarvaamatta*
suggest, to	*ehdottaa*
summer	*kesä*
Sunday	*sunnuntai*
support	*kannatus*
support, to	*ylläpitää*
suppose, to	*olettaa*
sure	*tietysti*
surprised, to be	*hämmästyä*
surrender, to	*antautua*
suspense	*jännitys*
Sweden	*Ruotsi*
Swedish	*ruotsalainen*
sweet(s)	*makeinen*
sweetheart	*kulta*
swim, to	*uida*
system	*järjestelmä*
table	*pöytä*
tailor	*räätäli*
take, to	*ottaa*
take, to	*viedä*
tank	*hyökkäysvaunu*
teach, to	*opettaa*
teacher	*opettaja*
teaching	*opetus*
tease, to	*kiusata*
technical	*teknillinen*
telegram	*sähkösanoma*
telephone	*puhelin*
tell again, to	*kerrata*
ten	*kymmenen*
tent	*teltta*
text	*teksti*
textile	*kutoma*
thank you	*kiitos*
that	*että*
theatre	*teatteri*

them	*ne*
then	*sitten*
theoretical	*tietopuolinen*
there	*tuolla*
they	*he*
thing	*asia*
think, to	*ajatella*
think, to	*luulla*
this	*tämä*
those	*ne*
thought	*ajatus*
thousand	*tuhat*
three	*kolme*
Thursday	*torstai*
ticket	*lippu*
time	*aika*
tip	*juomaraha*
to	*vailla*
to	*vailte*
tobacco	*tupakka*
toilet	*käymälä*
tongue	*kieli*
too	*liian*
tooth	*hammas*
towel	*pyyhe*
town	*kaupunki*
trade	*ammatti*
tradition	*tarina*
train	*juna*
trained, to be	*valmistua*
training college for teachers	*seminaari*
transfer, to	*siirtää*
translation	*käännös*
translate, to	*kääntää*
transportation	*kuljetus*
travel, to	*matkustaa*
trip	*matka*
trip	*retki*
troop	*eskadroona*
trouble	*ikävyys*
trouble	*vaiva*
trouble, to	*vaivata*
trousers	*housut*
truth	*tosi*
try, to	*koettaa*
Tuesday	*tiistai*
turn, to	*kääntyä*
turn, to	*kääntää*
turn out, to	*muuttua*
turn over, to	*kaataa*
two	*kaksi*
typical	*tyypillinen*
unconscious	*tajuton*
under	*alainen*
usual	*tavallinen*
understand, to	*ymmärtää*

United States	*Yhdysvallat*
union	*liitto*
University	*Yliopisto*
unnecessary	*turha*
up	*ylhäällä*
up	*ylös*
use, to	*käyttää*
vacant	*vapaa*
vacation	*loma*
valise	*laukku*
valley	*laakso*
value	*arvo*
vegetable	*vihanneksi*
very	*oikein*
via	*kautta*
village	*kylä*
visit, to	*käydä*
voluntary	*vapaaehtoinen*
wait, to	*odottaa*
waiter	*tarjoilija*
walk, to	*kävellä*
want, to	*haluta*
want, to	*tahtoa*
war	*sota*
warm	*lämmin*
washroom	*pesuhuone*
watch	*kello*
water	*vesi*
way	*meno*
we	*me*
weapon	*ase*
weather	*ilma*
Wednesday	*keskiviikko*
week	*viikko*
weight	*merkitys*
weight	*paino*
well, to get	*parantua*
welcome	*tervetuloa*
well	*kaivo*
well	*no*
west	*länsi*
what	*mika*
what kind	*millainen*
wheat	*vehnä*
when	*koska*
when	*kun*
when	*milloin*
which	*joka*
whiskey	*viski*
white	*valkea*
who	*joka*
who	*ken*
who	*kuka*
whole	*koko*
wife	*vaimo*
wine	*viini*

winter	*talvi*
will, to	*sähköttää*
wish	*toivoa*
with	*kanssa*
with	*mukana*
without	*ilman*
woman	*nainen*
wonderful	*ihana*
wonderful	*ihmeellinen*
wood	*puu*
woolen	*villainen*
word	*sana*
work	*työ*
work, to	*toimia*
worker	*työläinen*
working men's institute	*työvaenopisto*
worry, to	*huolehtia*
worry, to	*surra*
worth	*arvoinen*
wound	*haava*
write, to	*kirjoittaa*
writer	*kirjailija*
wrong	*väärä*
year	*vuosi*
yellow	*keltainen*
yes	*kyllä*
yesterday	*eilen*
you	*sinä*
you	*te*
young	*nuori*
zero	*nolla*